

Log of the Proceedings of His Majestys Ship Bounty in a Voyage to the South Seas, (to take the Breadfruit plant from the Society Islands to the West Indies,) under the Command of Lieutenant William Bligh, 1 Dec. 1787-22 Oct. 1788

Safe 1/46

[Page 5]

[Title page. Previous pages are covers and inside covers, or blank]

Log of the proceedings of His Majestys Ship Bounty in a Voyage to the South Seas, (to take the Breadfruit plant from the Society Islands to the West Indies,) under the Command of Lieutenant William Bligh.

[Written on side of page]:

Don. by W. R. Bligh. Dec. 29, 1902

[Page 6]

1.

Remarks at Deptford

On the 16th. August 1787 I had the Honor to receive my appointment from the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty to ~~the~~ Command of His Majestys Armed Vessel Bounty, forthwith to put her in commission and to use the utmost dispatch to complete her for a Voyage to remote Parts, which from the Ship being in Dock I could not begin to execute untill the 3rd. of September when She was taken alongside the Hulk.

On the 4th. September from an application I had made the Lower Masts were got out & shortned, and the Lower and Top Sail Yards were cut on shore agreeable to my request.

On the 4th. of October I was ready, stored and Victualled for 18 Months and with a Pilot on board proceeded to Longreach where was brought to me all the Gunners Stores, four Carriage four-Pounders and 10 Swivels with the necessary number of Small Arms.

On the 15th. I received my orders to proceed to Spithead, but it was the 24th. before I got into the Downs where meeting wth. contrary Winds I was not able to comply with my orders untill the 4th. of November when after much bad weather I anchored at Spithead and moor'd. Under the Command of Lord Hood.

On Saturday the 24th of November Lord Hood gave me my final orders (Dated the 20th.) To proceed to Sea. I now made application for my People to be paid there two months Advance which was done the 28th. when we unmoored, and on the following morning worked out to S^t. Hellens with the Wind at South where we were obliged to Anchor.

On the Following Morning November the 30th. I got under Sail again, for altho the Wind was not favorable being at South, the weather being moderate tempted me to try what could be done being very anxious to get down Channel. At Noon I observed in Lat^d. 50°: 44'N. when Selsbey Bill bore ESE 3 leag^s. & Chichester Church NEbE½E.

[Page 7]

2.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Saturday Dec^r. 1st. 1787. Off the Isle of Wight

1 “ “ “ South Mod. Breezes and clear W^r. In getting under Way
the Fore TS Yard broke in the slings from being
2 decayed. Got another up immediately & proceeded.

3

4 “ TK^d. Dunnose W½S & Culver Clift N½W dis.
2 leagues.

5

TK^d. at ½ past 5 Dunnose NbW 4 Miles

6

7

8 “ “ “ SSW Fresh Gales and hazy W^r. in 2^d. Reefs.
Dunnose NbE 3 leagues.

9

10

TK^d. ¾ past 10 Dunnose NNW

11

12 “ “ “ “ Dunnose NbW½W 3 leagues.

1

2

3

4 “ “ “ SSW Dunnose North 4 or 5 leagues, a great head Sea
Wore Ship to the Eastward.

5

6 SWbW

7

8 “ “ “ SW. Dunnose NEbN 5 or 6 leagues. Wind not so fresh
& the W^r. getting cloudy.

9

10 to Cleaned ship below & served fresh Meat to the
People

11 “ “ “ “ Wore Ship to the Westward

12 “ “ “ South. Mod. & Cloudy – Much Sea from the Westward
Dunnose North 6 leagues. Therm^r. upon Deck
51½°

Lat^d. Observed 50°:18'N

[Page 8]

3.

Remarks.

I have omitted to mention that to assist me in this Voyage Sir Joseph Banks ordered me to be supplied with one of M^r. Larcum Kendals Time Keepers.

Its error from Mean Time at Greenwich when I received the 19th. of Oct^r. at Noon was 0': 27", 5 too slow and its rate of going was 1", 1 losing p^r 24 Hours.

On the 5th. Nov^r. I took the Time Keeper to M^r. Bayley at the observatory at Portsmouth and by the 10th it was found to be fast for Mean time at Greenwich 1", 89 and its rate gaining 1", 8 p^r. day. but from this to the 28th. it fluctuated

very much & was much affected by heat or cold; and I now took it on board with its error 1':29", 70 too fast for mean time at Greenwich and its Rate of going 6", 4 gaining p^r. 24 Hours.

To Exemplify my Log of the proceedings of the Ship, it is to be observed,

That by Cloudy W^r. is to be understood the Sun is not to be seen, or but very seldom.

Fair weather or Open cloudy W^r, is when the Sun can be frequently seen, but the Sky not free of clouds.

Fine weather, is when the Sky is generally clear and pleasant, but few clouds and not Windy.

Hazy may be applied to either one or the other, and then it is to be understood the boundary of sight is not so extensive as at other times. All other expressions respecting the weather will be generally understood without Error.

There will be always three columns of Longitude Kept the first D.R. or what is called dead reckoning or reckoning by account from the place last sailed from, the Second is T.K. or ^(a)Long^d. by the Time Keeper from the nearest observations, and the last is that found from Lunar observations carried on from time to time by applying the difference of Long^d. from day to day made by the Time Keeper & is mark'd L & T.K. signifying Lunar & Time Keeper.

^(a)Found always by the last established Rate at the Port sailed from

[Page 9]

4.

The Log will be always mark'd in proportion of fifty feet to thirty seconds of time, and the mean height of the Eye above the level of the Sea is equal to 3':18" agreeable to which with the exact refractions to all altitudes and the corrections of the O Declinations according to the different Meridians will all the latitudes be determined.

All Series of Lunar Observations will be reduced to one time by the assistance of the Time Keeper, and the Instruments I shall always make use of are, one 10 Inch and one 14 Inch of Ramsden's Sextants, and one 12 Inch of Troughton's all of which I consider to be exceedingly perfect. It is to be noted also that whenever any point of Land is observed to be on the Meridian or Parallel, the time from

noon is exactly ~~noted~~ mentioned that its situation may be more accurately determined.

[Page 10]

5.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. on Sunday Dec^r. 2nd. 1787 Off the Isle of Wight

1 “ “ WbS SbW Mod. and cloudy W^r. threatening Dirt

2

3

4 “ “ “ “ Dunnose North 6 leagues.

5

6 1 4 WSW S^o. Dunnose NbE½E.

7 1 4

8 1 5 WbS SbW Fresh Gales and Cloudy TK^d. Ship. Under Double Reefs

9 1 4 SE SSW

10 2

11 2 1

12 2 1 “ “ Wore Ship

1 2 4 West

2 2 5 WbS SbW

3 2 2

4 2 2 “ “ Strong Gales & Cloudy

5 2 3 West SSW

6 2

7 2

1

8 “ D^o with thick rainy W^r. which determined me to
2 2 NE bear away for Spithead

9 6 “

10 6 “ “ “ Saw Dunnose SEbE and the Needles N½W –
Steered for the Needles and at 11 past them, when
11 I took on board Robert Corke Pilot, neither the
Master or myself having ^{ever} been through.

12 “ “ “ “ At Noon D^oW^r. & wind baffling. Abreast of
Yarmouth.

[Page 11]

6.

Week	Day	Day	Winds	Rem ^s . at Spithead.	Wind bound.
Dec ^r . 1787			SSW	The weather continued the same for most part of this day but turn'd more mod. towards the latter part. At 2 PM came to an Anchor and moored in 5 fm ^s . The Kicker NNW½N & S ^o . Sea Castle EbS.	
Monday	3		SW	I waited on Rear Ad ^l . S ^r Fran ^s . Sam ^l . Drake & presented to him a Journal of my proceedings, and from thence took the Time Keeper to M ^r .	
			WSW	Bayley at the Observatory to get its Rate more accurately determined. In the morning I gave the necessary orders to complete up our Victualling & to be ready for the first favorable	
			WbS	Wind.	
Tuesday	4		WbS	Moderate W ^r . our principal employment to day was cleaning and drying Ship and getting on board some water and a spare Top S ^l . Yard having carried away one in going out.	
			Varia.	The first and latter part of these 24 Hours was	

Wednesd ^y .	5	SW SWbW WSW	Varia. Winds and moderate W ^r . but all night it blew very hard in squalls with rain which obliged us to strike Yards & T. Gall. Masts. The morning allowed us to complete up our provisions.
------------------------	---	-------------------	--

Thursd ^y .	6	West Vari. N ^o . NbW	Variable W ^r . and winds with Calms which ended with the Wind from the North ^d . I therefore ordered the Yards & Top Gall. Mast to be got up, & unmoored Ship by Noon, Having taken leave of the Admiral & got the Time Keeper on board.
-----------------------	---	--	--

Rem^s.

The Time Keeper was found on the 3rd. at Noon to be 1':43", 2 too fast for Mean Time at Greenw^{ch}., and on the 6th. at Noon 1':44", 7 too fast whence its Rate was determin'd to 0", 5 gaining p^r. 24 Hours.

[Page 12]

7.

[Blank page]

[Page 13]

8.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Friday 7th. Dec^r. 1787– Portland.

1	“ “ “	NbE	The wind having the appearance of continuing and the weather moderate I weighed and Sailed at 2
2			O’Clock. Under ^{all} Sails.

3

4

5

6	“ “ “	“	Culver Clift NbW 5 Miles
---	-------	---	--------------------------

7

8 “ “ “ NNW Mod. weather, and at $\frac{3}{4}$ past 8 Dunnose bore
NNE 6 or 7 Miles.

9 3 2 West “

10 3 “ “ “

11 3 WSW NW

12 2 4 WbS NWbN Clear W^r. and light winds – seldom steady to
two or three points.

1 2

2 1 4 West NNW

3 1 WNW Varia

4 1 1 “ “

5 2 6 WbN ESE Set Steering Sails, but the Wind backing to the
South^d. at 6 O’Clock we trimed to the Wind
again

6 4 2 Varia

2 3 West SbW

7

2 3 WbS

8 6 3 West SSW Fresh breezes & Cloudy. Down F.T.G.
Yard and in 1st. Reefs. Peverel [Pereril] point
NEbN 6 leagues and Portland NWbN

9 6 WbS SbW

10 5 1 W $\frac{1}{2}$ N SSW

11 6 3 WNW SW

3 6 NWbW SWbW

12 Fresh Gales and squally In 2^d. Reefs & TK^d.

2 “ SbE½E The Bill bore at Noon NE½E 5 ~~or 6~~ leagues.

Merid Alt^d. L L 16°:51' Under Dble Reefs & Courses.

Error [indecipherable] Lat^d. Observed 50°:19'N.

[Page 14]

9.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. on Saturday Dec^r. 8th. 1787.

1 3 4 SbE SWbW Fresh Gales and squally W^r.

2 3

3 2 2

4 2 2 “ “ Squally and Rain Portland NNE½E 7 leagues.

5 2 2 “ “ Portland NEbN – Several Ships beating down Channel bore away, but I determined to keep on for the Night.

6 2 2 “ “ TK^d.

7 3 6 NWbN WbS

8 3 2 NNW West D^oW^r. and sometimes little Wind

9 3 4 NWbN WbS

10 3 2 NNW West

1 4
11 “ TK^d. Portland Lights NbE½E 3 leagues.
1 2 SSW

12 2 4 “ “ Very Squally with Rain

1 2 2 SbW WbS

2 2 2 “ “ TK^d.

3 4 3	NW	WSW	
4 4	NNW	West	Hard Squalls and thick Rainy W ^r . which determined me to bear away for S ^t . Helens and wait a more favorable Wind. The Ship being very Wet below & most of my People with heavy colds on them.
5 6	EbS		
6 6 6		SWbS	
7 7			
8 7	“	“	D ^o W ^r . Several Ships in company, some going into The Needles – Peveral Point NBE 5 leagues
3			
9	EbS ¹ / ₂ S		
3			
10 5	“	“	Mod. and cloudy.
11 6	“	SbW	Fresh Gales and very thick weather
12 6	“	“	D ^o W ^r . Dunnose NE ¹ / ₂ E 3 or 4 leag ^s . - Under Dble Reef Top Sails & Courses.

[Page 15]
10.

	M ^o .		
Week Day	Day	Winds	Rem ^s . at St. Helens.
1787		SSW	Strong Gales and Squally with heavy Rain at times. At ½ past 4 PM came too in S ^t . Helens Road in 7 fm ^s . & veered ½ Cable. Benbridge
Dec ^r .		SWbW	point SbW and the land Mark WSW At 7 AM
Sunday	9	SW	struck yards & Top Masts and veered to a whole Cable. Cleaned below and dried.

Fresh Gales and hazy W^r. PM I sent an

Monday	10	SW	officer to Rear Admiral Sir Fra ^s . Samuel Drake with a Weekly Acc ^t . AM up Y[ar]d ^s . and Top Mast & aired Sails. Found riding here His Majestys Ship Orion Cap ^t . Sir Hyde Parker Sent the large Cutter for water. Hands making Puddens for the Yards.
Tuesday	11	D ^o .	Mod. and hazy W ^r . hove in to ½ Cable. Employed the Cutter a watering
Wednesd ^y .	12	D ^o .	D ^o W ^r . with Strong Gales in the middle and latter part, employed making Matts & Ropebands
Thursd ^y .	13	SWbW WSW N	Strong Gales with light Winds in the latter part dried Sails, cleaned below & other necessary duties and shortening in the Cable.
Friday	14	N East ^{ly} . S ^o to West	Very Variable W ^r . with Thunder and Lightning. The Clerk of the Check paid His Majestys Bounty to some of the People. Empl ^d . airing Sails & Striking Top Gall ^t . Masts.
Saturd ^y .	15	SW NW SW	D ^o W ^r . aired Sails & got up T Gall. Masts. Clean'd & dried below & empl ^d . making Ropebands & Points for spare Sails.
Sund ^y .	16	WSW NW WSW	Mod. breezes & hazy W ^r . Muster'd all people & saw that they were clean – Dried Sails & Received on board 10 Casks of Beer. Read the Articles of War & ^c . to the Ship's Company.

Monday	17	WSW NW S ^o .	Variable W ^r . and Rain. Dried & Clean ^d below - Sighted the Anchor & came too again as before. Finding my best B[owe]r Cable Wore & this place not convenient to get provisions on board I determined to go up to Spithead.
--------	----	-------------------------------	---

[Page 16]
11.

Week Day	Day	Winds	Rem ^s . at Spithead
1787 Dec ^r .		WbS	Mod ^t . and cloudy with Strong Gales & Squally with Rain in the latter part. At 9 AM weighed & sailed up to Spithead & Anchored in 12½fms. Veered ½ Cable. The Royal George Tuesday 18 NWbW½W ½ Mile and Haslar Hospital South Sea Castle NNE½E. Most of the West large Ships gone into the Harbour. Admiral Lord Hood Vice of the Blue the Command.

Wednesd ^y .	19		Fresh Gales & some Rain. AM sent the B[es]t B[owe]r Cable on shore and had it condemned. Dried Sails and cleaned Ship below. Ship's draught of Water forward 12 F:6 In Aft – 12F: 4 In.
------------------------	----	--	---

Thursd ^y .	20	W SSW WNW	Mod ^t . Gales and cloudy W ^r . – Middle and latter part light airs & Foggy. AM received on board a new Bower Cable in lieu of that return'd. Rec ^d . fresh Beef.
-----------------------	----	-----------------	--

Friday	21	WNW NNW NE	Mod ^t . Gales and cloudy. AM several ships came out of the Harbour of the 5 th . & 6 th . Rates. Rec ^d . on board 12 Half H[ogs]h[ea]ds of Beer and prepared for going to Sea
--------	----	------------------	--

Saturd ^y .	22	E	Strong gales and cloudy and were obliged to strike Y[ar]ds and Top Gall Mast – His Majesty's Ship Vestal sailed but so much sea set in that I could not heave at the Windlass without a great risk of upsetting it which would cost me some time to get repaired I therefore determined to wait a little to avoid the risk.
		ESE	

Sunday	23	EbS	D ^o . W ^r . the first and middle part the latter more Mod ^t . at 4AM hove short & got up Y[ar]ds & Top Gall Mast and at ½ past 6 Weighed & lay too until day light when I made sail & took on board off Cowes John Low Pilot to carry me through the Needles. At ½ past 10 abreast of the Needles and discharged the Pilot. At Noon St. Albans head NNW 4 leagu ^s and Dunnose E½S – Ther ^r . in the Air 38°.
--------	----	-----	---

[Page 17]
12.

Remarks.

As I hourly expected to have a favorable wind and to Sail - I could only compare the Time Keeper when the weather would admit me which was three times since my being last put back from Sea. They were as follows.

On the 12 Dec^r. The Time Keeper was found to be too fast for Mean Time at Greenwich 1': 53",6 and gaining p^r. day 1",5 on mean Time.

On the 17 Dec^r. It was found 1':54",7 too fast and gaining 0":,2 p^r. Day.

On the 19 Dec^r. It was found 1':52",5 too fast and losing on Mean Time 1":1 p^r. Day, which is just the same rate as when I received it, and is the rate & error I now set out with.

See the Book of Observations which is as an Appendix to this Log.

[Page 18]

13.

[Blank page]

[Page 19]

14.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s on Monday 24th. Dec^r. 1787 in the Channel

1 7 4 WbS East. Strong Breezes & Cloudy W^r.

2 7 6 “ “ The Bill of Portland NNE dis^t. 5 leagues from
whence I take my Departure all[owing] it in 50°:30' N
3 8 “ West “ & 2°:30' West.

4 8 “ “ “ Squally with Sleet. One of the People in furling the
M[ain] T G Sail fell over & was saved by
5 8 catching hold of the M[ain] T[op] Mast Stay by
which he came down not at all hurt.

6 8 6 “ “ Hard Gales with Sleet. Close reefed the Main &
Fore Top S[ai]ls. Handed Miz[en] T[op] and
7 8 4 Main Sail. Got all the Deadlights in & Hatchway
batten'd down.

8 8 4

9 8 4 W¹/₂S

10 8 4 “ “ A very heavy Sea struck us on the larb^d.
Quarter & carried away a sweep & a Spritsail
Tops[ai]l Yard.

11 9

12 9 “ “ Heavy squalls & Rain with a high Sea which
obliges me to carry much Sail to prevent it
1 4 4 breaking over us.

4 4 WbS

2 8 6

3 9

7 6 4	“	“	More Moderate but still squally with Hail out 3 rd . Reefs & set Miz[en] T[op] S[ail].
8 6 4	“	NNE	
9 6 2	West	“	Weather not so Cold
10 6 2	“	“	Out 2 ^d . Reefs
11 6 4	“	NbE	
12 6 4	“	North	Fresh Gales and Rainy
1 6 4			
2 5	“	“	Set the Main Sail
3 5 6			
4 4 2	“	“	Mod ^t . & Cloudy. Up Main T G Yard
5 5			
6 4 4			
7 3 4			
8 3 3	“	“	Some Squalls of Sleet
9 4 4	“	“	Mod ^t . and fair W ^r . out all reefs, up Fore T G Yard & set Fore & fore T[op] M[ast] Steering Sail. Got all wet things up to dry & cleaned below & dried with Fires.
10 5 2			
11 6	WbS		This being Christmas Day I ordered an allowance of Rum to be served to each person & Beef & plumb pudden for Dinner
12 5 5	“	“	D ^o . W ^r . Several sail in sight. – At 21H:48':16" App ^t Time I found the Long ^d . by T[ime] Keeper 9 ^o :22':30" West of Greenwich –
142			
203			

345

Merid. Al^d. L.L. 18°:51'

Error - 0

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D R	D R	T. K	
S61°W	143	47°:34'N	47°:36'N	9°:40'W	9°:41'W	Therm ^r . On Deck 45½°

[Page 21]

16.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Wednesday Dec^r. 26th. 1787

1 4 2 WbS NbE Mod^t. and fair W^r. which allowed us to
spend our Christmas pleasantly.

2 4 4

3 5 6 “ NE

4 6

5 4 4 WSW ENE

6 5

7 5

8 5 “ “ Wind freshening

9 7 2 ESE Fresh Gales and a fine Moon.

10 8

11 8 “ “ In Steering Sails and 1st. Reef Fore Top S[ai]l.

12 8 SW

1 8 2

2 8 “ “ Gale increasing and the Sea rising very fast.

3 8

4 8 “ EbN Strong Gale & Squally

5 8

6 8

7 8 “ “ “

8 8 2 “ “ Hard Gales & Squally In two Reefs Main T S
and three In the Fore Hand[e]d Main Sail
9 8 2 and Miz[en] T[op] S[ai]l.

10 8

11 8

12 8 “ “ D^o. Gales and a very high Sea. Down T G
Yards. No Observation.

169

1345

1514

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D R	D R	T K	Therm ^r . On Deck
S32°W	162	None	45°:16'N	11°:45'W		49½°

[Page 22]

17.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Thursday Dec^r. 27th. 1787.

1 9 SW E Very hard Gales and high Sea with severe Squalls.

2 8 4		EbS	In 4 th . Reef Main Top Sail and hand[e]d Fore Top S[ai]l.
3 8			
4 7			
5 8 4			
6 8 4	“	“	A Storm of Wind with most violent Squalls Hand[e]d the Main Top S[ai]l & Scudded under the Fore Sail.
7 7			
8 7	“	“	D ^o . with Rain & Sleet.
9 7			
10 7			
11 7			
12 7	“	“	Obliged to Scudd the Sea too high to venture to heave to. Ship'd much water, but the Ship scuds very well.
1 7 4			
2 7 6			
3 7 6	“	“	Ship'd a very heavy Sea which broke the foremost chock of the Boats to pieces and stove all the
4 7 6			Boats that it was with the utmost difficulty & risk that they they were saved from being washed over
5 7	WSW		board. The Waist boards on both sides were wash'd
6 7			away & we were an entire Sea on Deck.
7 7			At 7 Another heavy sea struck us on the starb ^d .
8 7			Qu[arter] which carried away a Spare Top S[ai]l
9 7 4			Yard, Top G Yard & a Ship's sweep from out of the Main chains & drew out all the bolts they were lash'd to.

10 7 4 “ EbN At ½ past 8 a Sea struck us in the Stern & stove it
all to pieces between the Cabbin Windows where
11 7 the Sham window is w^{ch}. making a fair breach
into the Cabbin it was with difficulty the T[ime]
Keeper & my Instruments were saved – one
12 7 WbS Azimuth Compass was broke all to pieces

182 At Noon D^o. W^r. pass'd a Ship lying to,
514 head to the Northward. Obliged still to send.
696 Seven half H[ogs]h[ea]ds of Beer were lost.

No observ.

	Latitude			Longitude		Reims at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D R	D R	T.K.	Ther ^r .
S356°W	173	None	42°:54'N	14°:04'W		49°

[Page 23]
18.

Remarks.

The Gale increased with such fury on us that I could not with any safety attempt to bring the Ship to, and therefore anxiously waited for a few minutes abatement of the Gale to accomplish it, which as it did not take place we had no alternative but to keep before the Sea. The situation in the morning was of a very serious nature, but fortunately no sea struck us while we were repairing the damage, which was owing to a want of firmness in the Joiners work in the middle part of the Stern opposite the coating of the Rudder. The badness of the weather only admits us to secure ourselves & Boats without knowing the absolute defects. Our bread I apprehend is much damaged altho we used our utmost to clear the water out of the Cabbin, but so much was in it, that it required some time to carry it clear off. At Noon no alteration in the weather and still scudding under the Fore Sail before the Sea, not daring to keep our course. The great hardship in small Ships such weather as this is, that we cannot light a fire to dress victuals and which has been our case to day I therefore ordered Grog to the People in addition to their Beer to make up for their wet uncomfortable situation. Seven of our half H[ogs]h[ea]ds of Beer all of which were full were washed over board

[Page 24]

19.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Friday Dec^r. 28th. 1787

1 7 “ WbS EbN The Gale not quite so Violent or the Squalls so
often, which by two O’Clock gave me an opportunity
2 7 “ to bring too under the Miz[en] Stay Sail, & hand[ed]
the Fore Sail. Examined the Spirit & Fish Room
3 1 4 SSE½E which had much water in them which was bail’d out
but much damage done.
4 1 Set the Main Stay sail. A Sea carried away the
larboard Bumpkin & Iron braces.

5 1 4 SSE

6 1 4

7 1 4

8 1 4 “ No further alteration in the weather but the Ship lies
too very well.

9 1 4

10 1

11 1

12 1 “ “ D^o. W^r.

1 1 4 SSE½E

2 1 4

3 1 4

4 1 4

5 1 SSE

6 1

7 1

8 1 “ “ “ The Gale moderating. At 10 set the Fore Sail
reefed & the Sea gettin[g] down a little we bore
9 1 away and by Noon had tribble Reef Top Sails set
but the Gale still strong & thick Raining weather.
10 1
11 1 4 Found much damage done to the bread & Spirits
3 SSW in the Spirit & Fish Room. Two casks Rum Stove.
12 6 4 N31.30 Gall^s. – N39.31 Gallons.

No Observation
49
696
745

	Latitude			Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D R.	D R	T.K.	
SW½S	173	None	42°:19'N	14°:43'W		

[Page 25]
20.

Remarks.

As soon as we hove too we could light a fire & I ordered two men from each watch to attend and dry all wet things which by midnight was tolerably accomplished, with respect to wearing apparel. Began to examine our Spirit & Fish Room where we had ~~also~~ Bread stowed over the Spirits. A great quantity of water having got down into the Cockpit the bread was unavoidably very much hurt & some of the Cask having fetched way & the head of one of them from catching a billet of wood broke in the Chime & the liquor all ran out, and another from being bilged was in ye same State.

The damage done to the Boats (which altho very well lash'd unless the greatest exertions to the risk of our lives had been used would have been washed over board) was no more than the hood Ends of the large cutter being burst asunder & the upper strake of each of them & the launch broke down by the lashings; but nothing this day could be done to remedy these defects.

[Page 26]

21.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Saturday Dec^r. 29th. 1787. Observations

1	7	2	SbW½W	ENE	A very Fresh Gale & dark cloudy
					W ^r . but Sea not so high
2	7	2			Out 3d. Reef Main Top S[ai]l. Got
					Some bread up to endeavor to
3	7	4			save it but could do it but little good.
4	7	4			
5	7				
6	7				
7	6	6			
8	7	“	“	“	The Sea much lower & a Mod ^t .
					Gale. Up Main T G Mast.
9	6	6			
10	6	4			
11	6	2	“	“	Out 2 ^d . Reef Main Top S[ai]l & set Miz[en]
					Top S[ai]l.
12	6	6			
1	7				
2	7	“	“		Swayed the Fore Yard up & out Reef
3	7				Up Fore T G Mast & out 3 ^d .
					Reef Fore Top S[ai]l.
4	7				
5	6	5	“	“	Mod. Gale & Cloudy
6	6	2	“	“	Out all Reefs, Up T G Y[ar]ds &
					set the sails.
7	6	“		NNE	

8 6 6 “ NEbN Set Lower & Fore Top M[as]t Steer[in]g
S[ai]l.

9 6 4 Fair W^r. – Got all wet Cloaths At 21^h:40':26"
& bedding up & cleaned & dried in Lat. 39°:50'N
10 6 2 below. As soon as this was done the Long^d. by
I ordered hot water to be got ready Time Keeper
11 6 2 & every Man washed his dirty linen 14°:28'W
& all hung up to dry by Noon, having
12 6 2 a Fresh breeze and fair W^r.
Airing the damg'd bread. Saw a Ship
163 in the WNW on a wind.
745
908

Meridⁿ. Alt^d. 27°:1'

Error - 1

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D R	D R.	T.K	Ther ^r .
S½E	163	39°:35'N	39°:37'N	14°:22'W	14°:26'W	on Deck 59°

[Page 27]
22.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Sunday Dec^r. 30th. 1787 Observations

1 6 SbW½W NbE Mod. and cloudy W^r.
and prevented our wet things drying
2 6 expeditiously, or doing much good to
our damaged bread & but I got the
3 5 4 Cloaths dried by the fire

4 5 5

5 6 SSW “ Set M[ain] T[op] Mast Steering Sail.

6 6 2

7 5 6 “ N

8 5 6

9 5 “ “ In Main T[op] M[ast] Steerg Sail.

10 5 “ NNW

11 4 “ “ Squally In Lower & F[ore] T[op] M[ast] D^o.

12 5 4 “ “ Mod. & Cloudy.

1 4

2 3 6 “ N Set F[ore] T[op] M[as]t Steering Sail
& lower d^o.

3 4

4 3 6 “ “ Light breezes & clear W^r.

5 4

6 4 4

7 4 2	“ “	Fair W ^r . Up all Hammocks bed ^g .	
8 3 6		& cloaths & cleaned below & opened all	
9 2		hatches & Scuttles. Got the Boats	At 21 ^H :11'
10 2		out on skids to repair. After breakfast	Lat ^d .
11 2		Got the Bread up again that had got	37°:45'N
12 2		wet, & to our mortification found a	Long ^d . by
		great quantity more all wet with salt	T[ime]
		water. Employed all hands picking	Keeper
		& airing it to endeavor to save all	14°:21'West
		we can & the Carpenter began about	
		the Boats.	

107

908

1015 Noon light Airs & fair W^r.

Merid. Alt^d. 29°:2'

Error 1

Latitude			Longitude			Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D R	D R	T.K.	Ther ^r .
S1°W	116	37°:39'	37°:49'W	14°:24'W	14°:21'W	Deck 65°.

[Page 28]

23.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Monday Dec^r. 31st. 1787 Observations

1	2	4	So.	West	Light breezes & Fair W ^r .
2	2	6	“	“	In Steering Sails and trim'd to the
			S½E	W W	Wind – Empl ^d . picking and
3	3	6			drying bread. and drying bedding
					& Cloaths.
4	3	6			
5	2	4	S ^o .		
6	2	4	SbW		
7	2	4	S ^o .		
8	3		“	“	D ^o . W ^r .
9	3		SSE		
10	2	4			
11	2		SEbS		
12	3		SE	“	Mod ^t . and cloudy.
1	4				
2	4	4			

3 4

4 4 SEbE “

5 4 SE

6 5 SEbS

7 5 SE

8 4 SEbS Empl^d. all the Morning empl^d. At 21^H:26'
about the bread. In the hold to get Lat^d.

9 4 SE½S plank up to repair the Boats - 36°:53'N
Clean^g. below & servicing the Long^d.

10 4 Rigging. Found missing four T K 13°:20 ½ ' W
Breakers that were wash'd over

11 4 4 Board in the late Gale.

Opened a Pun[cheo]n of Pork No. 559

12 3 6 Cont^s. 160 four pound pieces
short four pieces. A Pun[cheo]n Beef
No. 1305 Contents (short three pieces)
86 eight pound pieces.

86
1015 At Noon Cloudy W^r. but got dble
1101 Altd^s. for the lat^d.

	Latitude			Longitude		Rems at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	Ther ^r .
S 53°E	82	36°:50'N	36°:55'	13°:02'	13°:08½'	on Deck 64°

[Page 29]

24.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Tuesday Jan^y. 1 st. 1788 Observations

1 4 2 SSE SW Mod^t. and cloudy W^r.

2 4 4

3 4 3 Employed in the Hold and picking

and drying bread.

4 3 6

5 4 “ SEbS SWbS Wind unsteady to two & three points

6 3 2 SSE SW

7 3 6

8 2 4 SbE SWbW Wind Varying four & five points

9 4 SEbE SbW

10 3 5 ESE So.

11 4 SEbE SbW

12 4 “ “ A little Squally & some Rain. In 1st.
Reefs.

1 4 SbE SWbW

2 5 6 SE½S SWbS

3 5 6 SEbS “

4 4

5 4 5

6 5 2 SE SSW

7 5 5 SEbS SWbS

8 5 4	SSE½E	SW	Mod ^t and fair W ^r .	At 20 ^H :59'
			found the bread in the Bread	Lat ^d . 36°:7'
			Room much more damaged	Long ^d . by
9 5	SbE	SWbW	near the Transoms, and one	T K
			Cask entirely rotten in the	11°:36' W
10 5			Fish Room.	D ^o . O & O East
			Employed picking and	Same Time
			drying bread, serving the	Ramsden B - 11°:5'W
11 5			rigging and cleaning below.	D ^o . C - 11:39
12 5	“	“		Troughton H - 11:10
				Mean 11:18W

	At Noon fine pleasant W ^r . Swells from the NW. The Wind seldom steady to two or three points. All sails set.	T K + Therm. Obs ⁿ . 0°:18'
106		
1101		
1207		

	Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S 56°E	104	35°:53'N	35:51	11°:17'W	11°:25'W	11°:07'W

[Page 30]
25.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Wednesday Jan ^y . 2 ^d . 1788	Observations
1	4	4	So.	WSW	Mod ^t . & Cloudy W ^r .		
					Served Slops & Tobacco the People.		
2	4		S½W				
3	4	4	SbW	WbS			
4	3	4	“	“	A Little Squally.		
5	3	2	SW	WNW			
6	3	4	“	“			
7	6		SWbW	NWbW	D ^o . and small Rain		
8	7	4	WSW	NNW			
9	5		“	“	Mod ^t . & Hazy W ^r .		
10	4	4					
11	2						
12	2	4					

1 5

2 5 2

3 5 2

4 4 6 “ N^o.

5 4 4

6 4 6 “ “ Set all Steering Sails the starb^d. side

7 4 6

8 5 2 “ “ Fair W^r. – Clean'd below & empl^d. drawing Yarns making Matts, picking and drying bread & Carpenters repairing the Launch.

9 5

10 3 2

11 3 4

12 3 4 “ “ Fair W^r. & Swell from the NW.

107 Merid. Alt^d. 32°:14'

1207

1314 Error - ½

At 21^H:6'
Lat^d. 34°:46' N
Long^d. T.K. =
12°:07' W

Latitude			Longitude			Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	Ther ^r . In the Air
S41°W	98	34°:39'	34:35	12°:35'W	12°:16'W	65°

[Page 31]

26.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Thursd^y. Jan^y. 3rd. 1788 Observations

1 3 4 WSW NbW Mod^t. & Cloudy & has regularly come so these three

2 3 4		days as soon as the Sun had pass'd	
		the Merid ⁿ . condemned	
3 3 “	SWbW	[indecipherable] survey of	
		2109 lbs of Bread & one	
		Cask Cheese 150 lbs Nett	
4 4	NNW	wash'd to pieces in the late Gale	
		of the 27 th .	
5 4 2			
6 4	“	NW	
7 3 6			
8 2 4	“	NNW	Light Breezes, and cloudy
9 4			
10 4 6	“	NW	In lower & M[ain] T[op] Steering
			Sails
11 5			
12 5	“	“	Mod ^l . and Clear W ^r .
1 4 4			
2 4 4	“	NWbW	In Fore Top Mast Steer ^g . Sail
3 4 3			
4 2 2	SWbS	WNW	Cloudy
2 2	SWbW	NWbW	
5 5 5			
6 5 5			
7 6			
8 6 4	“	“	Fresh breeze & Cloudy
			At 21 ^h :49'
			Lat ^d . 33°:13'N
9 6 2		Employed making Matts &	Long ^d . T Keeper
		Spining Spun yarn.	- 13°:21'
10 6 4			

11 6 4

12 6 “ “ D^o. W^r. with a Squally
appearance all round the Horizon
as is frequently met with in the
neighbourhood of Land. Some
115 Mother Carews Chicken seen.
1314
1429

Mer^d. Alt^d. 33°:56'

Error 0

	Latitude			Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	Ther ^r . In Air
S35°W	118	33:03N	33:7	13:56W	13:33W	63 ½°

[Page 32]
27.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Friday Jan ^y . 4 th . 1788	Observations
1	6	6	SWbW	NW			Fresh Breezes & light passing squalls all around us, as in the
2	7	2					neighbour-[hood] of Land, but no other signs.
3	7	4					
4	7						
5	6	“		N			At 3 ^h :37' Lat ^d . 32°:47'N Long ^d . T. Keep 13°:44'W Varia. Compass by Azths.
6	5						A Compss – 19°:35'W D ^o . Turned – 18:14
7	5	6					B Compss – 19:29 D ^o . Turn'd – 18:22
8	5	“		“	Mod ^t . and clear W ^r .		
9	6						

10 7					Mean Var. 18:37W
11 8					
12 7 4					
1 7					
2 6 6					
3 7					
4 7		“	Set Steering Sails		
5 6		“	NNE		
6 6 6			Spoke the Fanny of London		
7 3 3			Jn ^o . Kenton Master bound to the		
2 4	SSW	NE	Coast of Guinea. out 12 Days.		
8 1			The W ^r . now very hazy as it is	At 20 ^H :30'	
4	SW		mostly found to be within the	Lat ^d . 31°:14'N	
			limits of the Trade Winds	Long ^d . T. Keeper	
			Spoke a French Ship bound	14°:48'W	
			to the Mauritius.	Varia p ^r . Azth ^s .	
9 6 4				A Compss - 22°:11'W	
10 7				d ^o . Turn'd – 22:30	
11 7				B Compass – 21:40	
				d ^o Turned – 21:57	
				Mean Varia. 22:4W	
12 7	“	“	Fresh Breezes & very hazy Wr.		
			with a long Swell from the North ^d .		
163			No Birds or Fish seen.		
1429					
1592					

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	Ther ^r . in Air
S34°W	159	30:52N	30°:49'	15°:41'W	15°:02'W	67½°

[Page 33]

28.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Saturd^y. Jan^y. 5th. 1788 Observations

1 6 2 SWbS ENE Fresh Breezes and very hazy W^r.

2 3 1
3 1 SSW NE Steered to the South^d. to clear
the Salvages & have a Safe run
for the Night.

4 6

5 6 6 At 3h:51' Lat^d. 30°:27'N
Long^d. T.K. = 15:7W

6 6 4 “ “ In all Steering Sails but the
Fore Top Mast.

7 7

8 7

9 6 6

10 6 4

11 6 6 “ NNE In Fore T[op] M^t. Steerg. Sail.

12 6 “ “ Supposing myself to the South^d.
of the Salvages. steered more to
1 6 SW the West^d.

2 5 4

3 5 3

4 5

5 5 6 “ NE

6 6 WSW “ Very Cloudy W^r. Made all Sail. &
steered a direct course for Tenariff
[Tenerife]

7 6 2

At 21^H:04'

Lat^d. 28°:56'N

8 6 4

Long^d. T.K. - 15°:39'W

9 5 6 “ “

Saw Tenarif bearg. WbS½S.

10 5 4

Cleaned & dried Ship. Very cloudy
over the Land. Saw the Grand Canary

11 5 4

bearg. South.

Lat^d. Needle)

Rock -)28°:43'N

Long^d. T.K. - 16:4W

12 5 4 “ “

Mod^t. and Cloudy The extremes of
The Isl^d. from West to S62°W. Two
Rocks w^{ch}. may be called the Brothers
W2°S and a very high like the
Needles W3°S 4 leag^s. The Brothers
are the North^d. of all the Land. No Birds
or Fish Seen.

147

1592

1739

O L.L.

Mer^d. Alt^d. 38°:26'

Err 2nd. - 1

Latitude				Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	Ther ^r . in Air
S27°W	141	28:46N	28°:39'	16°:54'W	15°:53'	66 ½°

[Page 34]

29.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Sund^y. 6th. Jan^y. 1788 Observations

1 5 “ SWbW NE Mod^t. and cloudy

2 4

6 ESE

At ½ past 1 The Brothers bore
true West whence I deduce their

3 2 6

lat^d. to be

28°:44' North

And their Long^d. by T. Keeper

16:05 West

4	2	4	“	“	Tkd The extremes of Tenarif NW½W to W½S.
5	2		NNW		
6	2		“	“	Tkd The Needle rock WNW 2 leag ^s .
7	3	1	SE	ENE	
8	3	2	“	“	D ^o . W ^r . The North end of the Island NW
9	2	4	SEbE	NebE	Tkd
10	3	2	NNW	NE	
11	3	2			
12	3	2	“	“	D ^o . W ^r . The North part of Tenariff. WestbN dis ^t . 3 leagues. Tkd.
1	2		ESE		
2	2	3	“	“	Fresh breezes & Clear W ^r .
3	3	“	SEbE	NEbE	
4	2		“	“	The North part Teneriffe NW. Tkd.
5	2	4	NNW	NE	
6	2	4	“	“	The North end of the Isl ^d . WNW, bore up for the Road.
7	4		WNW		
8	5		West	“	Mod ^t and Cloudy. Town S ^t . Cruz W½N 5 Miles.
9	3	6			
10	1	4	“	“	At ½ past 9 came to w th . the Sm. B[owe]r in 25 fm ^s . Moored a cable each way. B[es]t B[owe]r in 25 fm ^s . Cupola Tower or S ^t .
11	17	39			

18 06 Francis' church W¹/₂N. The east part of
12 the Road EbN and the Southerⁿ. Castle SW.
West part Grand Canary SSE. Off shore
³/₄ Mile. Found ridg^s here a Spanish packet
for Corruna, several other Vessels & an
American Brig.

[Various calculations not transcribed.]

	Latitude			Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t	Obs ^d	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	
		28°:28':26"		17:19	16°:18'W	

[Page 35]

30.

Remarks

It is evident from the Log that about eleven leagues is the most that we saw the Island Tenariff and this was no part near the Peak for that was entirely covered with Clouds. and the part that was to be seen seemed to be of so little extent that it might have been doubted by a Stranger whether it was Tenariff or not – The N Westernmost is a very remarkable head land for it appears very like a Horses head with the Ears exceedingly distinct – To the east^d of this head lie two round Rocks which to distinguish them I call the Brothers they lie S82°E from the head by compass & are of course the most northern boundary of the Isl^d Tenariff & which I fix in 28°:44'N and Long^d 16°:5'West. To the south^d of these lies a high pointed Rock w^{ch} I call the Needle and are but a small distance from the Main where the Coast is nearly E^t & west true, as the Horses' head sheet on with the easternmost part at N76°W by Compass – the distance from one part to the other I cannot speak of, but its extent is more than will allow the form of the Isl^d to be drawn to a point as I observe all the Charts have it.

The Wind failed us as we got towards the shore I therefore determined to keep at Sea for the Night & accordingly haul'd the wind at 2 O'Clock & stood to the east^d. At day light I made sail & got to an Anchor & moored without any trouble.

The only observation I could make this day was for the lat^d which I make 28°:28':26" North.

At Noon on the 5th. I have determined by the best Angles & Base I could establish, that the Town of S^t Cruz bore S52° W True dis^t 28 Miles which gives17 S^o. & 25 W^t. x Long^d.
Lat^d. & Long^d. by T.K. at Noon yesterday28;46 - 15:53

Whence its situation is by this estimation - 28:29N 16:18 West

[Page 36]

31.

Week Day Month Winds Rem^s. in S^t Cruz Tenariff.
Day

1788 NEbE The first part of these 24 Hours moderate breezes
Jan^y. & fair the middle was a little squally attended wth.
some small Rain and the latter part Light Airs and
cloudy with intervals of fair W^r.

Monday 7th. NNE Begun to set the Rigging up and the Carpenters
I set to work to repair our damages done in the
bad weather, the rest of the People were
employed in the hold.
NE At 1h:40' app[aren]t Time The Long^d. by T.K.
I found to be 16°:16½W

At 20:12 d^o. 16:18W
Ther. at Noon = 67½° in air

NE The first and latter part mod^t breezes and fair W^r.
with varia. airs in the Night and small drizzling
Rain.
Empl^d. completing the work of the Rigging & the
Carpenters repairing the Stern. Sent the Empty
Water Casks for water, to be filled by the People
on shore, as I thought it improper to risk my own
boats for fear of accidents from the Surf and in the
Morning I sent on board eight hundred & sixty
Three Gallons & a half of Wine from Collogan &
Sons Contractors.
The Surf being so very high four punch[eon]s
were stove to pieces & lost.
NEbN At 20h:43' app[aren]t Time I found the Long^d. by

T. Keep^r. 16°:17' W
The Therm^r. in the Air at Noon - 69°

	NEbN	The first and latter part mod ^t . breezes & fair W ^r . the Middle squally & small drizlng Rain with Calms & Variable Winds.
Wednesd ^y . 9 th .	Varia. West ^{ly} .	Empl ^d . this day principally in the holds stowing Casks & receiving water from the Shore and the Carpenters repairing the Boats & getting all ready for Sea. Rec ^d . a spar for a Top S[ai]l Yard.
	NbE	At 22H:2' app[aren]t Time I found the Long. by T. Keep ^r . 16°:16¼'W
		The Therm ^r . at Noon in the Air 67°.
	NEbN	I have not been able to get any observa. as yet for the Variation of the Compass.

[Page 37]
32.

Week Day	Month	Winds	Rem ^s . in S ^t . Cruz Road Tenariffe.
	Day		

1788			Mod ^t . breezes and fair W ^r . the first and latter part the middle variable winds & Calm with drizzling
Jan ^y .		NEbN	Rain. At 1 PM came in anchored here the Sloop Chance of London W ^m . Merideth Master out 19 Days from the Downs, and bound to Barbadoes, but having suffered much from the heavy Gales we had also met with. They came here to refit & get some supplies.
		Calm	
		N ^{oly} .	This afternoon we completed all our work and having received on board 230 lbs Spanish, of Fresh Beef, with some Pumpkins & Potatoes w ^{ch} . was all the fresh supplies I could get we
Thursd ^y .	10 th .	ENE	unmoored in the Morning & sailed with a fresh breeze about one O'Clock. Found the B[est] B[ower] Cable Rub'd 10 fms. from the Anchor.
		ESE	At 20h:14' Appar[ent] Time Long ^d . by T.K. I found - 16°:16¼'W.

Ther^r. at Noon in the Air 66°.

From the daily observations made here by the
Time Keeper the Long^d. of this Road is as follows.

6th. - 16°:16':30"
6 - 16:18:00
7 - 16:17:00
8- 16:16:15
9 - 16:16:15

Mean 16:16:48

1 - Allowg. S^t Francis' Church West
16:17:48 West Long^d. of d^o. note
28:28:00 N - Lat^d. - of d^o.

On the 9th. as I could not attend to making observ. for the Variation I ordered Mr.
Fryer the Master to take them w^{ch}. by Two Compasses from a mean of 4 sights
each way the Variation was given as follows

A Compass -- 20°:1' West
d^o. Turn'd -- 21:19
B Compass -- 19:41
d^o. Turn'd -- 19:5

Mean -- 20:1 West

This Variaⁿ. exceeds my Idea of what it should be here, but two days before I
came in the Variaⁿ. also was above 22°. as yet therefore I cannot discover if my
Compasses are affected. In Aug^t. 1776 I made the Var. 14°:40' W with Cap^t.
Cook in the Resolution.

[Page 38]

33.

Remarks at Tenariff

From the observations I have had an opportunity of making at this place, I
determine the Church of S^t Francis which has a Cupola Tower, to lie in Lat^d.
28°:28' N. and Long^d. from Gren^{ch}. 16°17':48" West, and allowing the Pic as I
found it in 1776 to be 12 Miles South of it & Long^d. 29':30" West the situation of
the Pic then becomes 28°:16' North and 16°:47' West. I know when I was with
Cap^t. Cook that the situations of those places were determin'd to be near a quarter

of a degree further to the West, but I am inclined to believe that the present, by agreeing so near with the French astronomers observations, are most likely to be exact.

I am sorry I had not an opportunity of making more observations for the Variation of the Compass, for as I had led myself to believe it did not exceed 15 degrees, I could not help being more particularly surprised to find we had made it full 20 degrees. The weather has been remarkable cloudy the whole passage which has prevented me from making the number of observations I otherwise would, and most likely could have determined the value of these observations; but it is to be remarked that in the lat^d. 30°:52'N I found 22° Variation. Time and opportunity therefore must determine how far my Compasses may be affected by Iron in the Ship. My observations are invariably made in one spot (that is on the Binnacle) so that at all times it is to be supposed they will equally be affected.

The Course into this Road of S^t Cruz is WbS by Compass from the NE part of the Isl^d. , keeping at a distance of two or three Miles from the shore which is one continued range of craggy Hills – The Town lies at the western part of those Hills off which you Anchor from 20 to 25 fm^s. S^t Francis' Church which has a Cupola Tower bearg. from WbS to West and the Fort on the South point of the Road bearg. from SWbW to SW½S°. The southernmost land that can be seen then, will be a half or a quarter of point farther out, and your distance from the shore will be about ¾ of a Mile.

[Page 39]

34.

There is a Town which can be easily seen to the south^d. of S^t Cruz as you are standing into the Road – while this Town remains open with the South point of the road, altho you appear near in you can find no ground for anchorage; but after you have shut it entirely in, you will begin to draw in upon the Bank, and not until the southernmost Castle bears full SW should a Ship be anchored.

The bottom is black soft mud, which however they say is not free from Rocks and occasions them to buoy their Cables up. This precaution whether useful or not in that particular they think easeth their riding when there is much sea setting into the Road. They moor in general with four Anchors, but two of them are very commonly a burlesque of security, being of small weight and small Hawsers. Morning is much to be recommended at this place, and the tauter the Ship is moored the better, that in little Winds the Cables may not drop to the ~~ground~~ bottom, for it is probable there are some patches of foul ground as I this time found one of my Cables a little Rubb'd.

The landing on the Beach is generally impracticable with our own Boats, but there is a very fine Pier on which people may land with little difficulty, and where very fine fresh water is conducted down by a pipe for the use of Shipping in general, & to which all Merchant Ships pay.

As soon as I anchored I sent an Officer to the Governor to pay my respects to him, and to acquaint him I had put in to receive some few refreshments and to repair what damages I had sustained in bad weather – which both to my Boats and Ship altho I had got the better of ~~the defects~~ in some degree, yet it required to be

[Page 40]

35.

better done before I proceeded on my Voyage. The Officer return'd with a very politic message from the Governor the Marquis de Brancheforté that I should most readily be supplied with any article the Island afforded. I also desired the Officer to acquaint the Governor that I would salute provided I had the same number of Guns return'd, but as his Excellency never return'd the same number but to Persons equal in Rank to himself this ceremony was laid aside.

I was soon visited by the Port Master a Cap^t. Adams in the Spanish service – the intent of which was to get informed, of what I had already acquainted his Excellency, who on being informed of the circumstances by this Officer, he immediately afterwards ~~came~~ sent him on board with some other Officers to compliment me on my Arrival, and in the afternoon as soon as the Ship was safe moored I waited on the Governor in person & thanked him for his politeness & civility.

On Monday morning I began to forward the Ship's busyness with the utmost dispatch. I found Mr. McCarrick who was contractor when I was here in 1776 had given it up to Mr. Collogan, to whom I immediately went and ordered the necessary supplies I wanted. As I had the honor to receive a most polite invitation to dine with the Governor to day I accepted of it, and before I left him took an opportunity to ask his permission, for a Botanical person M^r. Nelson, who is wth me to be admitted to range the Hills and any part he might think eligible, in search of plants & natural curiosities – this was readily complied with. He has instituted here a most charitable and laudable society of which he ~~himself is the head~~ takes the trouble to superintend &

[Page 41]

36.

they have by considerable contributions built a large airy dwelling that contains 120 poor Girls, and as many Men and Boys, with a sufficiency of land round it to enlarge the building for more objects of charity as their funds increase. I had the honor to be shown by his Excellency this Assylum (or Hospicio as they call it) where every degree of chearfulness and content was very conspicuous in the countenance of every one. The decency and ~~cleanly~~neatness of the dress of the Young Females, with the order they were arranged in at their Spining Wheels and Looms in an extensive Airy Appartment, was equal to any thing I ever saw. They had a Governess who inspected and regulated all their Work. Their Manufactories were Ribbons of all colours, Tapes and coarse linens, all which is managed ~~by~~ and brought to perfection by themselves from the Flax or Silk in its first State – even the dying of the Colours are all done by them, and have great beauty & lustre as well as variety. They are kept in the most regular order with respect to hours, and their health is most carefully attended to. Their appartments are exceedingly clean and decent, and their Meals altho homely are plentiful and good. They are taken in for five years at the end of which they are at liberty to marry, and have for their portion their Wheel & Loom, and a sum of money in proportion to the Value of their Fund, which at present is estimated at Two Thousand Dollars a Year from the sale of their manufactories.

The Men and Boys are not less attended to, - they are employed in courser work, blanketing and all kinds of Woolens, and here if they become infirm they spend the remainder of their days comfortably and under a Watchfull Inspector, who is placed here also in the same manner

[Page 42]

37

as the Governess over the Girls. They are all visited every day by the Governor, and a ~~Minister~~ Clergyman attends ~~them daily~~ towards the Evening, who admonisheth them to continue to behave well and look forward to the great benefits that will result from their good conduct and Industry.

Such is this noble institution, before which the poor naturally given to Indolence, and the Climate rather admitting them to feel their but few wants ~~but few~~ would wander in Rags and uncleanness, and bear in preference that wretched situation to an Industrious way of Life.

Altho' I find the season is not favourable for any other supplies besides Wine, we have this advantage to get it tolerably good, and as I conceive it to be far preferable in hot weather to my Spirits I have ordered a sufficient quantity on board. I have also bought some for my own use of the first quality for £15 Sterlg. p^r. Pipe which with an additional age of two years may challenge the best London

Madeira. Cap^t. Cook in his account of this place in our last Voyage says he got the best wine at £12 p^r. Pipe, but it has been denyed to me that it was so, mine however has cost me £15, and the contract wine is at 20^d. sterling p^r. Gallon for which I must do Mr. Collogan the justice to say, he has given me wine of an excellent quality. Indian Corn – Potatoes – Pumpkins and Onions are all very scarce and double the price of what they are in summer – Beef also is scarce to be got and is exceedingly lean – I rec^d. 230 lbs at nearly 6¼ p^r. lb sterlg. The Corn was 3 Curr[en]t Dollars p^r. Fanneg equal to 10s Ster^g. & the Fanneg only equal to two small Bushels. Bread sold at 7½ Dollars p^r. Kental or 100 lbs English which is 25s sterling – Poultry also was scarce & a good Fowl was sold for nearly 3 Shillings.

[Page 43]
38.

This is not therefore a place for Ships to touch at, at this Season of the Year unless for Wine, but from March to November the supplies are plentiful and a variety of fruit of which at this time I have only seen a few dried Figs & some bad oranges.

Mr. McCarrick, from whom is Doctor Andersons account in Cook's Voyage, respecting the Tea Plant and the Impregnated Lemon, related to me the same matter - The impregnated Lemon which is one perfect Lemon within another he assured me was only produced from the blossoms that are thrown out in the Month of May, and not then are all the Fruit impregnated. At this time I saw a Tree in his Garden which had a few fruit on it, but these were just the same as the common Lemmon. M^r. Nelson inform'd me he had seen what they called the Tea plant but ~~that~~ he thought it was not at all like any of that which is in the East Indies.

The Town of S^t. Cruz is near a half Mile in extent each way built in a regular Manner, but the Streets very ill paved. Very little verdure is on the adjacent Hills & the situation in summer time is intolerably hot, but as their Dwellings are in general large and airy the heat is very bearable when not exposed to the Sun. Indeed the Climate of this Island is as desirable as any in the World, and the different situations that it affords, give you as many different temperatures of Air, w^{ch}. with the temperance of the Inhabitants, it is not to be wondered at that they live in general to be Old. Diseases are not various or common, but if any epidemick maladies happen among them they are often attended with the several consequences particularly the Small Pox, which however they endeavor to counteract by inoculation. From this it is

[Page 44]

39.

highly proper that they should be as particular as they are in admitting Ships or Vessels to have any communication ~~from~~ with the shore without bills of health.

A Sloop from London called the Chance W^m. Meridith Master bound to Barbadoes out 19 Days from the Downs came in the day before I sailed in want of several articles owing to the bad weather he had met with in his Passage, but as he had brought no Bill of health, the Governor would not allow any one to come on shore unless I could vouch for them that no epidemic disease raged particularly in England at the time they sailed. As it was nearly my time of leaving the land I could of course very safely do it, and the Governor ~~then~~ immediately gave them permission to receive the necessary supplies.

The Town is supplied with very fine water from a Fountain near the residence of the Governor. It is brought to this place from a Stream about 6 Miles distant across the Hills to the NE of the Town by wood gutterings.

I was induced to hire Craft to bring our Water off in preference to risking my own Boats, and I paid at the Rate of 5/- Sterg. p^r. Ton.

The computation of the number of Inhabi- of this Island varies from 80 to 100 Thousand, and however the export of Wine has been stated I have been assured 20 Thousand pipes, and half the quantity of Brandies, is the most that has ever taken place. Vessels are frequently here from S^t. Eustatia and from thence a great quantity of Wine is supplied to the West India Islands under the name of Madeira and I see no great reason to lament their being deceived.

[Page 45]

40.

The greatest extent of this Island is computed by the Inhabitants to be 54 Miles which may be the case as they ride it, but I make it no more than 37 as I fix its northern extremity in 28°:43'N & its southern in 28°:06'N however making a Diagram of the Island I compute it to contain 728 Square Miles.

The Teneriffeans Say the Island is of more value than all the other Canaries put together, yet they are often glad, and in scarce seasons receive supplies from the Grand Canary, but as much as this may be the Case, their Vineyards are considered vastly superior. Their produce of Corn altho exceedingly good is not sufficient for their consumption, but the Americans supply them and take their Wines in return.

It may not be unworthy of notice a Grand essay of the Governors of raring Trees near the waterside in front of the Town – as the Rains here are not sufficient to produce the desired effect, they have ingeniously conducted water to their Roots by pipes and the Soil being improved they have every chance of success – A pretty extensive promenade is formed among those Trees ornamented with Vases & a Jet d'eau.

It was ~~Friday~~ Wednesday afternoon before I could get all the Ship's duty & busyness completed, and having acquainted the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty of my proceedings, a packet being to sail for Corronna in the Course of ten days, I left this place with a cheerful & happy Ship's company all in good health & Spirits with a fine Breeze from the SE.

[Page 46]

41.

[Blank page]

[Page 47]

42.

[Blank page]

[Page 48]

43.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Friday 11th. Jan^y. 1788 Observations

1	“	“	“	ESE	Mod ^t . breezes and clear W ^r . Fired a Gun a sig ^l . for Sailing. Got under way & at 3 the Town of S ^t . Cruz
3					bore North 7 Miles. Set Steerg. S[ai]ls and made all Sail.

5 5 4

6	5	SWbS	“	The SW end of Grand Canary SEbS, NE p ^t . of S ^t . Cruz Road NEbN.
7	6			At ½ past 6 A round lump of land like an Isl ^d . on the SE p ^t . of Teneriff
8	5	6		bore true West, 4 leag ^s . –

9 5 1

10 2

2 4 SWbW SbE Taken aback. W^r. Cloudy.

11 3 2 SW¹/₂S

12 2 4 SW SSE Light Squalls of Rain.

1 2 6 SWbS

2 3 2

3 4 4 SEbE

4 5 4 “ SE Mod^t. And cloudy W^r.

5 5 6

6 5 4

7 6 2

8 6 2 “ “ Fresh breezes & Cloudy. After
clean^g. Ship fore & aft and every
9 7 officers Cabbin, the People were
empl^d. in making Matts & Spunyarn.

10 7

11 7 2

12 7 2 SW SSE D°. W^r. I now ordered the People to
serve a pint of wine p^r. Man & put
them ²/₃ Allowance of bread. served
Fresh Meat

112

1806

1918

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
S14°W	116	26°:34'N	26°:36'N
			16°:48'W
			T.K.
			Ther ^r . 64 ¹ / ₂ °

[Page 49]

44.

Remarks

The weather altho very fine was not so favourable over the Land as to enable us to see any thing of the famous Pic. As we advanced towards the SW extremity of ~~the Island~~ Tenariff a small lump of land became very conspicuous as an Island which particularly surprised me as no map had taken the least notice of it, but by 6 O'Clock having sent an officer to the Masthead he acquainted me it joined to the Main by low land, from whence it ranges gradually up to the Pic. From the lat^d. S^t. Cruz at ½ past 6 when the SE point of the Island bore true west I deduce it lat^d. to be 28°:6'N.

I now ordered my people to be at three Watches and gave the charge of the third watch to a M^r. Fletcher Christian one of the Mates. I have ever considered this among seamen as conducive to health, and not being jaded by keeping on Deck every other four hours, it adds much to their content and chearfullness – Home time, for relaxation & mirth is absolutely necessary, and I have considered it so much so that after 4 O'Clock the Evening is laid aside for their amusement & dancing. I had great difficulty before I left England to get a Man to play the Violin and I prefered at last to take one two thirds blind than come without one.

As $\frac{2}{3}$ allowance of bread is as much as Men generally consume I ordered them to be put to it on this day and as their water is all filtered through Dripstones which I have procured for that purpose few Seamen & Officers I may venture to say can ever boast of more comforts at Sea.

[Page 50]

45.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Saturday 12th. Jan^y. 1788 Observations

1 7 SWbS SE Fresh Breezes & cloudy W^r.

2 7

3 7

4 7

5 7 4 In 1st. Reefs

6 7 6

7 7

8 7 4 “ “ Some Rain

9 7 2

10 7 “ “ Cloudy W^r.

11 7

12 7

1 8

2 7 6

3 7 6

4 7 2 SEbS

5 6 4

6 6 4

7 6 6 SW½W

8 6 SWbW SbE

9 6 Employed about a variety of necessary
duties for the Ship, & fitted Boats coverings

10 6 4 WSW S^o.

11 6 SWbW½W SbE

12 4 4 WSW S^o. Light Breezes with a continu- of very cloudy
W^r. – Got an indifferent observation.

165

1918

2083

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. at Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	
S26°W	161	24°:08'N	24°:08'N	18°:06'W		Ther. Air 68½°

[Page 51]

46.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Sunday 13 th . Jan ^y . 1788	Observations
---	---	---	---------	-------	--------------------	---	--------------

1	4	4	WSW	S ^o .	Light breezes & Cloudy W ^r .		
---	---	---	-----	------------------	---	--	--

2	4	2					
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

3	3	4	SWbW	SbE			
---	---	---	------	-----	--	--	--

4	4	Saw many porpoises				
---	---	--------------------	--	--	--	--

5	6					
---	---	--	--	--	--	--

6	5	4					
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

7	3	SW	SSE				
---	---	----	-----	--	--	--	--

8	3					
---	---	--	--	--	--	--

9	4	6	SWbW	SbE	A Little Squally.		
---	---	---	------	-----	-------------------	--	--

10	5	WSW	S ^o .				
----	---	-----	------------------	--	--	--	--

11	4	2	WbS	SbW			
----	---	---	-----	-----	--	--	--

12	3	“	“	In 1 st . Reefs.			
----	---	---	---	-----------------------------	--	--	--

1	4					
---	---	--	--	--	--	--

2	3					
---	---	--	--	--	--	--

3	2	4					
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

4	2	“	WSW	S ^o .	Light Winds & Cloudy		
---	---	---	-----	------------------	----------------------	--	--

5	1	4	SW	SSE			
---	---	---	----	-----	--	--	--

6 " 4 WSW S^o. At 20^H:30'
 Lat^d. 23°:31'N
 7 1 N WSW D^o. W^r. & Variable Airs and fair Long^d. T. Keeper
 W^r. 18°:59' W
 Varia p^r. Azth^s.
 8 " 6 SSW WbS Served fresh Meat. A Compass - - 14.46
 d^o. Turned - - 17:39
 9 1 4 SE SSW Cleaned & Washed below - B Compss - - 15:18
 Muster'd and saw every one d^o. Turn'd - - 15:18
 10 2 W clean and Read the Articles Mean Var. 15:45 W
 of War &c. & performed divine
 11 2 WbS SbW Service
 12 2 " WSW S^o. Light Airs & fine W^r. All Sail Set
 on a Wind
 74
 2083
 2157

Long^d. made from Tenariff by
 D.R. T.K.
 2°:53' 2°:49'W

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	Ther. in the Shade
S57°W	71	23°:29'N	23°:35'N	19°:11'W	19°:7'W	70°

[Page 52]
 47.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Monday 14 Jan^y. 1788 Observations

1 3 West SSW Light breezes and fine clear W^r.
 & smooth Water.

2 3

3 2 4 WbN SWbS

4 2 4 W SSW Saw a great quantity of Scum on At 4^h:23'
 the Water supposed to be Fish Lat^d. 23°:27'N
 5 2 4 WbS SbW Spawn. Long^d. by T. Keeper
 19:21W

6 2 4

7 2 4 “ “

8 2 4 Light Airs & Clear W^r.

9 1 WbN “ Tkd

10 2 NWbW SWbW

11 1 4 S½E WSW

12 1 SSE SW Inclineable to Calm

1 “ 6 SE SSW

2 “ 6

3 “ 6

4 1 “ SSE SW Tkd. Clear W^r. and very pleasant

5 2 2 WbS SbW

6 3 WSW S^o.

7 3

8 3 “ “ Out 1st. Reefs.

9 2 WbS SbW Employed making Matts Points & Gaskets.

10 1 4

11 1

12 1 “ “ Clear & Pleasant W^r.

46

2157

2203

Varia p^r. Azimuths
A Compss - - 15°:14'W
d^o. – Turn'd - -14:58
B Compss - - 14:5
d^o. – Turn'd - -14:16
Mean 14:38

Difference Long^d. this day by
D.R. T.K.
0°:39' W 0°:52' W

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	
S70°W	37	23°:16'N	23°:16'	19°:50'W	19°:59'W	Ther – 73½°

[Page 53]
48.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Tuesd ^y .	15. Jan ^y .	1788	Observations
1	1		West	SSW	Light Airs & clear pleasant W ^r . & Swell from the NW.				
2	1								
3	1								
4	1								At 4 ^h :15' Lat ^d . by the Moon 23°:19'N
5	“	6	WbN	SWbS					Long ^d . T. Keeper 20°:4'W
6	“	4							Varia. p ^r . Azimuths
7	“		WNW	Calm					A Compss - - 12°:07'W d ^o . Turned - - 12:12
8	“								B Compss - - 12:39 d ^o . Turned - - 12:25
9	“								Mean - - 12:21W
10	“								
11	“								
12	“								
1	“								
2	“								
3	“		SE	d ^o .					
4	“								

5 “			At 20 ^h :57'
			Lat ^d . - 23°:19'N
6 “			Long ^d . T. Keeper
			19°:47'W
7 “			Varia p ^r . Azimuths
			A Compss - - 16:40
8 1 SW N			d ^o . Turn'd - - 17:31
			B Compss - - 15:28
9 1 4	Struck Several Dolphin.		d ^o . Turn'd - - 15:20
	Got up all Cloaths & bedding		Mean - - 16:40W
10 1	to Air & washed & Cleaned		
	below.		
11 “ 6			Long ^d . O & C reduced to
			20h:57' the Time Keeper.
12 “ 6	D ^o . W ^r .		Ramsd ⁿ . B - - 19°:33'
			d ^o . - - C - - 19:49
			Troughton H - - 19:38
			Mean - - 19:40W
11			
2203			
2214			Difference Long ^d . this day by
			D.R. T.K.
			0°:6'W 0°:10'E ^t

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	
West	5	23°:16'N	23°:12'	19°:56'W	19°:49'W	Ther 71°

[Page 54]

49.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Wednesd^y. Jan^y. 16th. 1788 Observations

1 “	Calm & pleasant W ^r .	
2 “		
3 “	Empl ^d . examining some wet	
	Provisions which was fill'd up with	
4 “	new pickle.	At 20 ^h :28'
		Lat ^d . - 22°:30'N

5	2	“	SSW	SE	Light breezes & Clear W ^r .	Long ^d . T.K. - 20°:6'W
						Varia p ^r . Azimuths
6	2					A Compss - - 16°:12'
						d ^o . Turn'd - - 17:22
7	1	4				B Compss - - 16:32
						d ^o . Turn'd - - 16:52
8	1	6				Mean - 16:44 ½
9	3	4				
10	3	4				
11	3		SWbS	SEbS		
12	2					
1	1					
2	1					
3	1					
4	1	“	SSW	SEbE		
5	1					
6	1					
7	2					
8	2	2	“	ESE	Set Steerg. Sails – Saw many	The above
					Porpoises & some Sharks.	observ. should
9	3	6			Emp ^d . making Spun yarn &	be here.
					Points. Airing Bread -	
10	3	4				
11	4	4				
12	4		“	“	Light Breezes & Clear W ^r .	
	45					
	2214					
	2259					

Difference Long^d. this day by
D.R. T.K.
0°:20'W 0°:15'W

		Latitude		Longitude		
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	
S18°W	59	22°:20'N	22:32	20°:16'W	20°:4W	Ther - 70°

[Page 55]
50.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Thursd^y. Jan^y. 1788 17th. Observations

1	2	SSW	ENE	Light Airs and clear pleasant W ^r . - All Sails set -
2	2			
3	1	4		
4	2	“	NE	At 4 ^h :34' Lat ^d . - 22°:15'N Long ^d . T. Keeper 20:3W & red ^d . to same time. B Sext ^t . - - 19°:57' C - - - - - 20:1 H - - - - - 20:0 Mean -- 19:59W
5	2			
6	1	6		
7	2	3		
8	2	4		
9	1	6		
10	2			Varia same time A Compss - - 14°:2' d ^o . Turn'd - - 15:4 B Compss - - 14:19 d ^o . Turned - - 14:27 Mean - - 14:28W
11	2			
12	2	6		
1	2	6	“	North
2	3			

3 3 “ NbE

4 3 4

5 3 6 “ NNE

6 3 4

7 4 “ NEbN

8 4 “ “ Light breezes & clear W^r. with
very smooth Water.

9 3 7

At 20^h:35'
Lat^d. 21°:23'N
Long^d. T. Keeper
20°:13'W

10 4 2 Washed & Cleaned below &
got up some Bread to Air.

11 4 2

12 4 4 “ NNE Very pleasant W^r. – All Sails Set
before the Wind

69
2259
2328

Difference Long^d. this day by
D.R. T.K.
0°:11'W 0°:11'W

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R. D.R. T.K L & T.K
S ³ / ₄ W	70	21°:10'	21°:11' 20°:27'W 20°:15'W 20°:07'W 71°

[Page 56]
51.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Frid^y. Jan^y. 18th. 1788 Observations

1 4 6 SSW ENE Mod^t. breezes and hazy W^r. but
remarkably pleasant. All Sails
2 5 set.

3 5

4 5 4						At 4 ^h :13'
5 5 4						Lat ^d . - - 20°:50'N
6 5 7	“	NE	Fine Clear Eveng.			Long ^d . T.Keeper 20:18W
7 5 7						& rec ^d . same time
8 6 1						Rams ^d . B - - 20°:4'W
						d ^o . C - - 19:53
						Trought. H - - 20:16
						Mean - - 20:4W
9 5 4			Lunar Obser ^s . since 14 th . reduc ^d to 4h:13' this day by the T.K.			
10 5	“	NEbN	Time Long ^d . by	Long ^d . by	Correc ⁿ .	True Long ^d .
			When T.Keeper	Observ.	to be	at 4h:13'
12 4 6	“	NNE			applied to	this day
					red ^c . them	
					to 4h:13'	
1 4 6			15	19°:47'	19°:33' B	+ 31':00" 20°:04'
					19:49 C	20:20
					19:38 H	20:9
			17 th	20°:03'	19:57 B	+ 15':00" 20:12
					20:01 C	20:16
					20:00 H	20:15
2 5 5				20°:18'	20:4 B	20:4
					19:53 C	19:53
3 5 7					20:16 H	20:16
						20:10W
						20:18W
						T.K. = 8 + than Obs ⁿ .
4 6 5		NEbN	Fresh Trade and fine W ^r .			
5 7 4			These			
6 7						
7 7 3						
8 7 3	“	“				At 19h:57' Lat ^d . - 19°:14'N
						Long ^d . T.Keeper - 20°:31'W

9 6 6 Empl^d. variously in
necessary duties

10 6 ” NE

11 5 4

12 4 6 ” “ Very fine W^r. and all Sail Set.

136
2328
2464

Difference Long^d. this day by
D.R T.K
0°:20'W 0°:23'W

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	In the Air
S ³ / ₄ W	140	18°:51'N	18°:51'N	20°:47'W	20°:38'W	20°:30'W	Ther – 70

[Page 57]
52.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Saturd ^y .	Jan ^y .	19 th .	1788	Observations
1	4		SSW	NE	Mod ^t .	Breezes and clear pleas ^t				
					W ^r .					
2	3	6	SW							
3	3	4								
4	3	4								At 4 ^h :36'
										Lat ^d . - 18°:39'N
5	3	4								Long ^d . T.Keeper
										20°:44'W
6	3	5	“	NEbN						Varia p ^r . Azths.
										A Compass - 13°:18'W
7	3									d ^o . Turned - 14:48
										B Compass – 14:09
8	3		“	ENE	In Starb ^d .	Steering Sails				d ^o . Turn'd – 14:13
										Mean – 14:07W

9 4 6

10 5 “ SEbN Wind varying five points

11 5 2

12 5 4

1 5 “ SEbS

2 2 6 “ “ Little Wind at times.

3 2 6

4 4 4 “ ESE

5 3 6

6 3 6

7 4

8 4 4 “ “ Mod^t. And very hazy W^r.

9 4 6 The lower Steering Sails
being too deep I cut them &
10 5 2 made a Royal out of the
Canvass.

11 5 Washed & cleaned below &
washed with Vinegar –

12 5 4 “ SEbE Very Pleasant W^r. but very hazy.

99

2464

2563

Difference Long^d. this day by

D.R.

T.K.

0°:57'E

0°:51'E

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. at Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K	Ther in the Air
SSW ³ / ₄ W	105	17°:20'N	17°:20'N	21°:44'W	21°:29'W	21°:21'W	74°

[Page 58]

53.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s	Sund ^y	Jan ^y	20 th	1788	Observations
1	5	1	SW	SEbE	Mod ^t	Breezes and pleasant W ^r .				
						but exceedingly hazy.				
2	5	1								
3	5									
4	5	4								At 5 ^H :8'
5	5	4								Lat ^d . - 16°:59'N
6	5	6								Long ^d . T.Keeper
										21:45W
7	6	4								
8	6	6	“	ESE						
9	6	4								
10	6	2								
11	6									
12	5	4								Fine Moonlight Night –
1	5	2								
2	5	3								
3	5									
4	5	2								
6	5	4	“	ENE						
7	7									At 20 ^h :24'
						Saw a Man of War Bird and many				Lat ^d . - 14°:53'N
						flying fish -				Long ^d . T.Keeper
8	7									

22°:33'W

9 6 6 Muster'd and saw every Person
clean and I ordered every one to
10 7 attend at Divine Service

11 6 4

12 6 “ “ NEbE Very hazy & a fresh Trade.

141	Difference Long ^d . this day by
2563	D.R. T.K
2704	1°:16'W 1°:17'W

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R. D.R. T.K L & T.K Ther in the
S31°W	142	15°:18'N	15°:15'N 23°:00'W 22°:46'W 22°:38'W Air 75°

[Page 59]
54.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Mond ^y .	Jan ^y .	21 st .	1788	Observations
1	6		SW	NEbE	Fresh breezes & a fine pleasant Trade but exceedingly hazy.					
2	5	6	SWbW½W		I altered my course to the west ^d . because I was within the limits of seeing S ^t . Jago but the eveng. continued so hazy could only see the looming off it at Sun down.					At 4 ^h :51' Lat ^d . - 14°:58'N Long ^d . T.Keeper 23°:6'W
3	6									
4	5	6			I did not choose to loose any time & therefore at 6 O'Clock I again steered to the South ^d .					
5	5	2								
6	5	4			so as to make all Sails have effect and make the most of a fine Wind.					

7 6 4 SSW

8 6 2

9 7 2

10 7 2 “ EbN

11 7 4

12 7 4 “ “ Fine Moon light Night

1 8

2 8 4 “ East

3 8 2

4 8 4 “ “ A Strong Trade and fine W^r.

5 7 6

6 7 6

7 8 “ “ This Morning got the B^r. Anchors in
on Deck and began to prepare our
8 9 Awnings with hoses to save Rain
9 9 Water. Other hands as usual after
breakfast employed cleaning below.

10 8 4

11 8

12 8 “ “ D^o. W^r. but very hazy – A few Flying
fish seen. Saw what is generally
174 called a White Booby & what I consider
2704 as a Tropical Ganet & have seldom
2878 seen any of them far from Land.

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K. Therm ^r . in
S18°W	168	12°:39'N	12°:39'N 23°:54'W the Shade 75°.

[Page 60]
55.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Tuesd^y. 22nd. Jan^y. 1788 Observations

1 7 5 SSW East Strong Trade and very hazy W^r.

2 3 7 SbW¹/₂W
7 4 Saw some Porpoises.

4 7 6

5 7 2

6 7 4 Many Flying Fish flew in to the
Ship. Some boobies seen.

7 7 2

8 8

9 8 4 SSW

10 8 4

11 8 2 “ “ In M[ain] T[op] M[ast] & T[op]
G[allant] Steering Sails

12 8 6 SbW “

1 8

2 8

3 8

4 8 2

5 8

6 8 2

7 8 Set M[ain] T[op] G[allant] Steerg At 19^h:51'
Sail. Lat^d. T. Keeper

8 8 Empl^d. drawing Yarns & 23°:58' W
Sailmakers fitting the awnings Varia p^r. Azths

9 8 4

10 8 4

11 9

12 8 4 “ “ D^o. W^r. Carrying Lower, Fore T[op]
M[ast] T[op] Gall[ant] & Main T[op]
194 G[allant] Steering Sails
2878
3072

L L
Merid Alt^d. 60°:38½'
Error - - ¼ Difference Long^d. since the 20th. by
D.R. T.K.
1°:12'W 1°:12'W

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R. D.R. T.K L & T.K Ther in the
S5°W	191	9°:29'N	9°:29'N 24°:12'W 23°:58'W 23°:50'W Air 76 ½°

[Page 61]
56.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Wednesd^y. Jan^y. 23^d. 1788 Observations

1	7	6	SbW	East	Fresh Trade and very hazy W ^r . I now find my Doctor to be a drunken Sot he is constantly in liquor, having a private Stock by him, which I have assured him shall be taken away if he does not desist from making himself such a Beast.	
2	7	6				
3	7	2				
4	7					
5	7					At 4 ^h :59'
						Lat ^d . – 8°:54'S
6	7					Long ^d . T.Keeper 23°:59'W
7	7					Varia. p ^r . Azths A Compss - - 9°:50'W
8	7	4				d ^o . Turned - - 10:18
9	7	5				B Compss - - 10:5 d ^o . Turned - - 9:50
						Mean - 10:1W
10	7	5				

11 7 6

12 7

1 6 6

2 7 2

3 6 6

4 6 4

“ Wind unsteady sometimes
blowing fresh and at others
little wind.

5 5 2

6 5

7 5 6

8 7

Empl^d. cleaning below and other
necessary duties. Sailmakers fitting At 20^h:18'
Awnings Lat^d. 7°:25'N
Long^d. T. Keeper
No Birds or Fish Seen. 24°:2'W

10 6

11 6

12 5 6 “ “

Mod. Trade and fair W^r. but very
hazy. Sail Set as Yesterday. The
error in acc^t I suppose owing to the
Wind being unsteady & not judging
right of the distance.

162
3072
3234

Difference Long^d. this day by
D.R. T.K.
0°:6'W 0°:5'W

Merid. Alt^d. 63°:32'
O Center

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. at Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	Ther in the
S2°W	147	7°:2'N	6°:46'N	24°:18'W	24°:3'W	23°:55'W	Air

[Page 62]

57.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Thursd^y. Jan^y. 24th. 1788 Observations

1 5 SbW East Mod Trade & fair W^r. but very hazy.

2 5

3 4 6 S½W

4 4 “ “ Very Cloudy W^r. with distant Thunder

5 4 6

6 4

7 4 3

8 3 4 “ “ Wind Varia with Thunder & Lightning
In small Sails

9 2 S^o. ESE Wind heading with squalls of Rain
lower The T[opsails] down, spread the
Awnings and prepared to catch water;
10 1 WSW S^o.
1 S^o. ESE but as the Rain was of no continuance
only caught a half Barrel.

11 1 4 At 10 Made Sail. Light Airs & Cloudy

12 1 1

1 1 4 “ NE

2 2 4 “ “ Set the Fore & F[ore] T[op] M[ast]
Steerg Sails

3 1 4

4 2 4

5 4

6 2 4 “ “ Set T[op] G[allant] Steering Sails

7 5

8 5 1	“	“	Light breezes & Cloudy with much haze
9 5 2	“	ENE	Up all Chests, Bedding & wet Cloaths and washed & cleaned below –
10 5 2			Many Flying Fish seen.
11 5 2	“		
12 5 2	“	NE	Fair W ^r . but much Haze.

87
3234
3321

Merid. Alt^d. O 65°:16'
Center

Difference Long ^d . this day by	
D.R.	T.K.
0°:8'E	0°:3'E

			Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther in the
S5°E	90	5°:32'N	5°:35'	24°:10'W	24°:00'W	23°:52'W	Air 79°

[Page 63]
58.

H K F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Friday	Jan ^y .	25 th .	1788	Observations
1 5	S ^o .	NE	Fair	W ^r .	and	hazy.		
2 4 6								
3 4 4								
4 4 4								
5 4 2	S½E	“	Steered ½ point to the east ^d ,					
6 4 4			principally to get the Sails between					
7 4 4			the Masts to draw better & which					
8 4 4			is generally the reason when I alter					
			the course often in a day.				At 4 ^h :49'	
							Lat ^d . 5°:13'N	
							Long ^d . T. Keep	

				23°:53'W
9 5				Varia p ^r . Azths.
				A Compass – 9°:27'W
10 5 3			A Great many Porpoises	d ^o . turned - 10:14
				B Compass – 9:46
11 4 6				d ^o . turned - 9:38
				Mean - 9:46W
12 5				
1 5				
2 4 4				
3 4 4	“	‘	A little Squally. In T[op] G[allant]	
			Steerg S[ai]ls.	
4 4 4				
5 4 4				
6 3 4	“	ENE	Cloudy threatning much Rain	
7 3 4				
8 4	“	NE	Some light Rain.	
9 4	“	“	Taken aback in all Steerg Sails –	
			Cleaned & aired below.	
10 2	SE	SSW		
11 1 4				
12 1 6	S½E	EbS	Light airs and very cloudy but no Rain	
			altho it threatens much. Very sultry &	
			hot.	
101				
3321				Difference Long ^d . this day by
3422				D.R. T.K.
			No observation.	0°:15'E 0°:15'E

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. at Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther in the
SBE ¹ / ₄ E	101	None	3°:54'N	23°:55'W	23°:45'W	23°:37'W	Air 80°

[Page 64]

59.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Saturd ^y .	Jan ^y .	26 th .	1788	Observations
---	---	---	---------	-------	--------------------	-----------------------	--------------------	--------------------	------	--------------

1	2	S ^o .	ESE	Light airs inclinable to Calm and heavy cloudy W ^r .
---	---	------------------	-----	---

2 1

3	“	H ^d .	SW	Calm	Saw a Small Bird like a Mother Carey's [possibly Carey's] chicken.
---	---	------------------	----	------	--

4	“	4	W	SSW
---	---	---	---	-----

5 1

6	1	“	SEbE	SbW
---	---	---	------	-----

7

4	NWbN	Calm
---	------	------

8	Fine night but cloudy.
---	------------------------

9

10	“	do.
1	H ^d .	West Calm

11

12

1

2	A Little Rain, with Thunder and Lightning
---	---

3	1	S ^o	Calm
---	---	----------------	------

4

5 “

6	“	3	SSE	d ^o .		At 20 ^h :56'
7	“	3	SbE	d ^o .	Very cloudy W ^r . Sultry & hot	Lat ^d . 3°:45'N
8	“				got every thing up from below & gave all the Air possible between decks. Empl ^d . making Points	Long ^d . T. Keeper 23°:2'W
9	“	2	SSW	d ^o .		
10	2	“	S½E	NNE		
11	1	“	“	“		
12	1	“	“	“	At Noon Cloudy W ^r . clearing off and a light breeze	All this day Swell from the NbW & the Ship drifted to the SbE however her head was.
13						
3422						
3435						
Merid. Alt ^d . O 67°:25½'						Difference Long ^d . this day by
Center						D.R. T.K.
						0°:2'E 0°:45'E

			Latitude	Longitude			Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	Ther in the
South bE	13	3°:41'N	3°:43'W	23°:53'W	23°:00'W	22°:52'W	Air 79°

[Page 65]

60.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Sund ^y .	Jan ^y .	27 th . 1788	Observations
1	2		S½E	NNE	Light	Airs	& Fair	Wr.	
2	1								
3	1								

4	1	“	“	Cloudy	At 4 ^h :19'
5	1	2			Lat ^d . 3°:36'N
6	1	2			Long ^d . T. Keeper
7	1				22°:58'W
8	1				
9	1		N ^o .		
10	1				
11	1	“	WbS	Small Rain	
12	1	SEbS	SWbS		
1	1	4	S½E	W	
2	1			Thunder & Lightning	
3		S ^o .	Calm	Showers of Rain	
1	“				
4					
5	“			Cloudy	
6	“				
2	“	S ^o .	Calm	Saw some Grampuses & Sharks -	
7	“			A Sheerwater & one Brown Petteral.	
8	“				At 20 ^h :41'
9	“	6	ESE	S ^o .	Lat ^d . 3°:13'N
				Very sultry W ^r . cleaned	Long ^d . T. Keeper
				below & mustered the People.	22°:29'W
10	1	2	SE	SSW	
11	1	“			
12	1	“	SebS	SbW	Fair W ^r . Swell from the North. We have
					not had rain to enable us to save above

1 Bar^l. of Water

23

3435

3458

Difference Long^d. this day by

DR

TK

0°:14'E

0°:34'E

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. at Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther in the
S 25° E	32	3°:10'N	3°:19'W	23°:39'W	22°:26'W	22°:18'W	Air 79°

[Page 66]

61.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Mond ^y .	Jan ^y .	28 th . 1788	Observations
---	---	---	---------	-------	--------------------	---------------------	--------------------	-------------------------	--------------

1 “ Fair W^r.

2 “

2 “

3 “ SEbS Calm Caught a Shark.

4 “ “

5 1 4 SE SSW Light Airs & Cloudy.

6 2

7 1 6 SE½E SbW½W

8 1 6

9 2 2 SE SSW

10 2 6 “ “ Some small Rain

11 2 2

12 1 6 “ “ Light airs & Cloudy.

1 2 SSE West

2 2 2

3 2 6

4 1 6 S^o.

5 1 6 “ NW Showers of Rain caught a Barrel of water.

6 2

7 2 4 “ West Cloudy W^r. Riplings like Cur[rent]s setting to the East^d.

8 3

9 2 4 Saw some Sheerwaters & some Fish.

10 1 6 “ WbS Empl^d servicing the Rigging making Points.

11 1 2

12 1 2 “ “ Light airs & Cloudy. I attribute the error in Reckoning owing to a Current setting in the direction of the Course.

42
3458
3500

Difference Long^d this day by
DR TK
0°:42'E 0°:56'E

	Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s at Noon		
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther in the
S 31°E	80	2°:33'N	3°:5'W	22°:57'W	21°:30'W	22°:22'W	Air 81°
							Ther Surface
							Of the Sea 82°

[Page 67]
62.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Tuesd^y. Jan^y. 29th. 1788 Observations

1 1 4 SE SSW Light Airs & Cloudy.

2 1

3 1

4 1 “ “ Fair W^r. and cloudy

5 1

6 1

Saw a great many Porpoises
some Sharks & other Fish

7 1 SEbE SbW

8 1 4

9 1 4 EbE S^o.

10 1 4

11 1 4 SEbE½E SbW

12 1 4 Cloudy W^r.

1 1 4 SEbE “

2 1 4

3 1 4

4 1 4

5 1 4 ESE S^o. Some Rain Tkd

6 1 4 W SSW Wore Ship

7 1 4 SE

8 2 SbE SWbW Light Airs & Cloudy W^r.

9 2 1 S½E WSW Empl^d as yesterday & cleaning
Below. No Birds Seen this day.

10 2

At 4^h:44'

Lat^d. 2°:27'N

Long^d. T. Keeper

21°:27'W

Varia p^r. Azths.

A Compss – 9°:35'

d^o. Turned - 11:46

B Compss - - 10:23

d^o. Turned – 9:41

10:21

At 20^h:54'

Lat^d. 2°:17'N

Long^d. T. Keeper

21°:9'W

Varia p^r. Azths.

A Compss – 9°:8'W

d^o. Turned - 11:11

B Compss - - 8:59

11 2	SE	SSW		d ^o .	
				Mean	9:46W
12 1 4	SSE	SW	Mod. breezes & squally all		
2 2	SbW	NW	around us threatening Rain.		
34			No Observation		
3500					
3534				Difference Long ^d this day by	
				DR	TK
				0°:28'E	0°:24'E

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K
S55°E	34	None	2°:14'N	22°:29'W	21°:06'	20°:58'W
						Ther in the Air 79°

[Page 68]
63.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Wednesd ^y .	Jan ^y .	30 th .1788	Observations
1	3	4	SbW	NNW		Mod. breezes and squally all around			
						us threatening Rain.			
2	2			NW					
3	1	6	SE	SSW					
4	1	6	SbW	West		Very hard Rain & Squally – lowered			
						the Topsl ^s . down and spread the awnings			
5	2	4	SSW			to catch Water & before dark got filled			
						1 P[uncheon]: 1 H[ogs]h[ea]d: 8 ½			
6	2	4	S ^o .	NW		H[ogshea]d[s] of good clean water			
						and 10 half H[ogs]h[ea]ds of water from			
7	1	4				the deck.			
8	1	4							
9	1	2							
10	1	2							
11	1	2	SSE	SW					

12 1 “ “ Calm & Cloudy with Lightning

1 1

2 1

Calm head all round

3 1

4 1

5 1

6 1

d^o.

Fair – Got up all wet Cloaths & bedding to dry – opened all hatch

7 1

way & washed & aired below – as At 21^h:25'
soon as this was done, turn'd all Lat^d. 2°:8'N

8 2

hands to, to wash their Cloaths Long^d. T. Keeper
& turned every article of dirty linen 20°:37'W

9 2

on deck belonging to Man or Officer
& the different parties I empl^d. a

10 “

washing them –

d^o.

11 “

12 “

Fine W^r. It has been such an entire
Calm since midnight that I imagine the
ship went one way as much as another,
unless a Current, which I did not choose
to disturb my people (while they were
better employed) to try it.

21
3534
3555

Difference Long^d. this day by
DR TK
0°:2'E 0°:29'E

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. at Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther in the
S7°E	7	2°:07'N	1°:50'N	22°:27'W	20°:37'W	20°:29'W	Air 81°

[Page 69]

64.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Thursd ^y .	Jan ^y .	31 1788	Observations
1	1		W½N	SSW	Fine W ^r .	As soon as I found all kind			
2	1	6	SSE	SW	of dampness w ^{ch} .	the closeness of			
3	1	6			the weather & Rain last eveng had				
4	1	6	SbE	SWbW	occasioned, was gone off from giving				
5	2	4			free access of Air to every place				
6	2	4	SbE½E		below I then ordered all parts to be				
7	3		SebS	SWbS	washed w th . Vinegar, and by the eveng				
8	2	4			the Ship was perfectly sweet &				
9	2	4	SE½S	SWbS	refreshing. Cond[emne] ^d . 1 Firkin				
10	2		SE	SSW	Butter 67 lbs p ^r Survey of this Date.				
11	2	4			Faint Lightning all around, & a prodigious				
12	2	4			number of Porpoises about the Ship.				
1	2				The Sea full of luminous marine				
2	1	4			animals				
3	1	4							
4	1	2							
5	1	2	SEbE	SbW					
6	1		“	“	Cloudy W ^r . Up all bedding and every				
7	1		SEbE½E	“	Hammock to be scrubbed which was				
8	1				done before breakfast & ship swept &				
9	1	2	WbS		cleaned.				
									At 20 ^h :43'
									Lat ^d . 2°:7'N
									Long ^d . T. Keeper

19°:52'W

10 1 2 SWbW SbE

11 2 SWbS SEbS

12 1 4 SW SSE Fine clear W^r.

41

3555

3596

Difference Long^d. this day by

DR

TK

0°:33'E

0°:45'E

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. at Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther in the
E9°S	31	2°:05'N	1°:52'N	21°:54'W	19°:52'W	19°:44'W	Air 82°
							Surface 81 ½°

[Page 70]

65.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Friday 1st. Feb^y. 1788

Observations

1 1 4 SWbW SbE Light airs & Clear W^r.

2 1 WbS SbW

3 1 NWbW SWbW

4 1 NNW West

At 4^h:36'
Lat^d. 2°:7'N
Long^d. T. Keeper
19°:51'W

5 “

6 “ 6 NNW Calm Caught a Dolphin

6 “

7 1 NWbW SWbW Tkd Fine W^r. & faint Lightning
all round

8 1 6 SE SSW A Number of Fish about. A large
School of Porpoises in the NW

9 1 4 ab^t. a half Mile from us made every
appearance of a dreadful breaking

6 EbS SbE

10 1 WbS SbW

Shoal – it being immediately in the
track I had passed, and also if any

11 3 2			real Shoal had been there I must have seen it, at the Close of the
12 2	W½S	Cloudy	Eveng when I have always a careful look out from the Mastheads, made me quite certain that no danger existed there: however if it had appeared a head of me as it did a Stern, I certainly should have tacked for it. This may account for the many shoals laid down of which we can find no traces of their existance.
1 1 4			
2 1 4			
3 2 “	West	SSW	
4 3	WbS	SbW	
5 2 3	WSW	S ^o .	
6 3	WbS	SbW	Cloudy W ^r . Saw some Sheerwaters & many Fish.
7 2 6			
8 2 4	“	“	Cleaned below & Empl ^d . making Points
9 2 2	WSW	S ^o .	Much Rain
10 1 6	“	“	Saw a Water Spout 4 Miles to the E ^d . of us.
11 1 2	SbW	NNW	Set Steerg Sails low & aloft.
12 2	“	“	Very Cloudy W ^r . & a light breeze.

41	Difference Long ^d . this day by	
3596	DR	TK
3637	0°:22'W	0°:22'W

	Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon		
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther in the
N64W	23	2°:12'N	1°:55'N	22°:16'W	20°:14'W	20:05	Air 77°

[Page 71]
66.

H K F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Saturd ^y .	2. Feb ^y .	1788	Observations
1 2 2	SbW	NNW	Light airs & very cloudy				

2 2 2

3 1 4

4 1 6 “ North Saw a great many Birds of the
Petteral kind. & Fish

5 1 4

At 4^h:28'
Lat^d. 2°:5'N
Long^d. T. K.
19°:59'W

6 2 2 S^o. West In Steering Sails

7 1 2 SbW NW

8 1

9 “

10 “ All round Squally with much Lightning &
and Rain. The Sea covered with
luminous spots and many like
Shoals.

11 1 4 SbW NE

12 1 4 “ “

1 1 2 “ WNW

2 1 2

3 1

4 1 “ Varia Wore Ship

5 2 WSW S^o.

6 3 8

7 4 “

At 20^h:12'
Lat^d. 2°:1'N
Long^d. T. Keeper
19°:53'W

8 3 2 SW SSE Mod. breezes and fair W^r. Saw Varia p^r. Azths.
a Sail in the NNW, from the A Compss – 10°:7'W
9 2 T[op] G[allant] Yard on a wind d^o. Turned - 10:20
as we are, but too far off to see Mean 10:13W
10 3 2 SWbW SbE Colours if they were hoisted at
the Mast head.

11 3 2 Many Flocks of Birds of the brown
petteral kind, White about the
12 3 2 belly – Abundance of Fish but we can
catch none.
46 At Noon fair W^r. – All this morning Empl^d. making
3637 points and drying Wet Cloaths & airing & cleaning
3683 below, for the Air being very sultry & damp it is all I
can do to keep the peoples accommodation clean &
wholesome.

Merid. Alt^d. S 71°:17 '
Center

Difference Long^d. this day by
DR TK
0°:9'W 0°:14'E

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . at Noon
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d . D.R. D.R. T.K L & T.K Ther in the			
S26°W 19 1°:55'N 1°:36'N 22°:25'W 20°:00'W 19°:52°W Air 81°			

[Page 72]
67.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Sunday Feb^y. 3^d. 1788

1 2 4	SWbW	SbE	Light breezes & fair W ^r .
2 1 6	WSW	S ^o .	
3 1 4			
4 1 2	“	“	Cloudy
5 1 2			
6 1 2	WbS	SbW	Fair W ^r .
7 1 4			
8 2	“	“	Fine Night – Many Fish and the Sea covered w th luminous Spots
9 1 4	WSW	S ^o .	

10 1 4 WbS SbW

11 4 West SSW Squalls of Rain

12 4 “ “

1 4 W½N

2 4
3 4 West
Note what are called Sheerwaters here and on the following day are not properly so they are more of the Gull kind in their Plumage Sheerwaters never go in Flocks & are generally attendants on bad weather

4 3 6 W½N “

Cloudy

5 3 6

6 3 4

7 3 4
1 6 WNW SW

8
1 6 SE SSW
Tkd. Light winds and very Cloudy W^r.
Cleaned Ship, and at 10 Mustered all the Ships company & Saw them clean when they attended Divine Service.

9 1 6

10 1 4

11 1 4

12 4 SSW North Very Cloudy W^r. & some Squalls of Rain. Set Steerg Sails – Many Fish & Flocks of Gull, Petterals as seen Yesterday. Wind South^{ly}. Ther 81 but when it came North it fell to 77½
62
3683
3745

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. at Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther in the
S78°W	48	None	1°:45'N	23°:13'W			Air 77½

[Page 73]

68.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Mond^y. Feb^y. 4th. 1788

1 2 3 SSW North Light Breezes and cloudy

2 2 3

3 2 3

4 1 6

5 “ 6 Varia. round the Compass

1 “ SbW

6 “ 4 ESE

7 7

8 1 4 “ “ Squalls of Rain

9 1 4 SSW SE

10 2 4 SbW SEbE Fair W^r. innumerable schools of Fish & the Sea Covered with luminous Spots.

11 2 4 S^o. NE

12 2 2 “ “

1 1 4 Varia Cloudy with smart showers of Rain in squalls

2 1 2

3 1

4 1 “ NE

5 1

6 1 SW SSE Flocks of ~~Sheerwaters~~ Gull Petterals and winderfull quantities of Fish but all our efforts to catch any are ineffectual

7 1 2 WbS SbW Dolphins – Albicores – Bonitos – Skipjacks & Flying Fish.

8 1 SbW N^{oly}.

9 1 6 SbW N^{oE}^{ly}.

10 1 6 Very heavy Rain & sultry weather – Caught near 3
Tons Water. With every degree of care & caution
11 1 6 with airing and drying b[e]low yet we cannot keep
off the Damps.

12 2 “ “ “ At Noon D^oW^r. all hands empl^d. filling water caught
one Shark.

38 No Observ
3745
3783

	Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon		
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther in the
S4°W	38		1°:08'N	23°:16'W			Air 77°

[Page 74]
69

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Tuesday Feb^y. 5th. 1788

1 1 2 SSE SW Very heavy Rain

2 1 4 Caught 3 Punch^s. & 3 Half Hhds of Water

3 1 2

4 1 2 “ “ Light airs and Cloudy.

5 1 S^o. WSW

6 1

7 1

8 1

9 1

10 1

11 1 4 SEbS SWbS Rain

12 1 2 SSE SW Cloudy. Many Fish about

1 6

2 1 “ “ Lightning

3 1 4 SEbS SWbS

4 1 4

5 1 6 SSE SW

6 2 2 ESE S^o. Tkd. Cloudy W^r.

7 3 WSW

8 3 1 SWbS SEbS All this morning employed drying wet Cloaths & Cleaning and airing below. Such is the effect of this moist unhealthy weather that a few hours covers every thing with Mould – The Sails at the Yard altho constantly spread are mildewed all over. Ordered all dirty linen on deck & People to washing.

9 3 SW SSE

10 3 2 SWbW SbE

11 3 WSW S^o. Very cloudy & moist sultry Weather, and no observ. The sun seldom showing itself in the least.

12 1 4 WSW S^o.

39

3783

3822

Latitude			Longitude			Rem ^s . at Noon	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther in the Air 78°
E4°S	26	None	0°:438'N	23°:14'W			

[Page 75]

70.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Wednesd ^y .	Feb ^y .	6 th .	1788	Observations
1	"	5	WSW	S ^o .		Light Airs & Cloudy W ^r .				and a very Sultry & damp air.
2	"									
	1		North	Calm						
3	"					Large Flocks of Gull Petterals ab ^t .				and and great quantities of Fish.
4	1	6	WSW	S ^o .						
5	1									
6	"	4	NW	Calm		Dark Cloudy W ^r .				
7	"	6	WbW	SWbS						
8	"	4	WNW	SW		Taken aback				
	4		S ^o .	NNW						
9	2		SbW	"		Light Breeze. Set the F[ore] T[op] M[as]t Steerg Sail. Much Lightning.				
10	1	4		W						
11	1	4	SSE	SW						
12	1		SE	SSW		In Steerg Sail Lightning all round				
1	"	"	SE	Calm						
2	1		SbW	NW		Set F[ore] T[op] M[as]t Steerg Sail –				
3	1		"	"		Rain, Thunder and Lightning				
4	1									
5	4		S ^o .	WNW		In steerg Sail				
6	4									
7	6		SEbE	SbW						
8	2		WbS	"		Light Breezes and fair W ^r .				Got

9 4	No	Calm	all bedding cloaths & Chests up from below washed & cleaned & prepared for	At 20 ^h :7' Lat ^d 1°:22'N Long ^d T. Keeper
10 2 4	WSW	So	washing with Vinegar.	20°:48'W

11 2 4

12 3 “ SWbW SSE Light Breeze & Fair W^r. Error in account to day is
50 Miles & from the T. Keeper's long^d I find it
owing to a current setting NBW dis^t 51 Miles the
last four days.

26
3822
3848

Merid. Alt^d. S Center
73°:3½'

Difference Long^d. this day by
DR TK
0°:44'W 0°:55'W

Since the 2nd. Latitude Longitude Rem^s. at Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther in the
S51°W	56	1°:20 ½ 'N	0°:30'N	23°:09'W	20°:55'W	20°:47°W	Air 80°

[Page 76]

71.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Thursday Feb^y. 7th. 1788 Observations

1 2 SW SE Mod. Cloudy, threatning Rain.

2 3

3 2 2 SWbS SEbS Washed all the Beams and the
between Decks with Vinegar.

4 2 3

5 2 SSW SE A little Squally. Drew the Boxes
of one Pump and employed hands
6 1 4 WSW S° to pour water down, and kept the
other Pump constantly going for
7 1 one hour, untill the Water came out
no more offensive than when it was

8 “ 6 put in. This with the washing with
Vinegar had a most refreshing effect.

9 1 6 SbW SEbE

10 “ 3 SSW SE

11 3 “ SWbS SEbS

12 3 3 “ “ Mod. & Cloudy

1 3 4

2 3 6 SW SSE

3 4

4 4 4 SWbW SbE Fresh Breezes

5 5 3 SW SSE

6 5 “

7 4 6 “ “ Set the Fore T[op] M[as]t Steerg Sail.

8 5 6

9 5 4

10 5 4

11 5 4

12 5 2 “ “ Fresh Breezes & hazy, by which I
84 expect the Wind to stand. Trimm'd
the Sails to 7 points of the Wind –

84

3848

3932

Merid. Alt^d. S
Center 74°:27'

Difference Long ^d . this day by	
DR	TR
0°:58'W	0°:53'W

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. at Noon

Course	Dis ^t	Obs ^d	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther in the
S42°W	88	0°:15 'N	0°:19'N	24°:07'W	21°:48'W	21°:40°W	Air 85°

[Page 77]

72.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s	Friday Feb ^y	8 th . 1788	Observations
---	---	---	---------	-------	------------------	-------------------------	------------------------	--------------

1	5	“	SW½W	SEbS	Fresh Breezes & fair W ^r . but very hazy as it always is within the Tropics when a Trade wind blows.			
2	4	4						

3	5		SWbW	SSE				
---	---	--	------	-----	--	--	--	--

4	5						At 4 ^h :11'
							Lat ^d . 0°:2'N
5	5		SW½W	SEbS	Hands empl ^d at the Pumps an half	Long ^d . T. Keep ^r	
					hour, for altho the Ship is very clean	22°:1'W	

6	5	2			& free from bad smells yet I consider this as conducive to health.		
---	---	---	--	--	---	--	--

7	4	4	SW				
---	---	---	----	--	--	--	--

8	4						
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

9	4	4			Note – Crossed the Line in Long ^d	22°:3'W
					by T. Keeper	

10	4	2			d ^o . by DR	24:22W
----	---	---	--	--	------------------------	--------

					True Longitude	21:50W
--	--	--	--	--	----------------	--------

11	4	4	SW½W		corrected from the 17 th follg	
----	---	---	------	--	---	--

12	4	4					
----	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

1	4	6					
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

2	4	6					
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

3	4	6	SWbW	SSE			
---	---	---	------	-----	--	--	--

4	4	4	SW½W	SEbS	Very Clear W ^r .		
---	---	---	------	------	-----------------------------	--	--

5	4		SW				
---	---	--	----	--	--	--	--

6 4

7 4 SW½W

At 20^h:2'

Lat^d. 1°:5'S°

8 4 SWbW SSE

Mod. breezes & fair, with Haze.

Long^d. T. Keeper
23°:1'W

9 3 6

Employed making Points &
Cleaning below. Served
Vinegar to the Ship's
Company.

Varia p^r. Azths.

A Compss – 9°:8'W

10 4 2

d^o. Turned - 11:4

B Compss – 9:57

11 4 2

d^o. Turned – 9:55

244

12 3 6

D W^r. – All sails set & Fore
Top Mast Steering Sail

Mean = 10:01W

107

3932

4039

Merid. Alt^d. S 76°:14'
Center

Difference Long^d. this day by

DR

TK

1°:28'W

1°:25'W

My Long^d. DK to day was 25°:11'W to
w^{ch}. an error of 24' is to be added w^{ch}.
makes 25°:35'W & as far as the Column
wants correcⁿ. 24' + [indecipherable] affixed.

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. at Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther in the
S44°W	126	1:13 S	0°:42'S°	25:35W	23°:13'W	23°:5'W	Air 84°

[Page 78]

73.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Saturday Feb^y. 9th. 1788

Observations

1 3 2 SW SEbS Mod. and fair W^r. –

2 3

3 3

This afternoon those who had never cross'd the

4	3	2			Line before underwent the usual ceremony, except ducking, which I never would allow, for of all customs it is the most brutal and inhuman. Twenty
5	3	2	SWbW	SSE	seven Men & officers were therefore Tarr'd & Shaved with a piece of Iron hoop, and the officers
6	4	2	SWbW½W		to pay two bottles of Rum & the Men one, which I promised to Answer for, and gave every one a half
7	5		WSW	SbE	pint of Wine as soon as the busyness was over, and dancing begun.
8	4	6			
9	4	6	SWbW	SSE	
10	4	7			
11	4	4			
12	4	4	“	“	Clear W ^r .
1	3	7			
2	4	4			
3	4	3			
4	4	4			
5	4	4	SW½W		
6	4	2	SWbW		
7	4	6			
8	4	6	“	“	Fine W ^r . & hazy.
9	4	6			Empl ^d . making points & cleaning below.
10	4	5			
11	4	3			
12	4	5	“	“	D ^o W ^r . Fore T[op] M[as]t Steerg Sail Set & going 7
					At 20 ^h :4' Lat ^d . 2°:17'S° long ^d . T. Keep ^r . 24°:26'W Varia p ^r . Azths. A Compss – 8°:2'W d ^o . Turned - 10:13 B Compss – 8:25 d ^o . Turned 8:12 172

102 Points from the Wind. Mean - 8:43W
 4039
 4141 + 24' to long^d. by DR is an error on Yes'd

Merid. Alt^d.

S Center 77°:46¾'

Difference Long^d. this day by

DR TK
 1°:29'W 1°:29'W

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . at Noon
Course Dis ^t Obs ^d D.R. D.R. T.K L & T.K Ther in the			
S50°W 116 2°:27'N S° 2°:14'N 26:40W 24°:42'W 24°:34'W Air 81¾			

[Page 79]

74.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Sund^y. 10 Feb^y. 1788 Observations

1 4 6 SW½W SbE Fine W^r. and hazy.

2 5

3 4 4 SW SSE

4 4 2 Saw a Whale

5 4 4

6 4 6 SW½W

7 5 2

8 5 SW

9 4 4

10 5

11 4 7

12 4 2

At 4^h:33'
 Lat^d. 2°:37'S
 Long^d. T. Keep^r.
 24°:59'W
 Varia p^r. Azths.
 A Compss – 7°:8'W
 d^o. turned - 8:43
 B Compss – 7:28
 d^o. turned 7:59
 Mean - 7:52W

1 5

2 4 6

3 4 4

4 4 4

5 4 7

6 4 6 SW½W

7 5 Saw two Mother Carews chicken

8 5 “ “ Mustered the People and Saw every
thing clean – served a pound of Pumpion
9 4 6 SWbW SbE to each Man.

10 4 6

11 4 6 SW½W Performed Divine Service and every
person attended with decorum &
12 4 6 “ “ much decency.
Very Fine W^r. and a little hazy.

114
4141
4255

	Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . at Noon		
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther in the
S40°W	119	3°:58' S	4°:12'S	27°:56'W			Air 81°

[Page 80]
75.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Mond^y. Feb^y. 11th. 1788 Observations

1 4 3 SWbW SbE Fine W^r. and a little hazy.

2 4 2

3 4 WSW S^o.

4 4 4

5 4 6 “ “ Saw a White Booby, what I call In the
the Tropical Gannet. Neighbourhood
6 5 SWbW $\frac{1}{2}$ W SbE of [indecipherable]

7 4 4

8 4 4 “ “ Two Noddies about the Ship.

9 4 6 SWbW

10 5 2 SW SSE

11 5

1 5

2 5

3 5 SW SSE Caught a Noddy.

4 4 SWbS SEbS

5 4 SSW $\frac{1}{2}$ W SE

6 3 3

7 3 4

8 3 4

9 4

10 4 4 SSW

11 4 4

12 5 “ “ “ Fine W^r. & a little hazy. Swell from the
NNE –

107

Difference Long^d. since ye 9th by

4255	DR	TK
4362	2°:26'W	2°:55'W

Merid. Alt^d. 81°:21'
S Center

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . at Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
S40°W	109	5°:22' S	5°:14'S ^o
			D.R.
			29°:06'W
			T.K
			27:37W
			L & T.K
			27°:29'W
			Ther
			Air 81°

[Page 81]
76.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Tuesd^y. Feb^y. 12th. 1788 Observations

1 4 4 SSW½W SE Fine W^r. and a little hazy.

2 4 2

3 4 4 SWbS SEbS Empld. fitting a New Main TopS^l.

4 4 2

5 4 2 SSW½W SE

6 4 3

7 4 4 SWbS

8 4 6

9 5 6

10 5 6

11 5 6 SSW½W

12 5 4

1 5 3 SSW SEbE

2 5 4

At 5^h:29'
Lat^d. 5°:39'S
Long^d. 27°:51'W
by T. K
Varia p^r. Azths.
A Compss – 6°:12'W
d^o. Turnd - 7:9
B Compss – 7:56
d^o. Turn'd - 7:50
Mean – 7:17W

3 5

4 5

5 5 2 SbW½W

At 20^h:12'

Lat^d. 7°:06'S

6 5 2

Long T. Keeper

28°:31'W

7 5 4 SSW

Empl^d. setting the Top Mast

Varia p^r. Azths.

And T[op] Gall^t. Rigging up

A Compss – 2°:44'W

8 6

fore & aft – Served Mustard

d^o. Turnd -6:14

spirit to every two Men

B Compss – 4:42

9 5

d^o. Turned - 4:55

Mean – 4:11W

10 5 2

11 5 5

12 5 2 “ “ Fresh breezes & fine W^r. and a little hazy.

123

4362

Difference Long^d. this day by

Merid. Alt^d. S
Center

DR
1°:4'W

TK
1°:3'W

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther
S27°W	139	7°:26' S	7:12S	30°:10'W	28°:40'W	28°:32'W	Air 81°

[Page 82]

77.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Wednesd^y. 13th. Feb^y. 1788 Observations

1 5 “ SSW SEbE Mod. breezes & fine W^r.

2 5 Empl^d. fitting a fourth reef to a New Fore Top S^l.

3 5

4 4

5 4 2

6 4

7 5

8 5 “ “

In 1st. Reefs.

9 5

10 5 4

11 6 4 “ “

Fresh breezes & fine W^r.

12 7 “

1 6 4

2 6 4

3 6 4

4 6 4

5 6 4

6 7

7 7

8 7

9 7 SbW¹/₂W

Empl^d. getting some Punch^s. dried
to pack bread in as all my bread is
in bags – fill'd one Punchⁿ. N 1 -
228lbs.

10 7

11 6 4

12 6 4 SSW “

Fresh breezes & fair W^r. but too Cloudy

At 4^h:43 ¹/₂ ' "

Lat^d. 7°:43'S°

Long^d. T. Keeper

28°:47':52"W

d^o. dis. 0 & D)

Sun West)same times

Ramsdⁿ. B - - 28:43:45

Ramsdⁿ. C - - 28:30: -

Troughton H – 29:4:30

Mean - 28:46:5

Long^d. D à Aldebran

East of the Moon red^d.

to the same time -

Ramsd. B - 28°:17':30"

d^o. – C - 28:37:15

Troughtⁿ. H - 28:4:15

Mean – 28:19:40

At 20^h: 1' "

Lat^d. 9°:19'S°

Long^d. T. Keeper

29°:20'W

to get any Lun^r. Observat^s.

141
4485
4626

Merid. Alt^d.

S Center 86°:24'

Difference Long^d. this day by

DR TK
0°:56'W 0°:50'W

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther	Air
S22°W	148	9°:43' S	9°:36'S	31°:06'W	29°:30'W	29°:22'W	83 ½ °	

[Page 83]

78.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Thursd^y. 14th. Feb^y. 1788 Observations

1 6 S½W ESE Fresh breezes & fair W^r.

2 5 4

3 5 2 “ “ Very cloudy

4 5 6

5 5

6 5 “ “ Out 1st. reef Fore Top S^l. & set
F[ore] T[op] M^t. Steering Sail –

7 5 “ SbW “

8 5 6 “ “ Fine Night but cloudy

9 6

10 6

11 6

12 6

1 6

2 5 6

3 5 6

4 5 6

5 4

6 5

7 5 3

8 5 4 SSW SEbE Fair W^r. Washed & Cleaned
below Empl^d. making matts
9 5 6 for the New Sails & points
for the Courses – Put some
10 6 Punch^s to dry to receive
bread.

11 5 4 SbW ESE

12 5 4 “ “ Fair W^r. out 1st. Reef M. Top S^l.

133

4626

4759

Merid. Alt^d.

S Center 88°:47'
+ 12:32
88:59:32

Difference Long^d. this day by
DR TK
0°:28'W 0°:27'W

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther	Air
S6W	139	11°:59' S	11°:53'S	31:34	29°:57'W	29°:49'W	83°	

[Page 84]

79.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Frid^y. Feb^y. 15th. 1788

Observations

1	5	S½W	EbS	Fresh breezes and fair W ^r .	
2	4	6			
3	4	2	SbW	ESE	
4	4	6			At 4 ^h :33'
5	4	4			Lat ^d . 12°:18'S°
6	4	4			Long ^d . T. Keeper
7	6				30°:01'W
8	6	“	“	Fine W ^r .	O a D red ^d to
9	6	4			same time by
10	6	6	SbW½W		Ramsden's B - - 29°:55':7"
11	6	6	SbW		Ramsd. - C - 30:5:8
12	7				Troughton H – 30:9:22
1	6	4			Mean W - 30:3:10
2	7				
3	6	SSW	SEbE		[indecipherable] à Pollux red ^d to the
4	5	4	“		same time – E ^t -
5	6				Ramsden B - - 29°:27'
6	6	2			Ramsd C - - 29:37
7	7				Troughton H – 29:20:37
8	6	4	SbW	ESE	Mean E - 19:24:54
9	6	6			Varia ^s . at same time
10	6	4			A Compss – 4°:36'W
					d ^o . turned - 4:38
					B Compss – 3:55
					d ^o . turn'd - 4:54
					Mean 4:31W
8	6	4	SbW	ESE	Fine Clear W ^r .
9	6	6			Opened a Pun. Beef N° 1210
10	6	4			Cont ^s . 86 eight lb pieces.
					Empl ^d . making Matts & Points
					At 20 ^h : 7'
					Lat ^d . 13°:56'S°
					Long ^d . T. Keeper

11 6	& Cleaning below. Served Sourkrout to the People, & boiled some with the Peas.	30°:28'W Varia p ^r . Azths. A Compss – 2°:33'
12 6	w ^{ch} . will be continued constantly.	d ^o . Turn'd - 3:28 B Compss – 2:49
144	Very Fine W ^r . and clear. No Birds or Fish – Fore T. M ^t .	d ^o . Turn'd - 3:06W Mean - - 2:59W
4759	Steerg. S ^l . set & Ship kept	
4903	to 7 points of the Wind.	

Merid. Alt

S Center 88:18¾

Difference Long^d. this day by

DR	TK
0°:39'W	0°:39'W

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
S15°W	146	14°:20½'S	14:18S
			D.R.
			32°:13'W
			T.K
			30°:36'W
			L & T.K
			30°:28'W
			Ther
			81½°

[Page 85]

80.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Saturday Feb ^y . 16 1788	Observations
1	4	3	S½W	EbS	Mod breezes & fine W ^r .	S½W	
3	3	4	SbW	ESE	the Course. Sails trimm'd to 7 Points		
					of the Wind as before.		
4	5		SbW½W				At 5 ^h : 13'
							Lat ^d . 14°:42'S°
5	4		SbW	“	Shower of Rain		Long ^d . T. Keeper
							30:41 ¾ W
6	4	3	S½W				S & D reduced to the
							same time.
7	6	2	SbW				Ramsd. B -- 30°:10'
							d ^o . - - C 30:16:45
8	6	4	“	“	Fresh breeze & fair W ^r .		Trought H 30:34:30
							Mean - - 30:18:50
9	7		S½W				
10	7						

11 5 SbW

12 5

1 6 S½W

2 6 2

3 6 4

4 6 4 SSW SEbE Some light Showers of Rain.

5 6 4 SbW½W

6 5 4 “ “ Saw a Sail in the South from the
Fore T. M^hhead just discernble

7 6 S½W EbS

8 6 4	Scrubbed & cleaned all	At 20 ^h : 14'
	Hammocks & bedding -	Lat ^d . 16°:14'S°
9 6 2	Washed & dried all officers	Long ^d . T. Keeper
	Cabbins & every part below.	31°:1':27"W

10 6 4 SbW

11 6 4

12 6 4 S½W “ Fine W^r. The sail seen off the Deck.

137		
4903	Merid	
5040	Alt ^d . S Cent. 85°:38'	Difference Long ^d . this day by
		DR TK
		0°:21'W 0°:26'W

	Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K L & T.K The
S8°W	141	16:40 S	16°:36'S°	32°:34'W	31°:2'W 30°:45':35"W Column
					of T &
					TK is
					[indecipherable]

[Page 86]

81.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Sund ^y .	17 Feb ^y .	1788	Observations
1	4	2	S ^o .	EbS	Mod. breezes and fine W ^r .				
2	4	6							
3	4	4	S½W						
4	4	2							
5	5	6							At 3 ^h : 58'
									Lat ^d . 16°:58'S
6	5	6	“	“	Sail in sight ahead her courses seen.				Long ^d . T. Keeper 31°:5':45"W
7	5	6	SbW						S a D reduced to the same time by
8	5	6	“	“	Fair W ^r . with some light Squalls				Ramsd ⁿ . B - 30°:57':30W
									d ^o - C - 31:8:00
9	5	6							Trought. H - 31:10:0
									Mean = 31:5:10W
10	5	6	S½W						Varia p ^r . Azths. same time.
11	5	6							A Compss – 2°:27'W
									d ^o . turned - 2:50
12	5	4	“	“					B Compss – 2:43
									d ^o . turned - 2:21
1	5	4							Mean = 2:35W
2	5	4	“	“	More Squally. Shortned & made Sail occasionally.				Da
3	5								
4	5	“	“	“	Fair W ^r .				
5	5	“	“	“	Came up with the British Queen of London Simon Paul Master. Left the Downs 10 th Nov ^r . & Falmouth 5 th . Dec ^r . Stopt at the Isle of May 3 Days & got Goats, Hogs, Fowls & Pumpkins, for Money or old				At 20 ^h : 14'
6	4								Lat ^d . 18°:23'S
7	4	S½E							

8 4 Cloaths. They Anch^d. on the west Long^d. T. Keeper
side in a good Road 15 fms. 31°:17'W
9 5 4 Water. Bound to C. Good Hope
a Whaling.
10 6 4 SbE East
11 5
12 4 6 SSE “ Fair W^r. I sent letters to the Lords of
the Admiralty & my Friends by this Ship
123 & took leave of her.
5040 We have gained 18 days in our run
5163 of the British Queen.

Difference Long^d. this day by
DR TK
0°:13'W 0°:14'W

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
S½W	125	18°:45'S°.	18:42S
			D.R.
			32°:47'W
			T.K
			31°:16'W
			L & T.K
			Ther. 81½°

[Page 87]
82.

Lunar Observations since the 12th. Ins^t. to the 19th. reduced to the 17th. at 3^h. 58'
by applying the difference of longitude made by Time Keeper.

Time When 1788	Longd. by T. Keeper	Longd. by Observ.	Correc. to be applied to reduce them to 3h 58' opposite	True Longd. by Observ. on the 17 th opposite at 3h 58'	Longitude turned into Time	T. Keeper gath. for Mean Time Greenwich
Novr. 13	28.47.52h	28.43.45h	+ 2.17.53	31.01.30 W		
		28.30		30.47.53		
		29.4.30		31.22.23		
		28.17.30		30.35.23		
		28.37.15		30.55.08		
		28.4.15		30.22.28		
15	30.01.00 W	29.55.07	+ 1.4.45	30.59.52		
		30.05.00		31.9.45		
		30.9.22		31.14.07		
		29.27		30.31.45		
		29.37.00		30.41.45		
		29.20.37		30.25.22		

16	30.41.45	30.10	+ 0.24.0	30.34.00
		30.16.45		30.40.45
		30.34.30		30.58.30
17	31.5.45	30.57.30	0.0.0	30.57.30
		31.08.00		31.8.00
		31.10.00		31.10.00
19	31.41.15	31.10.45	- 0.35.30	30.35.15
		31.5.00		30.29.30
		31.11.00		30.35.90

Mean Longd. at 3h 58' the 17th = 30.49.2010 = 2.3.17.20)

) 15.40

Longd. by T. Keeper at the same time 31.5.45W = 2.4.23)

Longd. by Observn. -16.25 E. of T. Keeper

Longd. by Obvservn. on the 18th January less than T.K. -8.00 E. of T. Keeper

8.25 in Longd. west

which the T.K. has gained in 30 days and its rate by this is 1, 1 gaining on mean time Cr. 24 hours, and fast on the 16th Noon for Mean Time at Greenwich 1.5.40.

[Page 88]

83.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Mond ^y .	Feb ^y .	18 th .	1788	Observations
1	5		SbW	E	Mod Breezes and Fair W ^r .	Set				
					Lower T. M ^t .	& T. Gall				Steerg
2	6	6	“	EbN	Sails					
3	5									Miss'd the Long ^d .
										by T.K. this afternoon –
4	5		“	“	British Queen Courses					Lat ^d . 19°:16' S°.
					Down.					Variation by
5	6	2	“	“	Squally in M. T. M ^t .	& Top				A Compass – 2°:16'W
					Gall Steerg	Sails.				d° Turn'd - - 2:20
6	3									B Compss – 1:49
										d° Turn'd - 1:59
7	5		SSW	“	Light winds at times & Cloudy					Mean = 2:0W
					at others squally with light Rain					
8	5		SbW	“						
9	3		“	NE						
10	4	5	“	East						
11	4	6	“	“						

12 6	“	ESE	Mod. & fair but the Wind very unsteady as to strength. In lower steerg Sail.	
1 4 4				Line of no Varia I consider to be in the
2 3 6				Lat ^d . 20°:00' S° 31°:31'W
3 5 3				Obs – T. Keeper – 16 True Long ^d . = 31:15W
4 5	“	“	Faint Lightning in the Horizn	
5 5 4	“	“	Set the Lower M. T. Mt. and T. Gall Steerg Sails.	
6 5 6	“	EbN		At 19 ^h : 1' Lat ^d . 20°:22'S° Long ^d . T. Keeper 31°:38':30"W
7 6				Varia p ^r . Azths. A Compss – 0°:24'E d° turn'd - - 0:20 B Compss – 0:15 d° turn'd - 0:25 Mean = 0:28E
8 6 6	“	“	Mod. and fine Clear W ^r . Emp ^d . Cleaning below & fitting a Set of Courses. Saw a Troopic Bird & many small Brown Sheerwaters. Saw Two Tropical Gannets.	
9 5 6				
10 5 4				
11 5 3				
12 5	“	“	Mod. breezes and fine W ^r . In this Southern Tropic it is remarkably Free of haze.	
123				
5163				
5286			Allowing Trinidada in 20°:31'S° 29°:45'W ^t it bore at Noon N81°E dis ^t . 31 leagues.	
Merid Alt ^d	80:39			
S Center	+ 12			
	80:51			
				Difference Long ^d . this day by DR TK 0°:25'W 0°:23'W

	Latitude		Longitude			Rem ^s . Noon	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther.
SbW	121	20°:44'S	20:46S°	33°:12'W	31°:39'W	31°:23'W	81½°

[Page 89]
84.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Tuesday Feb ^y . 19 th . 1788	Observations
1	5		SbW	E		Mod. breezes and fine	Pleas ^t W ^r .
2	4	6					
3	4	6					
4	2	3					At 5 ^h : 31'
	2	3	SSW				Lat ^d . 21°:06'S
							Long ^d . T. Keeper
5	4	6	“	“		Empl ^d . at the Pumps putting	31°:41':15"W
						water into one & pumping	Long ^d . D a Regulus
6	3	4				out of the other to prevent	red ^d . to same time
						bad Smells	S East D.
7	3						Ram ^s . B -- 31°:10':45"
							Rams ^d . C -- 31:5:0
8	2	4					Trough. H -- 31:11:0
							Mean -- 31:8:55W
9	3						Varia. same time
10	2	6				Note. The Birds called Sheerwaters,	
						(from their skimming along the water,)	
11	3	4				are about the size of a Jack Daw –	
						their Plumage is of a dark brown,	
12	4	6				except from the breast to the	
						beginning of the Tail feathers where	
1	4	6				it is perfectly white, their Bill is rather	
						small and black and are seldom more	
2	5					than one or two together but in windy	
						weather.	
3	5	6					
4	6	2			ENE		
5	5	6					
6	5	4					
7	5					Empl ^d . washing & Cleaning &	
						making Points for a set of New	
8	4	6				Courses.	

9 5 NE At 20^h: 23'
 Lat^d. 22°:16'S°
 10 5 Long^d. T.K. = 32°:8':31"W
 Varia p^r. Azths.
 11 4 4 A Compss – 0°:30'E
 d^o. turned - - 0:57
 12 3 6 “ “ Very fine W^r. A few dark B Comps – 0:26
 brown small sheerwaters D^o. turn'd - 0:50
 about. All Sails Set Mean 0:41W
 108
 5286
 5394

Merid Alt^d

S Center 78:42

Difference Long^d. this day by
 DR TK
 0°:47'W 0°:36'W

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . at Noon
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d . D.R. D.R. T.K L & T.K Ther.			
S21°W 117 22°:33'S° 22:26S 33°:59'W 32°:15'W 31°:59'W 81½°			

[Page 90]

85.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Wednesd^y. Feb^y. 20th. 1788 Observations

1 3 2 SWbS NE Fine Pleasant W^r.

2 3 4

3 4 “ NEbN Completed a New Fore Sail & main
 sail with Points & Robands &^c.

4 3 6

5 3 4 Mean Varia Yest^y. Morn^g. 0°:41'W. At 4^h: 58'
 d^o. this afternoon - - 1:02E Lat^d. 22°:49'S°

6 3 2 0:21 Long^d. T. Keeper

Mean variation - 0:10E 32:26W

7 1 5 & agrees with the other observ^s Varia p^r. Azths.
 1 5 SW that it was easterly before. I A Compss – 1°:25'E^t

8 3 3			therefore consider the Line of no Variation to have been passed on Monday Morning.	d ^o - 0:51 B Compss – 0:50 d ^o - none Mean = 1:02E ^t
9 3 2				
10 3				
11 3 6	NE		Light Squalls, and some small Rain.	
12 5	“	“	Mod ^t . and fair	
1 5 4				
2 5 4				
3 5 4	“	“	Fresh breezes lulling & freshening at times.	
4 6				
5 4 4				
6 4 4	“	NEbE	Some light passing squalls and Rain.	
7 4 6				
8 5			This Morning got all the Cables on Deck and scrubbd and washed every part below.	
9 5 2				At 19 ^h :40' Lat ^d . 23°:35'S ^o Long ^d . T. Keeper 33:16W
10 5 2				
11 5 4				
12 5	“	“	Mod. breezes and Fine pleas ^t . W ^r . I steered a point more to the westward to get nearer the Coast before I get out of the Trades. All Sails set.	
105				
5394				
5499				
	Merid Alt ^d			
	S Center 77°:2'			
			Difference Long ^d . this day by D.R. T.K. 1°:17'W 1°:20'W	

Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . Noon			
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther.
S42°W	105	23°:51'S	23°:50'S	35°:16'W	33:35W	33°:19'	81¼

[Page 91]

86.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Thursd^y. Feb^y. 21st. 1788 Observations

1 5 SWbW NEbE Mod. breezes and fine W^r.

2 4 4

3 3 6 Got the Cables below again

4 4

5 3 2 “ “ Cloudy

At 5^h: 35'

Lat^d. 24°:03'S°

6 3 2

Long^d. T. K. = 33°:49'W

7 3 4 “ “ A Light Squall of Rain

8 3 6 “ “ Fair W^r. and fine Moonlight

9 5

10 5

11 6

12 5 6

1 5

2 4

3 3 3 “ “ Cloudy

4 3 5

5 3 6

6 3 4

7 3 5 ENE

At 20^h:14'

Lat^d. 24°:41'S°

8 4

Long^d. T. K. = 34°:49'W

9 4 “ NEbE

Fine W^r. Put all hands to 3 Quarts
of filtered Water P^r. day. – Filled
4 Pun^{on}. wth. Bread N° 2 – 216 Net lbs
3 - 229
4 - 214
5 – 209

10 4 2

11 4 6

12 4 6 “ ENE

Fine pleasant W^r. and steady breeze.
Top G. Steerg S^l. & all others Set.

102

5499

5601

Difference Long^d. this day by

D.R.

T.K.

1°:33'W

1°:32'W

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther.
S55°W	103	24:50S	24:48S°.	36°:49'W	35°:7W	34°:51'W	82°

[Page 92]

87.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Friday Feb^y. 22^d. 1788

Observations

1 4 SWbW ENE Fine Pleas^t. W^r. and a Steady breeze

2 3 4

3 3 4

4 4 “ “ Saw a Sail in the ESE her lower
Yd^s. to be seen from the Deck.

5 3 4 She had no Top Gall^t. Masts up
which wth. her reefing Top S^l.

At 4^h: 33'

Lat^d. 25°:1'S

6 3

at sun down, which I saw her

Long^d. T. K.

7 5 4		do, I concluded she was not an Englishman.	35°:22'W Varia p ^r . Azths. A Compss – 2°:29'E d ^o . turned - - 2:14 B Compss – 2:43 d ^o . turned - - 2:51 Mean – 2:34E.
8 5 6	“	NE	
9 5 5			
10 5 4			
11 5 2			
12 5 2			
1 5			
2 5 2			
3 5			
4 5			
5 5 2			
6 5 “	“	NbW	Shifted steering Sails to the Starb ^d . Side. No Sail in sight
7 4 4			At 19 ^h : 37' Lat ^d . 25°:44'S Long ^d . T. Keeper 36:30W Varia p ^r . Azths. A Compss – 3°:6'E d ^o . turned - - 3:3 B Compss – 3:4 d ^o . turned - - 3:4 Mean 3:4E
8 4 6		Employed cleaning below & overhauling & putting the Rigging in good order	
9 4			
10 4 4			
11 4 6			
12 5 6		NbE ^t	Very fine pleas ^t . W ^r . – under all Sails. Saw a few Bonitos.
113			
5601			
5714	Merid Alt ^d		
	S Center	74°:14 ½ '	Difference Long ^d . this day by D.R. T.K. 1°:46'W 1°:38'W

		Latitude		Longitude			Rem ^s . Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther.
S56°W	117	25°:55'S	25:40S	38°:35'W	36°:45'W	36°:29'W	81½ °

[Page 93]

89.

Remarks.

Having now passed the limits of the southern Tropic I shall first put the observations I have had an opportunity of making into one point of View.

Through the Northern Tropic which we have passed wth the Sun in a high south Declination the Therm^r. at Noon in the Shade varied from 70 to 80 degrees, the heat was rather agreeable than otherwise, but however fine the weather, ~~was~~ yet such a prodigious haze surrounded the horizon we could see any object but a very small distance. At sun down it wears away and the Nights become generally clear but gathers again with the Sun rising. In the Southern Tropic the Sky has been generally clear and very free of haze, and the Air considerably hotter. The Therm^r. varied in the shade at Noon from 81 to 83 degrees and the highest we have ever had it was 85° near the Line. The Morning Sun has been very powerful and productive of faintness among those exposed to it, but this I prevented as much as possible by making the People work under the cover of Awnings. A thick haze is certainly a pleasant attendant in a Tropical Region, the sun's rays have not so powerful an effect, & the Air is more cool and refreshing.

In any part of the Tropics when meeting with calms and Rain, the Air becomes sultry & unpleasant & by long continuance very liable to create sickness – nothing can prevent this but cleaning, drying & airing of Cloaths & Bedding, giving all the Air possible fore and aft the Ship & keeping the People in constant exercise. One thing I have adopted, and which I am convinced has been of an essential service, is once a day towards the evening from an hour to a half hour employed the People to put water into one Pump & others to pump it out at the other. In heavy Rains

[Page 94]

89.

when the Ship became heated below, I found this to have a most valuable effect, and I believe the Pumps to be the best Ventilators that can be put into a Ship. After the Rain, when the moistness created by it was dried up, I generally

washed with Vinegar, which has a most refreshing effect, but in fine W^r. nothing is necessary but exercise & cleanliness.

As most Ships on advancing towards and near the line, so we at Night found the Sea become illuminated wth numberless bright spots occasioned by innumerable marine animals near the surface that emit a strong sparkling light – There are a variety of them, but the kind I now picked up were about 2 Inc^h. long and 1½ Inch. in circumference, resembling very much a piece of vegetating coral, through the pores of w^{ch}. the light was emitted in distinct particles that with the refractive Medium of the water had a most powerful effect. They appeared totally inanimated their bulk consisted so much of aquaeous matter that in 12 Hours little remained as substance – besides these, were numberless kinds of blubbers and great quantities of Fish but we caught but few. The Schools of Fish at times appeared like dangerous Shoals, and am convinced that most of those laid down in these regions of which we can find no real existence, has been owing to the Relators having seen those imaginary dangers by night. The currents we have met with have been by no means regular or have I ever found them so in the middle of the Oceans, near the continents they are found pretty regular and constant. From the Channel to the South as far as Madeira there is invariably a Curr^t. Sett^g to the SSE^t. The Line of No Variation I presume to lie in 20°:00'S^o. and 31°:15' West. I have now cross'd the line in this ocean at three differ^t. times of the year Feb^y. June & Sept^r. between the Long^d 22° & 28° Wt. In Sept^r. the Winds from the lat^d. 12°N became west^{ly}. & then varied between the SWbS & SEbS with little rain & no Calms. In June pleasant SE^{ly}. Breezes & pleasant Wr. & now in Feb^y. with light South^{ly}. Winds & Calms & rain; but we always found the SE Winds after crossing the Line. I now passed about 31 leagues to the west^d. of Trinidad & Saw two Tropical Gannets w^{ch}. are always a sign of Land being near. They are nearly the same as the northern Gannet & in the South sea are called white Boobies.

[Page 95]

90.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Saturd ^y .	Feb ^y .	23 ^d .	1788	Observations
---	---	---	---------	-------	--------------------	-----------------------	--------------------	-------------------	------	--------------

1	6	“	SWbW	North	Very fine pleasant W ^r .	Empl ^d .				
					Servicing & repairing the Rigging					
2	5	6			& other necessary duties					

4 5

5 5

At 5^h: 42'
Lat^d. 26°:13'S

6 5
7 6

Long^d. T. K. = 27°:13'W

8 6

9 6 4 “ NNW

10 6 4

11 6 4

12 6 4 “ NW. Took in M. Top M^t Steerg Sails
Fresh breezes & fair W^r.

1 7

2 7

3 7

4 7 In lower Steering Sail

5 6 3

6 6 3

7 7

8 7 2 “ “ Fresh breezes & fair W^r. Saw At 20^h: 6'
some small bunches of Rockweed lat^d. 27°:6'S
Long^d. T. K. = 38°:45'W

9 7

10 7 4 “ “ Very hot Wind which I attribute to
its passing from the Continent.

11 7 “

12 6 SW^t. NWbW D^o W^r. In Fore Top M^t Steerg Sail

153
5714
5867

Merid Alt^d

S Center 72°:23' Note the Error on the 8th. Feb^y.
of 24' in long^d. is here corrected

Difference Long^d. this day by
D.R. T.K.
2°:32'W 2°:22'W

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
S56°W	162	27°:25'S ^o .	27°:14'S ^o
			41:31
			T.K.
			39°:07'W
			L & T.K.
			38°:51'W
			Ther. Air

[Page 96]

91.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s .	Sund ^y .	Feb ^y .	24 th . 1788	Observations
---	---	---	---------	-------	--------------------	---------------------	--------------------	-------------------------	--------------

1	5	4	SWbW	NW	Fresh breezes & fair open cloudy				
					W ^r .				

2	5	5			Unbent the Diver & bent a Miz ⁿ .				
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

3	3	4							
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

4	2	6	SW	NWbW	Looking Squally and unsettled				
					In 1 st . Reefs. Empl ^d . an half hour				

5	2		SSW	WbN	at the Pumps as usual				At
---	---	--	-----	-----	-----------------------	--	--	--	----

6	4		W	SSW	Squally and Rain				
	4		WSW	S ^o .					

7									
---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

1			WSW-	Calm-	& Rain				
---	--	--	------	-------	--------	--	--	--	--

8									
---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

9									
---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

1			d ^o .	-					
---	--	--	------------------	---	--	--	--	--	--

10									
----	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

11	“	4	SW.	WNW					
----	---	---	-----	-----	--	--	--	--	--

12	“	4	“	“	These last 4 hours continual Small				
					Rain.				

1	1		WbS	NNW					
---	---	--	-----	-----	--	--	--	--	--

2	3								
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

3 2 WSW NWbN

4 1 1 “ “ Squally & Rain

5 “ 4 SWbS. NW.

6 At 20^h: 16'
1 SSW Calm and Hard Rain filled nearly a Ton lat^d. 27°:48'S°
7 of Water. Long^d. T. Keeper
39°:34'W

8 1 “ SSW WNW

9 “ 4 WSW NWbN Light airs up all Wet Cloaths and
every thing from below & washed
10 “ 4 & dried Ship. Caught a Shark.

11 1 SSW West.

12 1 “ “ Fair W^r. & Cloudy Swell from the
north^d.

35
5867
5902

Merid Alt^d

S Center 71°:34 '

Difference Long^d. this day by
D.R. T.K.
0°:32'W 0°:26'W

		Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . Noon			
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther.
SW	39	27°:52'S	27°:45'S	42°:03W.	39°:33'W	39°:17'W	79½°

[Page 97]

92.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Mond^y. Feb^y. 25th. 1788 Observations

1 1 4 SSW W. Light Airs & Cloudy.

2 2

3	“					
1		SE.	Calm.	A Confused Swell.		4
“						
5	1 4	ESE	S ^o -	Caught 5 Dolphins T.K. ^d Empl ^d .	At 5 ^h : 26'	
				at the Pumps as usual.	lat ^d . 27°:56'S	
6	2 6	W½N	SSW		Long ^d . T. K. – 39:30W	
7	2 4	WbS	SbW			
8	3 4	SW	SEbS	Cloudy and a heavy Swell from the SE.		
9	4 4	SWbW				
10	3 6					
11	4					
12	4 2	“	SE	Out Reefs & Set Steering Sails		
1	3 6					
2	4	“	SEbE			
3	4 4					
4	3 4					
5	4					
6	4		SE	Squally.		
7	4	“	“	Could make no observations for the		
				Varia ⁿ .		
8	3	“			At 19 ^h : 55'	
					Lat ^d . 28°:20'S	
9	5 4	“	SSE	Fair W ^r . Empl ^d . about the Rigging and cleaning below.	Long ^d . T. K. 40°:35'W	
10	3 4	“	ESE			
11	3 4	“	ENE			

12 4 4 “ NNE Fair W^r. & Cloudy. All Steerg Sails
Set – a Southerly Swell – a very few
80 Birds seen & those only Sheerwaters.
5902
5982

Merid Alt^d

S Center 70°:25'

Difference Long^d. this day by

D.R

T.K.

1°:22'W

1°:14'W

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther.
S71°W	76	28°:27'S°	28°:31'S°	43:25W.	40°:47'W	40°:31'W	76¾°

[Page 98]

93.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Tuesday Feb^y. 26th. 1788 Observations

1 4 SWbW North Mod and fair W^r.

2 4

3 4 4 Lost a Log and three Lines -

4 5

5 5

At 5^h: 17'

Lat^d. 28°:37'S

6 6 4

Fresh breezes & cloudy.

Long^d. T. Keeper

41°:7'W

7 6 2

Varia p^r. Azths.

A Compss – 6°:28'E

8 6 4

“

“

Much Lightning to the South^d.
and westward. In T.G. Steerg
Sl^s.

d^o. - - 6:20

B Compss – 6:28

9 7

d^o. - - 7:8

Mean = 6:36E

10 8 4

“

“

In Lower & M. T. M^t. Steerg Sl.

11 9 4

“

“

In Fore T. M^t. Steerg Sail.

12 10 “ “ Very Fresh Gale in 1st. Reefs.

1 7 4

3 4
2 Squally Close Reef'd Miz. Top S^l.
3 6 SSW½W WbN

3 7

3 4
4
2 5 SbE SWbW

5 2 6 “ “ Mod. & Cloudy.

6 4 4 SSE SW

7 3

8 2 6 “ “ Fair W^r.

9 2 4 SbE SWbW

10 2 4 S^o. WSW Empl^d. making Matts & cleang
below.

11 2 SSW½W WbN Out Reefs.

12 3 SWbW NW Fresh Breezes & Fair W^r.

At 19^h: 38'
Lat^d. 29°:31'S
Long^d. T. Keeper
41°:6'W
Varia p^r. Azths.
A Compss – 7°:12'E
d^o. turned - - 7:12
B Compss – 7:4
d^o. Turned - - 7:26
Mean 7:13E

127

5982

6109

Merid Alt^d

S Center 69°:3'

Difference Long^d. this day by

D.R.

T.K.

1°:14'W

1°:13'W

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	Ther. Air
S42°W	96	29:38S	29°:50'S	44°:39'S ^o	42°:60'W	41°:41'W	78°

[Page 99]

94.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Wednesd^y. Feb^y. 27th. 1788 Observations

1 4 “ SWbW NW Fresh breezes and squally In 1st. Reef
Top Sails.

2 4 2

3 4 “ “ Fresh Gales and Squally in 3^d. Reef Some
M.T. & 4th. Reef Fore Top S^l. & Butterflies

4 4 “ SWbS WbN handed Miz. T. – much Sea - and others like
what we call

5 4 SbW WbS Hornflies blown
past us. Some

6 3 4 sheerwaters about.

7 3 2 S^o. WSW

8 3 2 “ “ Fresh Gale & Fair W^r. out 4th. Reef
Fore Top S^l.

9 3 4 SbW WbS

10 4 Untill one O’Clock in the Mornng.
Fresh Gales and very hard Squalls
11 3 w^{ch}. obliged us frequently to take in
all Sail.

12 3

1 3 S^o. WSW

2 3 2 “ “ Not so Squally

3 3

4 3 “ “ More Moderate.

5 3 S¹/₂W WbS Out 3rd. & 2nd. Reefs

6 3 2 S^o. WSW Some Squalls small Rain

7 3 4 SbE SWbW At 8^h: 18'

8 3 SSE SW Fair W^r. and cloudy Lat^d. 30°:43'S
Long^d. T. K.
42°:00'W

9 3 SbE SWbW Some Sheerwaters but no other
Birds.

10 3

11 4 3 SSE SW

12 4 “ “ D^oW^r. A Southerly Swell.

85

6109

6194

Merid Alt^d

S Center 67°:23'

Difference Long^d. this day by

DR

T.K.

0°:8'E

0°:6'E

	Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . Noon		
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K	Ther. Shade
S5°E	78	30:56	30°:55'S	44:31W	41°:54'W	41°:30'W	74°

[Page 100]

95.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Thursd^y. 28th. 1788 Observations

1 3 4 SSE SW Mod. breezes & Fine W^r.

1 4 SE SSW
2 T.K.^d.

1 4 WbN SWbS.

3 3 3 Opened a Punchⁿ. Pork Conts.
160 four lb pieces N^o 555, short
4 3 5 West SSW two pieces.

5 3 4 WbS SbW

6 4 2 WSW S^o.

7	3	4			
8	3	4	“	“	Some Small Rain
9	3	2	“	“	Fair W ^r
10	3	1			
11	2	6			Out 1 st . Reefs
12	2	2	SWbW	SSE	
1	2	3			
2	3		WSW	SbE.	
3	4		SWbW $\frac{1}{2}$ W		
4	4		SWbW	SSE.	
5	4				
6	4	2	“	“	Set Fore Top M ^t Steering S ^l .
7	4	3			
8	4	4	“	“	Mod. & Fair W ^r , but too Cloudy to get any Lunar Observ ^s .
9	2	4			At 19 ^h : 38' Lat ^d . 31°:4'S ^o . Long ^d . T. K. 42°:57'W
10	1	2			Empl ^d . dipping the best New M. Varia p ^r . Azths. Top S ^l in the Sea for A Compss – 8°:26'W
11	1	2			bending & brought it to. d ^o . turned - - 7:29 Overhauled the old one. B Compss – 9:5
12	1	2	“	“	D ^o W ^r . Swell from the SSE - d ^o . Turned - - 8:8 some Sheerwaters & a Port Mean = 8:17W Egmont hen about the Ship.
		76			
		6194			
		6270			
			Merid Alt ^d		
			S Center 66°:50'		
				Difference Long ^d . this day by	
				DR. T.K.	
				1°:17'W 1°:11'W	

		Latitude		Longitude			Rem ^s . Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther. Shade
S81W	66	31°:06 S°.	31°:00' S°.	45°:48'W	43°:5'W	42°:49'W	74°

[Page 101]

96

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Friday 29th. Feb^y 1788 Observations

1 2 SWbW SSE Light Airs and fair W^r.

2 1 6 “ “ Cloudy. Unbent the Fore Top S^l.
and bent a New one after dipping
3 2 it in the Water.

4 2 “ “ Fair W^r. – All Sails set.

5 2 2

6 2

7 2 2 SW

Note

8 3

As the only way to discover by the T. Keeper if a
Current sets either to the East or West is by

9 3 4

SE

comparing it with the x Long^d. made by Log, that
difference of long^d. should be equal to the departure
found without correction, and not that found after

10 3

E^t.

correcting the lat^d. – The difference of long^d from
day to day by DR in the detached column will

11 2 2

ENE

therefore be what the Courses & distances give
with the allowance of leeway & variation – The

12 1 4

difference between this & the T. Keeper diff.

1 1 7

NbE

long^d, and the error in lat^d. will always show the
set of the Current.

2 1

3 1

4 1

5 “ At 20^h: 6'
 Lat^d. 31°:29'S^o.
 6 “ Long^d. T. K.
 43°:30:24W
 7 “ 2 SSW Calm & Fine W^r. Long^d. O a D red^d. to
 same time –
 8 “ Unstocked the Sheaf Ramsⁿ. B - 43°:32':30"W
 Anchor & got it board. Unbound d^o C – 43:22:30
 9 4 SW NE the Fore Sail & bent a New Trought. H 43:14:30
 one after dipping it in the Sea. Mean. 43:23:10W
 10 1 Began to repair the unbent sails
 before they were put by for good.
 11 1 4
 12 1 4 “ “ Fine pleasant W^r. Saw some Bonitos

37
 6270
 6307

Merid Alt^d
 S Center 66°:2'

Difference Long^d. this day by
 DR T.K.
 0°:36'W 0°:28'W

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
S54°W	42	31°:31'S	31°:26' S ^o .
			46°:30'W
			43°:33'W
			43°:17'W
			78°

[Page 102]
 97.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Saturd^y. March 1st. 1788 Observations

1 1 6 SW NE Fine Pleasant W^r.

2 2 4 “ E

3 3 SE

4 3 At 5^h: 48'
 Lat^d. 31°:00'S^o.

5 3 3				Long ^d . T. Keeper 43°:46'W
6 3 4				Varia p ^r . Azths.
7 4 2				A Compss – 9°:34'E d ^o . Turned - - 9:32
8 4	“	“	Fine Night and smooth Water.	B Compss – 10:9 d ^o . Turned - - 10:15 Mean = 9:55E
9 3 4		ESE ^t .		
10 3				
11 3 4			Note. As I have not been able to make only more than two days observ. of the Sun & Moon I carry	
12 3 4			on the L ^r & T. Keeper as before; however they serve to show me I cannot be much out.	
1 1 6				
2 2 1				
3 2 4	“	“	Several Whales near the Ship	
4 2 4		East.		
5 2 2				
6 2	“	“	Several Whales about.	
7 1 6				At 19 ^h : 59' Lat ^d . 32°:05'S
8 2	“	“	Employed all the morning cleaning below and other Necess ^y .	Long ^d . T. K. 44°:36':36"W
9 2	“	NE	duties -	Long ^d . O a D red ^d . to the Same time.
10 1 4			To days Observ ^s - - 44°:31':30"W	Rams ⁿ . B - 44°:55':15"W
			Yesterd ^{ys} . red ^d . to this time 44:29:22	d ^o C – 44:28:30
11 1			0:52	Trought. H 44:10:45
			Mean = 44:30:26W	Mean. 44:31:30
12 1	“	“	Very fine pleasant Wr. but little Wind. Only one a Port	Varia p ^r . Azths. A Compss – 9°:08'E
61			Egmont hen seen & a few	d ^o . turned - - 8:17
6307			Fish to day. Steering Sails	B Compss – 9:8
6368			& all set.	d ^o . turned - - 10:22

Mean = 9:49E

Merid Alt^d
S Center 65°:2'

Difference Long^d. this day by
DR T.K.
0°:58'W 1°:09'W

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . Noon
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d . D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.			
SW ³ / ₄ W 61 32°:08'S 32:08 S° 47°:28'W 44°:42'W 44°:26'W			

[Page 103]

98.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s . Sund ^y . March 2 nd . 1788	Observations
1	1		SW	ENE	Light Airs & fine W ^r .	
2	1					
3	1					
4	1			East		At 5 ^h : 4' Lat ^d . 32°:12'S Long ^d . T. K. 44°:47':36"W
5	1	4	“	“	Employed at the Pumps as usual.	
6	1	2				
7	1					
8	1					
9	1					
10	1					
11	2			NE	Set Steering Sails the Starb ^d . side	
12	2	4		NNE		
1	3			N°.		

2 3 6	“	“	In Steerg Sails from the larbd. side	
3 4 4				
4 4 2	“	NNW		
5 5 4				At 20 ^h : 5'
6 6	“	NW	Caught three Bonitos	Lat ^d . 32°:50'S
7 6 4				long ^d . T. K. = 45°:35'W
				Varia p ^r . Azths.
				A Compss – 9°:55'E
8 7	“	NWbW	In M.T. M ^t . & M.T. G ^t . Steering Sails	d° - - 9:38
9 6 2	“	“	Mustered & saw all hands clean	B Compss – 10:01
10 5 2			Read the Articles of War &	d° - - 10:27
11 2 4			Performed divine service. I now thought it for the good of the service,	Mean = 10:00E
12 1 4			to give Mr. Fletcher Christian an acting order as a Lieu ^t . I therefore ordered it to be read to all hands.	
72			At 11 Very squally, Rain & Thunder. Clued all Sails up, & I took this opportunity to sound w th . 240	
6368			fms Line not found no ground. At Noon fair W ^r . &	
6440			made all Sail. Whales seen, but no Birds.	

Merid Alt ^d	
S Center 63°:48'	Difference Long ^d . this day by
	DR T.K.
	1°:09'W 1°:02'W

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K
S52°W	83	32°:59'S°	32°:51' S°	48:47W	45°:44'W	45°:28'W
						74°

[Page 104]
99.

H K F	Courses	Winds	Rem ^s . Monday March 3 ^d . 1788	Observations
1 3 2	SW.	NWbW	Very Fine clear & pleasant W ^r . all	

2 3 6		this day with the Wind variable as to strength & in the latter part threatening to be Calm.	
3 3 4			
4 3 4			At 5 ^h : 9'
5 4 4		Saw a Turtle -	Lat ^d . 33°:10'S
6 4			Long ^d . T. K. 45°:56'W
7 2 6			Varia p ^r . Azths. A Compss – 9°:41'E
8 2			d° - - 9:54 B Compss – 9:58 d° - - 10:16 Mean = 9:57E
9 3	“	“	Constant flashes of Lightning in the NW
10 3	“	NW	
11 3 6			
2			
12			
1 6	SWbS	WbN	
1 3	SW.		
2 3			
3 2 6		WNW	
4 3			
5 1 6			
6 2		NW.	
7 1 4			At 19 ^h : 42'
8 1 2		Empl ^d . about the Rigging, drying Casks to put bread into & Cleaning below.	Lat ^d . 33°:32' Long ^d . T. K. 46°:39'W
9 1			Varia p ^r . Azths. A Compss – 9°:58'E

10 4 2

11 4

12 4 4 “ “ Mod^t & fine W^r many Fish seen.

1 5

2 5 6

3 5 6

4 5 6

5 5 7

6 5 5 “ “ Fresh Breezes & cloudy with haze.
Caught several Bonitos

7 5 6 “ NbW At 19^h: 43'

Lat^d. 34°:4'S

8 6 “ “ Long^d. T. K.
47°:55'W

9 7 Employed making Points & Varia p^r. Azths.
Cleaning below. A Compss – 11°:1'E

10 8 Saw a Turtle. d^o. turned - - 10:56

11 8 B Compss – 11:46

d^o. Turned - - 11:51

Mean = 11:23E

12 7 4 “ “ Fresh gale & Cloudy with haze

In All steerg Sails & 1st. Reefs.

105 Sheerwaters coming about the

6505 Ship w^{ch} is looked on to be sign

6610 of Wind.

Merid Alt^d

O Center 61°:38'

Difference Long^d. this day by

DR.

T.K.

1°:41'W

1°:40'W

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K	Ther Air
S55°W	83	34°:22'S	34°:38'S	51:06	48°:23'W	48°:7'W	74½°

[Page 106]

101.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Wednesd^y 5th. March 1788 Observations

1 9 SW. NNW Fresh Gales and Cloudy with haze.

2 8 4

3 7 4 “ “ In 2nd. Reefs

4 6 2 “ “

5 5 4 SWbS WbN

6 4 4 SbE SWbW

7 6 6 SE SSW Lightning in the SE

8 4 6

9 5

10 5 “ “ Close Reefed the Miz. Top S^l.

11 3 4

12 3 SEbS SWbS Fresh Gales and dark Cloudy W^r.

1 3 2

2 3 4

3 3 4

4 3 6

5 4 SE SSW

2 TK^d.

6 At 20^h: 41'

2 SbW Lat^d. 35°:24'S

Long^d. T. K.
48°:15'W

7 4 2

8 3 “ “ A heavy head Sea.

9 3 West SSW Cleaned below. An Albatross seen.
Many Sheerwaters about.

10 3 2

11 4 5 “ “ More Mod^t. out 2nd. Reef M.T. S^l.

12 3 4 “ “ Mod. & Cloudy Under T.G. Sails
Single Reef Main dble reef'd Fore
& close reefed Miz. Top sail – A
Cold Air. laid aside our Tropical
Cloaths.

112
6610
6722

Merid Alt^d
O Center 60°:19'

Difference Long^d. this day by
DR T.K.
0°:17'W 0°:4'W

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	Ther Air
S17°W	59	35°:18'S°.	35°:07'S°	51°:27'W	48°:27'W	48°:11'W	66½°

[Page 107]
102.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. Rem^s. Thursd^y 6 March 1788 Observations

1 4 WbS SbW Mod. & Cloudy W^r.

2 3 4

3 3 4 “ “ Out 2^d. Reef fore Top S^l.

4 3 “ “ 66 Employed at the Pumps as
usual.

5 2 6 SWbW SbE

At 5^h:8'
Lat^d. 35°:13'S
Long^d. T. K. =

6 2 4 “ “ 65½ Swell from the SE

48°:47'W

7 2 WSW S^o.

8 1 5 “ “ 64 Light Winds & fair W^r.

9 1 3

10 1 2

11 1 2 SWbW½W SSE

12 1 WSW S^o. 64

1 1 2

2 1 2

3 1 2 WbS SbW

4 2 64

5 2 WSW S^o.

6 3

7 3

8 3 West SSW 66 Mod & fair W^r. Swell from the SW.

9 3 2 Washed & dried below

10 3 4 WbS½S S^o.

11 3 5 WbS SbW

12 4 4 67¾ Mod & fine W^r. a dry pleasant
Air. A few Sheerwaters ab^t –

59

6722

6781

Merid Alt^d
S Center 60:14

Difference Long^d. this day by
DR. T.K.
1°:07'W 1°:18'W

		Latitude		Longitude		
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K
S71°W	58	34°:59'S ^o .	34°:58'S	52°:347'W	49°:45'W	49°:29'W

[Page 108]

103.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther.	Rem ^s .	Friday 7 th . March 1788	Observations
---	---	---	---------	-------	-------	--------------------	-------------------------------------	--------------

1	4	2	WbS	SbW			Mod and fine W ^r .	
---	---	---	-----	-----	--	--	-------------------------------	--

2	5	2	W	SSW				
---	---	---	---	-----	--	--	--	--

3	5	4					Exercised Small Arms.	
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	-----------------------	--

4	5	4	WSW	S ^o .	65½		Flying Fish seen.	
---	---	---	-----	------------------	-----	--	-------------------	--

At 4^h:39'
Lat^d. 34°:52'S
Long^d. T. K. =
50°:12'W

5	3	4						
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

6	3	4						
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

7	5	4	WbS½S				A little squally.	
---	---	---	-------	--	--	--	-------------------	--

8	5	2	WSW		65		Fine W ^r .	
---	---	---	-----	--	----	--	-----------------------	--

9	4	6						
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

10	4							
----	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

11	3	6						
----	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

12	3				65½			
----	---	--	--	--	-----	--	--	--

1	2	5	WbS	SbW				
---	---	---	-----	-----	--	--	--	--

2	2							
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

3	2	2						
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

4	2				65			
---	---	--	--	--	----	--	--	--

	Latitude			Longitude		Rem ^s . Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K	L & T.K
S85°W	77	35°:06'	34°:57'S	54°:13'W	51°:39'W	51°:23'W

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther.	Rem ^s .	Saturd ^y .	8 March 1788	Observations
---	---	---	---------	-------	-------	--------------------	-----------------------	--------------	--------------

1	3	SW $\frac{1}{2}$ S.	ESE	Very fine W ^r . w th . some very light Clouds of Rain.
1	4			
2				
	“	“	Calm	I now took the opportunity of sounding again & had a perpendicular line of 240 fm ^s . but found no ground
3	6	4	SWbS	
4	5	4	“	“ 67 $\frac{1}{2}$

5 5	“	ENE	“	Varia. to 4 Points & Squalls took in & set Steering Sails occasionally.	
6 5 4	“	“	67½	A very confused Sea – Saw an Albatross and several Flying Fish.	
7 5 4					
8 7	“	“	68	Fresh breezes & Cloudy.	
9 8	SSW½W				
10 7 2	“	“		Squally in Steerg Sails	
11 5 4					
12 6	“	NNE	67		
1 5 4		NW			
2 6 2		Nº.		All this watch very variable Winds & Squally.	
3 6					
4 6		NNW	67½		
5 5					
6 3 4	“	WNW	“	Light Squalls & small Rain & Wind Variable.	
7 3 4	“	Nº.			
8 4	“	WNW	67½	Saw Several Whales & one Albatross. Very fine Weather	At 19 ^h : 44'
9 2 2					lat ^d . 36°:42'S
10 2 2		WbN		All hands employed washing & Cleaning Served Mustard & Vinegar.	Long ^d . T. K. 52°:55'W
11 2 2					
12 2 6	“	“	72½	Very fine W ^r . Sounded 240 fm ^s . streight line but got no ground – passing a Ripling of a Current & a Stream of froth NNW & SSE, I tried the curr ^t . & found it set 1½	
116					
6858					
6974					

Mile an hour to the NNW by
Mooring a Keg with 100 fm^s. Line.

Merid Alt^d
S Center 57°:36'

X long^d. this day by
DR T.K.
1°:34'W 1:30W

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . Noon
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d . D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K			
S39°W 134 36°:50'S 36°:32'S ^o . 55:58W 53:09W 52:59W			

[Page 110]
105.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther.	Rem ^s .	Sund ^y .	9 March 1788	Observations
1	1	4	SWbS	WNW					Light Winds and very fine clear W ^r . Sounded 240 fm ^s . straight Line
2	1								no ground.
3	1	4							
4	1	4	“	“	70				At 5 ^h : 30' Lat ^d . 36°:56'S
5	2		“	NNW					Hove too to pick up a Turtle Long ^d . T. K. = hoisted the Boat out but found 53°:23'W
6	2				68¾				the Turtle unfit for use. Varia p ^r . Azths. Made all Sail. A Compss – 14°:55'E
7	4	4	SW						Several Crabs ab ^t the d ^o . Turned - - 14:34 Turtle. It had no signs B Compss – 14:31 of being killed. d ^o . turned - - 15:21 Mean = 14:50E
8	5	4		“	68¼				Fresh breezes with smooth water & delightful fine clear W ^r .
9	6		SWbS						
10	6		“	NWbN	“				So very clear that all the stars transit the Horizon in a most
11	6	3							beautiful manner.
12	6	5	“	“	68				

1 6 6

2 6 5

3 7 “ “ “ In T.G. Steerg Sails

4 7 2 “ “ 67

5 7 “ “ Fine Wr. and hazy. At 19^h: 58'

Lat^d. 38°:29'

6 6 6 “ NWbW “ Water became discoloured Long^d. T. K.

a variety of Sea Fowl about 54°:35'W

7 6 3 many of Albatrosses Varia p^r. Azths.

A Compss – 14°:21'E

8 6 “ “ d^o. turned - - 14:31

B Compss – 14:32

9 6 “ “ “ Hove too & sounded 150 d^o. turned - - 14:34

fm^s. straight Line but no Mean = 14:29E

10 6 ground.

11 6 Mustered the People & performed
Divine Service.

12 6 2 NW. 64¾ Fine W^r. but hazy – Vast numbers

of Sea Birds about of different

123 kinds. T. Gall^t. Top M^t. & lower

6974 Steerg Sails Set.

7097

Merid Alt^d

O Center 55°:17'

X Long^d. this day by

DR T.K.

1°:55'W 1°:34'W

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	DR	DR	T.K.	L & T.K	I have
S30°W	148	38:46S	38°:13'S	57°:53'W	54°:53'W	54°:37'W	allowed the
							Error in a
							Curr. Sett ^g S°.

[Page 111]

106.

Remarks.

Until to Day we have had the W^r remarkably clear, when at day light the Sun advanced with a very strong haze & the Sea became very much changed in its colour as is usual in Soundings, and different kinds of Sea Fowl were seen in great numbers & many patches of Weed. I have already passed the limits w[h]ere former Navigators had found ground & in particular Cap^t Wallis who found 54 fm^s in lat^d. 35°:40'S^o. & Long^d. 49°:54' West, but it can be observed for these few days past I have not been able to get any with 240 fm^s of line – The Soundgs were judiciously made with the Lead wrapt with canvass & armed, from whence I conclude his longitude must have been much out, as I conceive my situation in that respect not above one fourth of a degree wrong. The discolouring of the water I believe to be owing to the haze, altho I have no reason to believe I am more than 40 le[a]gues from the Coast. Having passed on Yesterday the appearance of a Current, after sounding, I tried it by a Keg moored with 100 fm^s. and a heavy Deepsea Lead, and it evidently gave me a Stream setting to the NNW 1¼ Mile p^r hour – from this I concluded of course a northern Current, but on the Contrary to day, and also before, we have clearly been set to the Southward – What was particular also in this experiment was, the Ship drifted to Windward of the Keg – It will be proper for me to remark here; however this method may answer in Soundings, yet I have from many years experience found it fail in deep water, and I totally lay it aside as a basis to go upon, to ~~alter~~ correct the course or distance. I am now possessed of the best means to discover the directions of the current, the Time Keeper, & I shall hereafter make a summary acc^t of these observations which I hope may discover it. At Noon to make the most of time wth. such a fine wind & fair W^r. I steered in a direction for Port Desire.

[Page 112]

107.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. Rem^s. Mond^y. 10th. March 1788 Observations

1	6	SWbS	NW		Very fine pleasant weather not very hazy.
2	6	SSW			
3	6				Untill this afternoon I had hopes I could have performed the Voyage without punishment to any one, but I found it necessary to punish
4	6	“	“	62	Mathew Quintal with 2 dozen lashes for

5	5	insolence & Contempt to the Master.				
6	5	“	N ^o .	60 ½	At 6 Sounded w th . 160 fm ^s . straight line but found no bottom.	At 5 ^h : 32' Lat ^d . 39°:11'S
7	5					Long ^d . T. K. = 55°:12':37"W
8	5	“	“	59 ¼	Fine Night All steerg. sails set. A heavy Dew; and faint Lightning in the SW.	
9	5	“	“			
10	5	“	NNE.			
11	5					
12	5	“	“	59	A Very heavy Dew & Lightg. – In T.G. Steerg Sails	
1	4	4				
2	4	4				
3	4					
4	5	4	“	“	59 ¾	Some Thunder – Cloudy inclinble to a Fog.
5	5	4	“	North		
6	4	6	“	NNW	“	Squally In Steerg. Sails
7	2	SbE	SWbW			
8	1	4	SSW	W ^t .	60	Foggy round the horizon & the banks appearing very much like Land. Many Albatrosses, Sheerwaters & Port Egmont Hens abt.
9	2	SbE	SWbW			
10	1					
	“	“	“	“	“	
11	4	2	SEbS	SWbS		Sounded 83 fm ^s . ouzy bottom, scarce any to be brought up by the Lead.
12	4	4	“	“	58 ½	Moderate & Cloudy W ^r . No Observ.
108						
7097						
7205						X Long ^d . this day by

DR T.K.

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	DR	DR	T.K.	L & T.K
S29°W	101	None	40°:14'S ^o .	58°:57'W		

[Page 113]
108.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. Songt. Rem^s. Tuesd^y. 11th. March 1788

1	4	4	SE	SSW	“	“	Mod. and cloudy W ^r .
2	2	2	“	“	“	“	Thick Fog
3	1	6	“	“			No ground at 160 fm ^s . W ^r . Cleared from Fog.
4	2	4	ESE	S ^o .	55		A Moist and cold air, and little Wind –
5							Hoisted the Boat out to pick up an Albatross
	1	“	WbN	SWbS			that was Shot – It measured from the Tip of
							one Wing to the other 6 ^F :8 ⁱⁿ & from the tip of
							the Bill to end of the foot 2 ^F :9 ⁱⁿ .
6	3	4	West	SSW	54		
7	4	6	WSW	S ^o .			
8	4	6			55		Mod. & Cloudy W ^r .
9	4	6					
10	5						Squally
11	5						
12	5	“	“		53		
1	4	6	SWbW½W				
2	4	4	WSW				
3	4	4	“	“	“	“	In 1 st . Reefs

4	4			53½				
5	3				In 2 ^d .	Reef Fore Top S ^l .		
6	3							
7	3	SWbW	SbE					
8	3			51½ 55	fm ^s .	ouzey bottom of a greenish colour scarce any to be brought up with the lead.		
9	2	2						
10	2	4				Cleaned below, and served Slops & Tobacco to the People – Many Whales about of an immense size & two spout holes on the back of the head.		
11	2	2	SW	SSE				
12	2	“	“	55 54	Very cloudy W ^r .	Swell from the SW – Few Birds – Got a tolerable good observation. Soundings as before.		
	83							
	7205							
	7288				At 22 ^h :	51' Lat ^d .	39°:52'S ^o .	
					Long ^d .	by T. K. = 56:59West		
		Merid Alt ^d						
		O Center	53°:21'					
						X Long ^d .	these two Days by	
						DR	T.K.	
						2°:25'W	2°:08'W	
			Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	DR	DR	T.K.	L & T.K	No other	
N72°W	65	39:54S	40°:6'S	60:18W	57:01W	56°:45'	alt ^{ds} .	of the
							Sun could be	
							Got for its	
							Long ^d .	& were
							Very good.	

[Page 114]
109.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. Songt. Rem^s.Wednesd^y. 12th.March1788

1 3 4 WSW S^o. Mod & very Cloudy W^r. Many Porpoises and

2 3	SWbW SbE	Whales about. The kind we constantly see have two spouts at the back of the head
3 3		
4 2 4	54¼	Exercised Small Arms.
5 2 2	SWbS SEbS	
6 2 2	“ “	55 Fm ^s . soft ooze ground as before scarce any be brought up by the lead.
7 1 6	SSW½W SE	
8 1 4	SbW½W	54 Light Airs & Calms.
9		
10	1 “ WSW Calm	
11	round the Compss	
12	55 60 Fm ^s . Sound ^{gs} as before	
1		
2 1	SSW Calm	
3	“ “	Caught a Shark
4 1	SbW½W NbE 56½	Light Airs Set T. Mast Gall ^t and Lower Steering Sails
5 1 2		At 20 ^h : 27' Lat ^d . 40°:06'S°.
6 1 7	NbW	Long ^d . T. Keeper - 57°:19'W.
7 1 2		
8 1 6	NW.	Fine W ^r . & Smooth Water.
9 2		Overhauled all the Rigging Greased the Top Masts and employed in the Hold getting water to hand.
10 2		

10 3 6	“	“	D°. & Thunder and &	A Compss – 16°:57'E
			heavy Clouds rising -	d°. turned - - 16:34
11 3 4			in Steerg Sails	B Compss – 16:48
				d°. turned - - 17:00
12 1 4	SbE½E	SWbW	59 48 Ouzey ground as before -	Mean = 16:50E
			In 1 st . Reefs.	
1 1 2	SbW	WbS		
2 1 4	“	“	“ 48 fm ^s .	
3 2				
4 2 2	“	“	“ 49	
5 2	SbE	SbW		
6 1 6	“	“	“ “ Out Reefs.	At 19 ^h : 37'
				Lat ^d . 41°:15'S
7 2 4				Long ^d . T. Keeper
				57°:48':45"
8 2 6	“	“	“ “ Fair W ^r .	O a D Sun West
				reduced to same time
9 5			Empl ^d . cleaning below	Rams ^d . B - 57°:48':15"
			& knotting yarns.	d° – C 58:00:45
3				Trought H 57:51:30
10				Mean 57:53:30
3	SE	SSW		
11 5	SEbE	SbW		
12 5 6	SEbS	SWbS	60 56 Sound ^{gs} . as before – Fine clear	
			W ^r . Some Albatrosses &	
84			Mother Careys Chicken about.	
7323			All hands eat of the Porpoise	
7407			& allowed it to be exceedingly	
			good.	

Merid Alt^d
O Center 50°:54'

X Long^d. to Day by
DR T.K.
0°:9'W 0°:10'W

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s. Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	DR	DR	T.K.	L & T.K
S5°W	80	41°:34'S	41:30	61°:02'W	57°:33'W	57°:17'W

[Page 116]

111.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. L Rem^s. Frid^y. 14th. March 1788 Observations

1 2 SSE SW Light winds and fine W^r.

2 2 Exercised Small arms.

3 2 “ SWbW At 5^h:17'
Lat^d. 41°:43'S
Long^d. T. K. -
57°:29':1"W

4 1 4 SbE 61½

5 1 4 SEbE SbW

6 1 4

7 “

8 “ SSE Calm 55¾ 70 fm^s. Greenish coloured Sand
& ouze.

9 1 SbW N^o.

10 1 Light airs and fair W^r.

11

1 2 SSW NbW

12 2 6 55

1 3

2 4 “ “ “ Set Steering Sails

3 5 4 “ NNW

4 6 55½ Fresh Breezes and cloudy

5 7 2 “ “ “ “ Fresh gales & thick Rainy W^r.

6 8

7 8

8 8 55¼ Saw a land Bird like a Lark

9 8 NW Many Patches of weed & some Whales.

10 7 4 WNW “ “ Wind increasing & heading. In steering Sails & 2nd. Reefs.

11 6 2 SbW½W W

12 6 4 S½W WbS 58¾ Fresh Gales & Cloudy. Passed a Dead Whale that had been sent a drift by some Whalers after they had taken the blubber off.

96
7407
7503

Merid Alt^d
O Center 49°:20'

X Long^d. to Day by
D R. T.K.
0°:56'W 0:33W

Latitude Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	DR	DR	T.K.	L & T.K
S20°W	79	42:44S ^o .	42°:52'S	61:52	58°:56'W	57°:50'W

[Page 117]
112.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. L Rem^s. Saturd^y. 15th. March 1788 Observations

1 6 6 SbW WbS. Fresh Gales & Squally. Saw a Sail in the East lying to under a Main Top S^l.

2 6 4 S^o WSW

3 6 3 SbE. SWbW

4 6 6 “ 57¼ Strong Gales & heavy Squalls Close reefed & handed the Top

5 4 S^{ls}. Down T.G. Yards & Fore At 4^h: 39'

6 4				T.G. Mast. Saw another Sail in the South	Lat ^d . 43°:12'S Long ^d . T. K. 58°:4':7"W
7 4 2	SSE.	SW			Long ^d . O a D reduced to the same time
8 4 2		"	54		Rams ^d . B - 57°:52':45" d ^o - C 58:9:30
9 3 4	SE	SSW			Trought H 58:13:00 Mean = 58:5:5
10 5	East	SSE		Wore Ship & set M. TS close reefed	
11 2	WSW	S ^o			
12 2 4	SWbW	SbE	50½	Fresh Gales & much Sea.	
1 2	SWbW½W				
2 2					
3 2	"	"		More Moderate Set Fore Top S ^l .	
4 2 2			52½		
5 2 6	WSW	S ^o .			At 20 ^h : 44' Lat ^d . 43°:06'S Long ^d . T. K. - 58°:30½'
6 3				Out 3 rd . Reefs	
7 3 4					
8 3 6			50½	Fair W ^r . out 2 ^d . Reefs. Loosed & dried all wet things and Cleaned thoroughly below.	
9 3 5					
10 3 4					
11 3					
12 3 2		"	55	Mod. & fair W ^r . with a Long Sea from the Southward. One Seal & much Rock Weed Seen – Many Porpoises. A few Albatrosses.	
90					
7503					
7593					

Merid Alt^d

O Center 48°:38'

X Long^d. to Day by

D.R. T.K.

0°:25'W 0°:35'W

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course Dis^t. Obs^d. DR DR T.K. L & T.K The column
S35°W 23 43°:44'S° 43:11S 62:10 58°:41'W 58°:30':29"W of
L & T.K. is
here corrected

[Page 118]

113.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. L Rem^s. Sund^y. 16th. March 1788 Observations

1	2	4	WSW	S°.		Mod. and fair W ^r .	
2	2	4				Saw two land Birds of the Hawk kind.	
3	1	4					At 5 ^h :33' Lat ^d . 43°:4'S
4	1	2	"	"	55½	Light Winds	Long ^d . T. K. - 58°:44':45"
5	1		SW	SSE			Long ^d . from Aldebran W of the D red ^d . same
6	1				75	Very fine Sand of greenish Colour	time Rams ^d . B - 58°:23':30"
7	1		SSW	SE			d° - C 58:10:45 Trought H 58:14:30
8	1		"	"	50¼	Fine Night out 1 st . Reefs.	Mean = 58:16:5 Regulus East of D
9	1						same time by Rams ^d . B - 58°:11':45"
10	1						Trough - H - 58:16:45 Mean = 58:12:22
11	"		Calm			Whale seen.	
12	1		SSW	NE	48½		
1	1	6					
2	1	6					

3 1 7

4 2 2 49 Cloudy W^r.

5 2 4 “ NebN Up M. T. G. Yard & set T. G^t.
Lower & Top Mast Steer^g
6 3 “ Sails.

7 3 4 NNE

8 4 2 51 “ Dark Cloudy W^r. Saw a Ship
in the WNW stand^g to the
9 5 6 North^d.

10 5 6 Mustered & saw every person
Clean.

11 5 2

12 4 “ “ “ 54¾ Dark Cloudy W^r. & a Mod.
Breezes. Rock Weed &
55 Whales seen but few birds.

7593

7648

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	DR	DR	T.K.	L & T.K
S53W	52	None	43°:34'S	63°:07'W		59:27

Lunar Observations since the 12th. March to the 16th. Opposite reduced to 5^h:33' by applying the difference of Longitude by the Time Keeper.

[Page 119]

114.

Time When 1788	Longd. by T. Keeper	Longd. by Observs.	Correc. to be appl'd to reduce them to 3h 58' opposite	True Longd. by Observation at 5h.33' of the 16th	Longitude turned into Time	T. Keeper fast for Mean Time Greenwich
----------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------	--	---	-------------------------------------	---

March 13 th	57.33.9	57.24.15W	1.11.36	50.35.51W		
---------------------------	---------	-----------	---------	-----------	--	--

		57.22.30		58.34.06
		57.35.15		50.46.51
	57.48.45	57.48.15	0.56.00	58.44.15
		57.51.30		50.47.30
		58.0.45		58.56.45
15	58.4.7.	57.52.45	0.40.38	58.33.23
		58.09.30		58.50.08
		58.13.11		58.53.38
16	58.44.45	58.23.30		58.23.30
		58.14.30		58.14.30
		58.10.15		58.10.15
		58.11.45		58.11.45
		58.16.45		58.16.45

Mean Longd. at 5h. 33' of the 16 March – 58.34.14 = 3.54.16.56)

Longd. by Time Keeper at the same time – 58.44.45 = 3.54.59) 0'42"4"
42.4

Longd. by Observation – 10.31 Eⁿ of Time Keeper

Longd. by Observation on the

17th Novr. Less than T. Keeper – 16.25 Eⁿ.

5.54 in Longd. East which the Time Keeper
has lost in 28 days and its Rate by this is loosing on Mean time Pr. 24 hours
5m.57 equal to 0.1 tenth of a Second nearly & I now consider it fast for Mean
time at Greenwich the 15th Noon 0'.42".4".

[Page 120]

115.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. L Rem^s. Mond^y. 17th. March 1788

1 6 SSW NNE Very Cloudy W^r. with Rain & a Mod. Breeze.

2 5 6 All steer^s Sails set.

3 5 6 “ 53 Mod. & Cloudy.

5 6 4

6 6 4

7 7 NEbE

8 7 4		52	Fresh Breezes & Cloudy
9 6 6	NE		
10 6 2	NNE		
11 5 6			
12 5		52	Less Wind
1 4 2			
2 3 4			
3 4			
4 4 4	“	52¾	Mod. and thick Foggy W ^r .
5 5 2			
6 4 6			
7 4 4			
8 5		53½	
9 5	“	“	“ 62 Hove to and sounded 62 fm ^s . Soft ouzey bottom of greenish sand and mud as usual.
10 4 4	North		Made Sail again
11 4 6	NNW		In Larb ^d . Steering Sails
12 5	“	NWbW 59	62 Thick foggy W ^r . Soundings as before All Steerg Sails set on the Starb ^d . Side. Smooth Water. No Birds or Fish seen.
130			
7648			
7778			

		Latitude		Longitude		
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	DR	DR	T.K.	L & T.K
SW¼S	130	None.	45°:10'S	65:10		61:57

[Page 121]

116.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. L Rem^s. Tuesday 18th. March 1788 Observations

1 5 SSW NNW Mod. Breezes and very Foggy.

2 5 4

3 5 4 NW “ “ In M.T. M^t. Steering Sail

4 5 2 “ “ 60 Saw a Seal

5 6 WbN

6 5 2 S°. WSW “ 60 fm^s. sound^{gs} as usual ooze
bottom. The Fog like small Rain

7 4 3 West

8 3 4 “ 56 “ Light Breezes and Clear W^r.

9 3 6 SSW WNW

10 4 WbN

11 4

12 4 3 55 “ Fine Moonlight Night &
Smooth water.

1 4 2 SbW WbS

2 3 4 S°. WSW

3 4

4 3 “ 55

5 1 Light Winds & fair W^r.

6 1 “ “ “ 60 fm^s. Soundings as before

7 1 SSW NWbN

8 1 57 “ Set Steering Sails on both sides At 19^h:55'

9 1 5	NNE		Lat ^d . 46°:06' Long ^d . T. K. 61°:57'W
10 1 6		Very Fine W ^r . Got all Bedding & Cloaths up	Varia p ^r . Azths. A Compss – 19°:27'E
11 2	N°.	& cleaned Ship fore & aft. Off all Hatches & gave a free circulation of air.	d°. turned - - 18:14 B Compss – 18:30 d°. turned - - 18:30 Mean = 18:40
12 4	NNW	64¾	Very fine W ^r . and smooth water - All Steering Sails set. Several Seals & a large Tree seen, but few Birds, much Rock Weed.
84 7778 7862			

Merid Alt^d
O Center 44°:17'

X Long^d. since 15th. By
D.R. T.K.
4°:7'W 3°:27'W

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	DR DR T.K. L & T.K Cape Blanco
S34°W	76	46:13S	46:17S 65°:10'W 62°:08'W 61°:57'W S66°W
			39 leagues.

[Page 122]
117.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. L Rem^s. Wednesd^y. 19th. March 1788 Observations

1 4 6	SSW	NNW	Very pleasant clear W ^r .
2 3 2		Varia	Exercised Small Arms
3 2	SSE	SW	
1 4			At 4 ^h :12'
1	SSW	Varia	66¼ Lat ^d . 46°:06'S Long ^d . T. K. 62:16¾W Varia p ^r . Azths.
5 2 2		NNW	

6	2	2	“	“	“	“	A great Fog Bank in the SW.	A Compss - 18°:08'E d°. turned - 18:52
7	3	6	“	“	“	“		B Compss - 17:40 d°. turned - 19:8
8	5	2		NW	58½		Mod and very thick Fog wetting as much as Rain.	Mean = 18:27E
9	6						In T.G. Steer ^g Sails	
10	7							
11	6		“	NNW	“	63	Hove to and Sounded bottom as usual ooze. Made Sail & set Fore T. M ^t . Steer ^g Sail – and at Midnight steered a true south Course for the Night & Lead going every half hour, being nearly in the lat ^d . Cape Blanco.	
12	5	2	S°.	“	54¼			
1	5	6	SSE					
2	4	2						
3	6	4						
4	7	2			55½			
5	7		“		“	“	Fresh Gales & fair W ^r . Steered in for the Coast again.	
6	7	5	SSW	NW				
7	8	4						At 20 ^h Lat ^d . 47°:35'S
8	8	6			58		Very fresh Gale & hazy.	Long ^d . T. K. = 62°:59'W
9	8	4					Whales, Albatrosses & Rock Weed seen and Sheerwaters, & Mother Careys Chicken	Varia p ^r . Azths. A Compss – 19°:52'E d°. Turned -18:48
10	8	6		NWbW				B Compss – 20:12 d°. Turned - 19:48
11	8	4						Mean = 19:40E
12	8	4			61		D° W ^r . under All sails & the Fore T. M ^t . Steer ^g Sail.	
139								
7862								
8001								

Merid Alt^d

X Long^d. this Day by

O Center 42°:07'

D.R.
1°:43'W

T.K.
1°:20'W

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	DR	DR	T.K.	L & T.K
S32°W	125	47:59S	48°:10'S	67:48W	63°:28'W	63°:17'W

[Page 123]

118.

Remarks

I had already, if convenient, determined to make the Land about Port Desire but as that was only a secondary consideration with me when in competition with a fair Wind, I was very little disappointed by the prodigious thick Fog that made it absolutely necessary for steering a safe course for the Night, however I resumed my former course in the Morning fully expecting a chance of seeing the land by Noon in which I was disappointed, altho we saw what was supposed to be the looming of it; but this I would not have understood as certain, as that would in some degree fix the situation of it supposing we could see only 8 or 10 leag. which I believe was the greatest distance we could see any land of a Moderate height. Allowing this as one may please, I considered from my long^d. (w^{ch}. I do not suppose is on[e] half a degree wrong, if any thing at all out) that Port Desire bore N77°W Dis^t. 17 leagues and its situation to be 64°:30'W.

I relied more on my soundings than any thing & therefore as an information to the watch I ordered the lead to be kept going every half hour. The quality of the Soundings ever since we first struck ground [h]as been the same, a greenish kind of fine Sand and Mud, and scarce any of it can be brought up by the lead.

[Page 124]

119.

[Blank page]

[Page 125]

120.

[Blank page]

[Page 126]

121.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. Rem^s. Thursd^y. March 20th. 1788 Observations

1 8 4 SSW NWbN Fresh Gales & fair W^r. but hazy.

2 8 6

3 8 4 Bent the Main Stay Sail

4 8

At 5^h:19'
Lat^d. 48°:30'S
Long^d. T. K.
64:6W

5 8

6 8 “ “ 59

7 8 “ In Fore T. Mast Steering Sail

8 8 “ 56 A Strong Gale in 1st. & 2^d. Reefs

9 8

10 8

11 8

12 8 2 “ “ 56

1 8

2 8

3 8

4 8 “ NW 56 More Moderate

5 6 4

6 7 2 NWbN Out Reefs & set the Fore T. Mast
Steering Sail.

7 7 2

8 6 6 “ “ 55 Fresh Gale & Hazy W^r.

[Page 128]

123.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. Rem^s. Friday March 21st. 1788 Observations

1	5	2	SSE	N ^o .		Squally W ^r .
2	5	6		NW WbN		In 2 ^d . Reef M. & 3 rd . Reef Fore TS & down M.T.G. Yard.
3	7					
4	8				53¼	Violent Squalls and a very Loud Gale that gave us scarce time to bring the Ship too under the Miz Stay Sail.
5	6					
6	1		SEbE	SWbS		
7	1		SEbS	SW		
8	1				48	No Ground at 50 fm ^s .
9	1	2	“	“	“	The Sea running so very high I was obliged to set the M. Top S ^l . close reefed to prevent accident from heavy weather Rolls, and the Ship laid too much better.
10	1	2	SSW	WNW		
11	1	4				
12	1	4			47	
1	1	4	S ^o .	W	“	More Moderate Set the Fore Sail.
2	2		“	“	“	Set the Fore TS close Reefed & Main Sail.
3	2	1				
4	2		SbW	WbS	47¼	More Moderate. Set the close reefd Miz. Top S ^l .
5	2		SSW	W ^t .		
6	2	2				out 4 th . & 3 ^d . Reefs.

7 3 4

8 5 49 Fresh Gale & fair W^r.

9 4 6 “ “ “ out 2^d. Reef M. TS unbent the old Main S^l. and bent a New One. At 20^h:19' Lat^d. 51°:9'S Long^d. T. K. = 65°:56'W

10 4 4 “ “ “ Very Squally in 3rd. Reefs.

11 4 2

12 3 SebS SWbS 51 Light Winds & Cloudy but got a good observation. Saw a Whale an Ice Bird & some Albatrosses. 77 The Course in lying too is the medium of her coming to & falling off, & I allow one Mile more drift than the Log gives. 8183 8260

Merid Alt^d
O Center 37°:54'

X Long^d. this Day by
D.R. T.K.
0:46E 0°:03'W

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
S40°E	77	51°:23'S	51°:35'S
			D.R.
			T.K.
			L & T.K.
			68:53W 65°:57'W 65:46W

[Page 129]
124.

Remarks.

The Gale of this day came on very quick before us so that we had scarce time to secure our Sails. The Wind also was very violent and the Sea in the course of a few hours became breaking and very troublesome to us – We had now began to look out for our Equinoctial Gale and being all prepared for it, we cared little about it: however the short continuance was very agreeable, but as I expected a Repetition, it induced me to keep in with the Coast of Patagonia, and at Noon as I feared, the wind came more to the Southward. I suppose C. Virgin Mary to bear S50°W dis^t. 33 leag^s. and the NW of the Falklands Isl^{ds}. E8°S dis^t 43 leag^s.

[Page 130]

124. [125.]

H K F Courses Winds Ther. Rem^s. Saturday 22 March 1788 Observations

1 3 4 SbE WSW Fresh Breezes and Squally.

2 3 2

3 3 4 “ “ Handed Fore & Miz. Top Sails

4 3 “ “ 50½ A Very fresh Gale close reefed
the main Top Sail.

5 4 4 SbE½E

At 4^h:5'

Lat^d. 51°:36'S

6 4 2 “ “ “ A Strong Gale and a hard clear
Sky.

Long^d. T. K. =

65°:46'W

7 6 SSE SWbW

At 4^h:8')

) 65:46.

8 6 6 “ 47

Long^d. T. K)

9 4 S°. WbS “ The Sea rising very fast.

10 4

11 4 SbE WSW

12 4 2 43½ A very heavy Sea.

1 4 6 SSE SWbW

2 4 5

3 4 6

4 5 SSE½E 43¼

5 5 4

6 5 5

7 5 4 Wind increasing & Sea running
very high – Reefed the Main S^l.

8 4 43 & Set it.

9 2 4 “ The Gale Moderating out 4th. Reef
M. TopS^l.

10 2

11 2 “ “ “ Set close Reefed Fore Top S^l.

12 2 47½ Fresh Gale & clear W^r. A Seal and
different kinds of Albatrosses seen.

99

8260

8359

Merid Alt^d

O Center 35°:47'

X Long^d. this Day by

D.R. T.K.

1°:20'E 0:34E

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S29°E	120	53:08S	52:49	66:19W	65°:23'W	65°:12'W

[Page 131]

126.

Remarks

The Gale increased with much violence and continued so the whole night with an exceeding high Sea, however I was not put from under my courses & a close Reef'd Main Top Sail, which I was obliged to persevere in carrying, or heave the Ship too, which I did not think proper, as I determined if possible to get to the southward of Falklands Island.

The Air now became very sharp and some of my People began to feel rheumatic pains, but as they are at three watches and dry Berths to sleep in without much fatigue I hope that will not hang much about them.

At Noon the Gale took off and the Sea much down with clear W^r. & a cold Air. Cape S^t. John or East part of Staten Land bears from us S27°E dis^t. 110 Miles. I therefore determined to make South course if possible, to fall in wth. the land of Terra del Fuego near Streights Le Maire.

to SW & a Saddle Hill SSE.

7 4 At 19^h:42'
Lat^d. 54:24W

8 4 ENE 43 “ Mod. & Clear W^r. The entrance Long^d. T. K.
of Streights le Maire S58°E 64:59W

9 6 6 EbN to S37°E & the Saddle Hill At 20^h:16'
S¼E The Northern^t. land in Long^d. T. K.

10 7 sight of Terra Del Fuego 64:54W
SW¼W off shore 7 or 9 Varia p^r. Azths.

11 7 EbN½N legues. A Compss - 21°:38'E
At 9^h. Cape Sⁿ. Diego d^o. turned - 21:15

12 7 SSW 47 “ True S^o. B Compss - 21:34
At ½ past 10 Cape S^t. d^o. turned - 21:04
Anthony True S^o. Mean = 21:23E

116 Squally W^r. in 3^d. Reefs – The
8359 land of Terra del Fuego From this Noon
8475 SWbS¼ W, it not extend^g one my Long^d by
pt. of the compass. Cape D.R. is corrected.
Anthony South – The
Westernmost of New Years
Isles SE¼ S 5 or 6 leag^s. &
the E^t. part of Staten land EbS.

Merid Alt^d
O Center 34°:04'

	Latitude	Longitude	True Long ^d . At Noon
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d . D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K			
S23°E 96 54°:28'S 54°:24'S 65°:51'W 64°:12'W .64°:02'W 64°:04'W			

[Page 133]
128.

Remarks

The Wind has been unsettled as to Strength; however notwithstanding the necessary precautions of shortening Sail, we made the most of it, as I fully expected & wished to make the land early as possible.

At 2 In the Morning with a fine Moon light, after having seen many Seals & our Dog & Goats apparently smelling of the land, a few Hills were discovered – I then bore up for the inclination of the Coast & waited for day light to do more.

The Land now showed itself very plain, the parts next us totally free of Snow, & the most Mountainous & inland parts only partially covered with it. Being sensible I was on the Terra del Fuego side I began to look out for Streights Le Maire. There appeared several remarkable high lands one of which I called the Saddle Hill & from this to the East I observed the land to trend away low & the extremity appeared as a Hillock. As I advanced towards it, I found in a moment it was near C. Sⁿ. Diego or West part of the entrance of Streights le Maire, & soon after the high Craggy Hills of Staten Land proved it to me. My situation was as desirable as any person could have wished, but the Wind coming to the Southward I could have no hopes of getting through Streights le Maire, it therefore remained no doubt with me how to proceed, & I pushed on to the Eastward to double Staten Land. We advanced with some progress, & having made New Years Isles it was my inclination to put into that harbour, but when I considered we were all in good health & condition I thought the service I was on merited from me greater exertions, & I determined not to loose time seeing the season temperate, and therefore laid aside all thoughts of refreshment untill I got to Otaheite. I am fortunate perhaps in seeing the Coast of ~~Patagonia~~ Terra del Fuego at a time when it is freeest of Snow; however I cannot help remarking that at this time it has not shewn itself with all the horrors mentioned by former Navigators – The Interiors parts were high & very peaked and the summits covered with Snow; but near the Shore & for a large extent of

[Page 134]

129.

the land appeared rather pleasant than otherwise, particularly towards Straits le Maire – there, was a considerable extent totally free of an European's Idea of a dreary & waste Country – it had a gradual de[c]livity towards the Sea & nothing seemed so inhospitable as it is represented – But Staten Land does at first bear a most dreary desolate appearance – the contrast is great with the opposite Shore being excessively mountainous, and untill we advanced towards it we thought all was covered with sand, when we were greatly surprised to find on the contrary, that the inclemency of the Climate only, reached to the upper parts of the Mountains. There is nothing particular about Straits le Maire more than its conspicuity – any person would attempt it who fell in with it – It is a fair open Space that would alarm no one, but on the contrary invite them through if they were bound that way – As to missing them if you can see the land, it is impossible, The Coast of Terra del Fuego here trends away low & Staten land opposite presents itself as a high mountainous Coast. Upon the whole if I can judge from appearances I really look upon the bad or Winter Weather not yet to be set in; but as I must expect it hourly I have no right to loose a moment of time & I am therefore determined at all events to go on and attempt to accomplish my passage. Towards Noon as I advanced to the Eastward & abreast of Cape

Anthony, the land of Terra del Fuego shows itself with a variety of high & low Land, and the high Hills that were first seen in the morning became the norther part of it that could be seen at this time, the whole not extending above one point of the Compass. I saw the appearance of Wood in several places.

[Page 135]

130.

The westernmost of New Years Isles were now first observed ~~being~~ They appeared as two high Rocks of very little extent – I did not sail within 5 or 6 leagues of the Shore as by that means I could make more way and less subject to the Squalls that came from the land.

At Noon on this day my Long^d. by account is corrected ~~the error~~ the error being 1°:47' to the west of my true situation; but it is to be observed that on the 19th. March in lat^d. 47°59'S it was near 4½° degrees to the West of my true place: however this error had begun near the line, for on the 14th. Feb^y. 11°:59'S it was nearly 2° degrees too far West & from hence I only consider the error to commence on the Coast of Brasil [Brazil] & all the way to the Southward to the present time. This when considered upon the whole is trifling, as the best Navigator can never prudently depend on longitude by account to within three degrees, and as this is all matter of chance, and no certainty of facts from any investigation, which however well examined would be at the best but very complex and no general knowledge be got from it; I shall just annex at sight the errors the Time Keeper seems to have proved on this Coast at the distance I have past it, and from whence conclusions may be drawn ~~how far~~ whether the Currents have effected us or not.

I made the Longitude by the Time Keeper of the different places according to its Portsmouth rate as follows, not by a presumed Rate from my Lunar Observations I consider their true situations to be 8':24" less. The Latitudes are good as already established.

The West part of the entrance of Streights le Maire - 64°:48'West

The East part of d° - d° - d° - 64:31

The East part of the East^t. of New Years Isle where Cap^t. Cook observed the lat. to be 55°:40'S - 63:52

Cape S^t. John or east part of Staten Land - 63°:27'

Cape S^t. John according to my observations is 8':24" = 63:18:36

[Page 136]

131.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. Rem^s. Mond^y. 24 March 1788 Observations

1	6	4	EbN	SW & S ^o .	Fair W ^r . with Snow Squalls	
2	6		East	“	“	At 2 the Eastermost of New Years
3	5	4		SW		Isles whereon Cap ^t . Cook observed
						the lat ^d . to be 55°:40'S bore True S ^o .
4	5		EbS	“	42½	dis ^t . ab ^t . 4 leag ^s .
5	2					At 4 ^h :57'
						Lat ^d . 54°:37'S
						Long ^d . T. K. =
						63:31W
6	1	“	“	“	“	The land ab ^t . C.S ^t . John SSE
						Dis ^t . 5 or 6 leag ^s . & New Years Isle
7	2		EbN	SSW	SW½S.	At 5 ^h :01
						Long ^d . T. K.
						63:31
8	2			“	41	
9	3					
10	2	5	East	“	“	
11	3		SEbE	NW.		
12	3		SSE	“	38½	Cape S ^t . John SWbW½W 5 leagues.
1	3		S ^o			
2	6		SbE	“		Fresh Breezes.
3	5		S ^o .			
4	5				40	Mod. & Cloudy The Extremes of
						Staten Isl ^d . from WNW to WSW.
5	4		SbW	WbN		
6	4	2		WbS		
7	4	1	S ^o .	WSW		At 20 ^h :22'

Years Isles are a safe and good Mark for it. The Harbour lies nearly SSE by Compss from the NE p^t. of the Eastermost Isl^d. where C. Cook landed.

As we past the Coast about 2 leag^s. to westward of Cape S^t. John I observed as Cap^t. Cook has taken notice, a seperation in the mountains as if Staten land was here divided into two Isld, but I can say nothing more of it. Towards the Cape the land is of less height & not so cragged as near New Years harbour but the Night coming on I could have no particular view of the Pitch of the Cape, & at day light I was glad to find myself too far off from it.

The Long^{ds}. of the different places as prefixed in the second Page back, are found as follows. The Long^d. by Time Keeper on Noon 23rd March is first found from the morning observ^s & those of the afternoon on the 24th. – the X of Long^d between which & the time of their being upon the Meridⁿ. being applied is the Long^d.

[Page 138]
133.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. Rem^s. Tuesday 25th. March 1788 Observations

1	2	4	SSE	S ^o .		Fresh Gales & very heavy Snow Squalls but clear at times.
2	2	4				
3	2					
4	2	4	SbE	SWbW	46	D ^o & Cloudy W ^r . The Sky appearing At 3 ^h :37' very much streaked & appearance Lat ^d . 55 ^o :38'
5	3	2	S½E.	WSW		of Wind I therefore ordered all Long ^d . T. K. M.T.G M ^t . down & all top hamper. 62:43
6	3	3	SbW½W	W	44	
7	3					out 3 ^d . Reef M. TS.
8	2	4	SSW	“	43	out 2 Reef - d ^o - & 3 ^d . Reef Fore TS A Great head Sea, but Fair W ^r .
9	3		SW	WNW		
10	3					“ Out 2 ^d . Fore TS
11	5			NWbW	“	Out Reef M ⁿ . Course

12 5 SW 41½

1 5 6

2 5 3 NWbW

3 3 4 SWbS WbN In 2^d. Reef. Fore TS

4 3 3 SSW½W 42½

5 4 2

6 4 SWbS

7 3 4

8 3 4 “ “ 42¼ Mod. & Cloudy but a very high Sea from the SW At 20^h:32'
Lat^d. 56°:17'
9 1 4 Long^d. T. K.
64:17

10 2 4 SW WNW Cleaned & Dried fore & aft having
a dry Air & W^r. fair.

11 2

12 2 “ “ 47 Fine Clear W^r. but a continuance of
a heavy Sea from the SW – Under
Under all Sails & a Reefed Fore Sail

78
8570
8648

Albatrosses, Mother Careys Chickens
& a few Birds of the Petterel Tribe.

Merid Alt^d
O Center 31°:20'

X Long^d. this Day
D.R. T.K.
1°:15'W 1:39W

	Latitude		Longitude		Long ^d . from Cape S ^t . John	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S35°W	64	56°:23'	56:31	64°:04'	64°:27'W	64°:16'W 0°:57'West.

[Page 139]
134.

Remarks

Having now entered on our most difficult and grand part of our passage I took every precaution to render the Ship proof against the general attacks of bad weather.

I stood away close haul'd to the Southward and at Noon I considered myself totally out of the way of the Current round C. Horn.

The Following table shows ~~much~~ the quantity of the lat^d. & Longitude I have made every day more or less than what the Log gave me as explained on the 29th. Feb^y. last – the North S^o. E^t. & West being prefixed to it as was the direction of the Stream while I was on the Coast of South America.

Time When	Error in Lat ^d .	Error in Long ^d	Lat ^d . at Noon	Time When	Error in Lat.	Error in Long ^d .	Lat ^d at Noon
1788				1788			
February 14	0.6 S ^o .	0.1 E	11.59 S	March 9	0.36 S ^o	0.21 E	38.46 S
15	0.2	0.0	14.20	10)			40.14
16	0.4	0.5 W	16.40	11)	0.12	0.17	39.54
17	0.3	0.1	18.45	12	0.2	0.13	40.14
18	0.2 N	0.2 E	20.44	13	0.4	0.1 W	41.34
19	0.7 S ^o	0.11	22.33	14	0.12 N	0.23 E	42.44
20	0.1	0.3 W	23.51	15	0.8	0.10 W	43.03
21	0.2	0.1 E	24.58	16)			43.34
22	0.6	0.8	25.55	17)			45.10
23	0.11	0.10	27.25	18)	0.4	0.40 E	46.13
24	0.7	0.6	27.52	19	0.11	0.23	47.59
25	0.4 N	0.8	28.27	20	0.5	0.4	50.24
26	0.12	0.1	29.38	21	0.12	0.49 w	51.23
27	0.1 S ^o	0.2 W	30.56	22	0.19 S	0.46	53.8
28	0.2 N	0.6 E	31.06	23	0.8	0.9	54.28
29	0.5 S ^o	0.8	31.31	24	0.7 N	0.9 E	55.31
April 30	0.0	0.11 W	32.8	25	0.8	0.24 W	56.23
2	0.8	0.7 E	32.59	26	0.7	0.5 E	56.54
3	0.5 N	0.1	33.55	27	0.4	0.23	57.51
4	0.16	0.1	34.22	28	C. Horn Night 40 Leagues		
5	0.11 S	0.13	35.18				
6	0.1	0.11 W	34.59				
7	0.9	0.20	35.06				
8	0.18	0.4	36.50				

[Page 140]

135.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. Rem^s. Wednesd^y. 26th. March 1788 Observations

1	2	SbW	WbS	Fine W ^r . and Light Airs with a high Sea from the SW.	
2	1	5			
3	1	6			
4	2		“	49¼	
5	3	2	S½W	Out Reef of the Fore Sail	At 4 ^h :11'
6	3	5			Lat ^d . 56°:31'
7	3	4	S°. WSW		Long ^d . T. K. = 64°:32'
8	2	4	“	45	Mod. Breezes & fair W ^r . d°. Turned - 24:7
9	3	3	S½W	WbS	In 1 ^t . & 2 ^d . of the Top Sails B Compss - 25:21
10	3	5			so much head Sea. d°. Turned - 24:42
11	3	4			Mean = 24:28E
12	3	4		44	Foggy W ^r .
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		Calm H ^d . Round 42¼ Calm & wet Foggy W ^r .
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		
4			“		
5			“		
6			“		
7			“		
8			“		
1	2	6	SbE	SWbW	
1			SEbS	SWbS	
2			West	Varia.	Wore Ship
3			“		

9 “

64:33W

10 2 4 SW NW Cloudy W^r. served Mustard &
Vinegar & cleaned below. Saw
11 3 4 NWbW several Penguins Albatrosses &
Mother Careys Chicken.
12 4 3 SW½W 44

53 Fresh breezes with Fog at times
8648 but got a good Observation.
8701 Long^d. from C. S^t. John by
T.K. = 1°:19'West.

Merid Alt^d
O Center 30°:27'

X Long^d. this Day by
D.R. T.K.
0°:27'W 0°:22'W

Latitude

Rem^s. Noon

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	Cape Horn
S31°W	33	56°:54'	57°:01'S	64°:26'W'	64°:49'W	64°:38'W	N54°W
							32 leag ^s .

[Page 141]

136

H K F Courses Winds Ther. Rem^s. on Thursday 27 March 1788 Observations

1 4 2 SWbW NW Fresh breezes & thick Foggy W^r.
2 4 “ SW NWbW
3 5 “ SW½W
4 7 “ SWbW½W NW 45 Cloudy W^r. carrying all possible Sail
5 6 6 WSW NWbN
6 6 6 “ “ “ Wind and sea encreasing, blowing
a Strong Gale obliged to double
7 7 Reefs

8	5	6	“	“	44½	Very Squally with Rain & a heavy Sea, and at 9 it blew very hard – Handed the Top Sails & all Sails but the Main Sail & Fore S ^l . being determined to keep my westing if Possible.		
9	5	3	SWbW	NW				
10	4	4	SW	NWbW				
11	3	5	SSW	West				
12	3		SbW½W		45			
1	3		SbW	WbS				
2	3							
3	3							
4	3				44½	A continuance of the Gale & High Sea, with heavy Squalls of Wind & Rain.		
5	3							
6	3	2						
7	3	6	“	“	“	It moderating – set the M.T.S ^l . close Reefed.	At 20 ^h :16' Lat ^d . 57°:41'	
8	3	4	“	“	42½		Long ^d . T. K. 66:4	
9	3	4				Set the Close reefed F. T. Sail.	At 21 ^h :10' Lat ^d . 57:43	
10	4		S½W	WbS		Open Cloudy W ^r . with Squalls and a Strong Gale. It was with much difficulty I could make observ ^s for y ^e T.K. O & D in distance but cannot observe it.	Long ^d . T. K. = 65:56	
11	4	6	S°	WSW				
12	4		S½W	WbS	42½			
105						At Noon Strong Gale & carrying Courses & close Reefed TS to make the most of this foul Wind. The Sea exceedingly high – Some Albatrosses seen Long ^d . from C. S ^t . John by T.K. = 2°:26'W		
8701								
8806								

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	Cape Horn
S39°W	73	57°:51'S	57:55	65°:51'	65:56W	65:45W	N19°W
							dis ^t . 39 $\frac{2}{3}$ leag ^s .

[Page 142]

137.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. Rem^s. on Friday 28th. March 1788

1	3	2	S°.	WSW	Strong Gales & fair W ^r . with a high Sea from the SW.
---	---	---	-----	-----	---

2 3

3 3 4

4	3	4	SbE	“	48
---	---	---	-----	---	----

5 4

6	4				40
---	---	--	--	--	----

7	4	S°.	WbS		
---	---	-----	-----	--	--

8	3	6	S $\frac{1}{2}$ E	“	Squally.
---	---	---	-------------------	---	----------

9	3	6	SbE	WSW	
---	---	---	-----	-----	--

10	3	4	SSE	SWbW	“	Handed the Fore Top Sail the Ship falling too heavy into the Sea. Hauled the Main Sail up & kept on under 4 Reefs in the Main Top Sail & Fore Sail.
----	---	---	-----	------	---	---

11	3	4				
----	---	---	--	--	--	--

12	2			“	39 $\frac{1}{2}$
----	---	--	--	---	------------------

1	2	SbE	WSW	I determined to stand to the Southward as long as I could lay SEbS.
---	---	-----	-----	---

2 2

3	2	SSE	SWbW	
---	---	-----	------	--

4	2	2	“	“	39	W ^r . more moderate set the Main S ^l . & Fore Top S ^l . & out 4 th . Reefs.
---	---	---	---	---	----	---

5 2 3

6 2 SbE½E

7 1

8 1 S°. WbS 38 Light Winds and an exceeding high Sea from the SW. It beginning now to be cold & the weather damp I ordered the People to have wheat served every day, with Sugar & butter to enable them to have a comfortable hot breakfast, and bear fatigue.

10 2

11 2 4

12 3 4 “ “ 39¾ Very thick Rainy W^r. and a damp cold Air. The SW Sea still running very high, and as the Wind lessens runs higher – It would not be possible for a laboursome Ship to keep her masts. Some dark brown Albatrosses & Mother Careys Chickens seen. Under Single Reefs.

66
8806
8872

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K. Long ^d . Cape
S16°W	47	None	58°:36'	65°:26'W	..65°:31'W	65°:20'W S ^t . John 2°:01'W

[Page 143]
138.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. Rem^s. Saturd^y. 29th. March 1788

1 4 4 SW WSW Moderate Winds and thick Misty Weather but the Sea running very high from the SW.

2 4

3 3 4 SWbS WbN

4 2 6 “ 39½

5 3 6 SW½S WNW

6 4 SW

7 3 6 SWbW NWbW

8 3 4 38¾ Wind freshening – Double Reefed the Main
Top S^l. and close Reefed the Fore & handed
9 2 5 WbS NWbN Mizen TS.

10 3 4 “ “ “ Close reefed the main Top S^l.

11 4 2

12 5 2 West NNW 40 A Strong Gale & Rain with a heavy Sea.
and continued so with heavy Squalls all
1 4 2 WSW NW the remainder of these 24 hours.

2 3 6 Towards Noon I got some tolerable Altds
to determine my lat^d. but we had no longer the
3 3 2 SWbW NWbW benefit of the Sun.

4 3 SW WNW

5 3 2 We are obliged to be battened down fore and
aft the Sea frequently breaking over us,
6 3 however, we keep tolerably dry below.

7 3 2

8 3 2 41¾ I do not wonder at Lord Ansons acc^t. of the high
sea, for it exceeds any I have seen and to be
9 3 2 SSW. West. here in a laboursome Ship must be an
unhappy situation

10 3 6

11 3 5 SWbS WbN

12 3 4 SW½S WNW 44½

86

8872

8958

	Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K. Long ^d . from

S53°W 76 59°:22' 59:35 67°:24'W 67°:40'W 67:39W C. S^t. John
by T.K. = 4°:10'W

[Page 144]

139.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. Rem^s. Sunday March 30th. 1788 Observations

1	3	2	SWbS	WbN		Strong Gale with Squalls and Rain and a very high Sea. In Fore Top
2	3	2	SWbS	West		Sail
3	3	6	SWbS	WbN		
4	3	5	“	“	42	At 4 ^h :31' Lat ^d . 59°:35' Long ^d . 67°:48'W by T.K.
5	2	6	SSW½W			
6	2	4	“	“	40	Fair W ^r . Set Fore & Miz TS.
7	3	2	SWbS			
8	3		“	“	39	More mod ^t . 3 ^d . & 4 th . Reefs.
9	3	4	SW	WNW		
10	3	2	SWbW	NWbW		
11	3		WSW	NW		
12	3	4		“	39	
1	3	4	West	NNW		Squally with Sleet.
2	4					
3	4					
4	4		WbN	NbW	39½	Very severe Squalls & a hard Gale. Handed the Top Sails.
5	3	2	WSW	NW		
6	3	1				

7 3 SW WNW

8 3 4 SSW West 39 Strong Gale & Fair W^r.

9 3 “ “ “ More Mod^t. set the Top Sails and At 21^h:18'
cleaned & dried below. Lat^d. 59°:54'

10 2 6 SWbS WbN Long^d. T. K. =
69°:34'W

11 3 SW½S A few Blue Petterels about the Ship.

12 2 5 SWbW NWbW 41 Moderate Gale but a very high Sea.
Out 3rd. & 4th. Reefs.

78 The Longit^d. by the T.K. was taken
8958 with much difficulty the Sea being
9036 so high but as I took a great many
Sights I believe it pretty exact.

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.
S49°W 60 60°:01'S	60°:11'S	68:53	69°:40'W
			69°:29'W
			2°:34'West
			C. Horn
			6°:10' West C. S ^t . John

[Page 145]

140.

H K F Courses Winds Ther. Rem^s. Monday March 31st. 1788 Observations

1 2 4 SWbW NWbW Mod. Gale and cloudy W^r. with a high
Sea from the from the WNW.

2 2 6

3 2 6 Unbent the Main Top M^t. Stay S^l.
to repair.

4 2 4 “ “ 37¾ At 3^h:50'
Lat^d. 60°:8'S
5 2 3 SW½W Bent the M.T.M^t. Stay S^l. Long^d. T. K.
69:49W

6 2 3

7 2 4 WSW NW Squally & blowing Strong. Close

reefed the T. & M. TS & handed
8 2 SWbW¹/₂W “ 34³/₄ Miz. TS
9 2 SWbW NWbW
10 2
11 2 4
12 2 4 34³/₄ Mod. Gale & Cloudy clear Night
out 4th. Reef M. Top S^l. –
1 2 3 SWbW¹/₂ W NW
2 2 3
3 2 3
4 2 “ 33³/₄
5 1 2 WbS Varia. Out 3rd. Reefs.
6 2 West NNW Out 2^d. Reefs.
7 3 WbN NbW “ Fresh Gales with Sleet & Rain
In close Reefs.
8 3 5 WNW NNE^t. 35
9 6 6 The Sea from the WNW so very heavy,
that we can only dare to carry Close
10 6 6 Reef Top S^ls. & Courses.
11 6 6
12 6 “ “ 37¹/₄ Fresh Gale & sleet & Rain with a
very high confused Sea.
75 Long^d. from C. S^t. John by T.K. =
9036 8°:26'W
9111

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
West	58	None	60°:01'S
			70°:49'W
			71°:56'W
			71°:45'W
			Noon
			True lat ^d . at

corrected from
x 2^d. is - 59°:52'S

[Page 146]

141.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesday April 1st. 1788

1	4	WNW	NE ^t .	A Fresh Gale and thick Rain
2	4	3	“	ENE “ More Moderate out 3 & 2 Reef Main TS
3	3	5	“	East
4	3	4	“	ESE 38½
5	4	WbN	to	
6	4	“	South 35	As the Wind came round we began to have very
7	2	6		hard Snow Squall ^s and at this time it was as much
8	2	6		as we could do to bring the Ship under the Fore &
9	2	6	“	Main Stay Sail. It blew a Storm of Wind & the
10	2	4		36¾ Snow fell so heavy that it was scarce possible to
11	3	6	WbN½N SWbS	haul the Sails up & furl them from the weight &
12	4			Stifness. By eight O’Clock we set the Reefed
				Fore Sail & every Man received a Dram. I ordered
				two People from each Watch to attend to dry
				Cloaths for w ^{ch} . purpose a Fire is kept in all
				night. Towards Midnight it was moderate & clear
				W ^r . when we were able to set the Main Sail &
				37¾ Close Reefed Top Sails.
				As the Day advanced the Wind backed round to
1	2	6	NWbW SWbW	the Westward & NW & became thick & Rainy
2	2		NW WSW	and by 9 O’Clock increased to a Strong Gale
				which kept me me under a close Reefed Main
				TS & Courses.
3	2		NWbW WbS	
4	1	4	“	“ 37
5	3		NbE NWbW	

1 4 NNE NW

6

1 4 SWbW½W

7 3 WSW

8 4 West NNW 39½

9 4 WbN North

10 4 6 WNW NbE

11 4 5

12 4 6 “ “ 42 Strong Gale & a high Sea with thick Rainy W^r.
some Albatrosses & Petterals. I now consider
myself to be only 1°:17'E^t. of the West part of
Terra Del Fuego. The Islands of Direction at the
Entrance Streights Magellan bearg N7°W 113
leag^s Long^d. from C. S^t. John by T.K. = 9°:19'West

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
46°W	72	None	59°:11'S	72°:30'W	72:49W	72:38W
						True lat ^d . this day as corrected 58°:53'S

[Page 147]

142.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesday April 2^d. 1788.

1 3 6 WbN N° Strong Gale and a high Sea with Squalls and
Constant Rain.

2 3 2 West NbW

3 3 4 WSW NWbN This continued with some intermissions and the Wind
became variable untill Midnight, when it fixed in the
4 4 “ “ 42½ SW Quarter, and a most heavy Storm of Wind came
on with Hail & Sleet – At 6 in the Morning the Storm
5 4 exceeded any thing I had met with, and a Sea higher
than I had ever seen before. The Sea from the

6	4	4	WbS	NNW	41	frequent shifting of the Wind broke very high and by running in contrary directions became highly dangerous. I at first brought too under a Reef'd Mizzen w ^{ch} . I changed afterwards to a Main & Miz.
7	4					
8	4				40½	Stay Sail by which means the Ship acquired some head way & prevented the Sea from striking us under the Counter. We now made as good weather of it as a Ship could do & I ordered the Miz. Top S ^l . Yard to be got down on deck.
9	3	6	WSW	NW		My next busyness was to see after my People who had under gone some fatigue, & to take care that a proper fire was kept in & that no one kept on wet Cloaths. This being done & seeing them all comfortably dry – I ordered a large quantity of Portable soap to be boiled in their Pease which made a valuable & good dinner for them.
10	3	5	SW	WNW		
11	3	6	SSW	W		
12	3	6	SbW	WbS	39	
1	2	2	NW	WSW		
2	2	2				
3	2					
4	2				“ 35	
5	2	6				
6	2	7				
7	1		NW	SWbW		
8	1				35	
9	1	4				
10	1	4	NW½W			
11	1	2	NWbW	WSW		
12	1	2			42½	At Noon the Gale still continued, but had a few bright intervals w ^{ch} . enabled me to get an observation for the lat ^d . – Many Petterals, & Pintado Birds about the Ship.
	48					
91	92					
92	60					At 4 ^h :24' Lat ^d . 58°:53'S Long ^d . T.K. 73°:15'W

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N70°W	28	58°:43'S	59°:09'S	73°:20'W	73°:39'	73°:28'W
						C. S ^t . J
						10°:8'West

[Page 148]

143.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Remarks. Thursday April the 3rd. 1788

1	2	NbE	WNW	A Very hard Gale, with severe Squalls. Lying to under Main & Mizen Stay S ^l . – Sleet & Hail. At ½ past one I wore Ship & brought too again		
2	1	SWbW	NW			
3	2					
4	2	SWbS	WNW 40½	Put every thing in good order for the Night		
5	1 3	SSW	WbN			
6	1 2		“	40		
7	1	S°.	West			
8	1	S½W	WbN 38¾	Set the Main Top Sail the Ship falling heavy to windward. The Sea become so very high, & the weather side of it like a Wall.		
9	1	S°.	West			
10	1	“	Varia.	“	Wore Ship. Set the Reefed Fore Sail a prodigious head Sea.	
11	2	West	SbE			
12	1 6	“	SbW 34¼			
1	1 6	WbN	SSW			
2	1 6					
3	1 7					

4 1 7 “ “ 32

5 1 6 NWbW SW

6 1 6

7 1 6

8 1 6 “ 33 The Gale now very much encreased & the Squalls
of Sleet & Snow very cold and severe gusts of Wind
9 1 6 in them

10 1 6 Many beautiful Blue petterals & Pintado Birds about
the Wake of the Ship.

11 2 At 20^h:50' Lat^d. 58°:24'S°. Long^d. T.K. = 73°:23'W^t.

12 2 “ “ “ 35½ A Very Severe Gale & Snow Squalls and a
Mountainous Sea. I shall now continue to give my
40 People Portable Soup for Dinner & a hot breakfast
9260 of boiled Wheat & Sugar
9300

Merid Alt^d
O Center 25°:59'

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
N33°W	32	58°:16'S	58°:25'S
			D.R.
			T.K.
			L & T.K.
			West of C. S ^t .
			John
			9°:50'W

[Page 149]

144.

Remarks

The Gales we now begin to experience are very heavy & distressing. At Midnight I had hopes of a fair Wind, but an hour had scarce elaps'd before I found, what would have done very well in moderate W^r. & little Sea to have enabled me to have cleared the whole Coast of Patagonia, I could do no more wth. than make a course directly for the Land – however to the make the most of

it, I carried a Main Top S^l. with four Reefs in, & a Reefed Fore Sail; but this was but little other than lying to as before. I had now got nearly upon a Meridian with Cape Deseada and it is not a little distressing after the exertions we have made thus far to see ourselves loosing what we had got with some difficulty. All I have to do now is to nurse my People with care & attention, and like Seamen look forward to a New Moon for a change of Wind & weather.

Our Companions in this inhospitable Region are principally two beautifull kind of Birds the Small Blue Petteral & the Pintada.

The Snow does not lie on the Decks, but comes in large flakes & covers us for a while, and the Hail is very sharp & Severe. The Sea from the frequent shifting of the Wind is very irregular & breaking.

At Noon from Long^{ds}. I got of the T.K. in the Morn^g I suppose myself 9°:25'W^t. of Cape S^t. John & 0°:50' East of Cape Deseada. My D.R. makes me 9°:25'W^t. of C. S^t. John.

[Page 150]

145.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Friday April 4th. 1788

1 1 4 NWbW¹/₂W WSW A Very Severe Gale with Violent Squalls of Snow &

Hail and the Sea very high.

2 1 4 At 2 Wore Ship and handed the Fore Sail & brought to under the Main TS with four Reefs in and the Mizen Stay Sail.

4 1 4 36¹/₄

5 1 4 SSE SWbW

6 1 4 SEbS WSW

7 1 6

8 1 6 35

9 1 5

10 1 4 SE SWbS

11 1 5

12 1 5 SEbE SSW 37

1 1 4 “ SWbS

2 1 3 “ “ “ The Gale abating

3 1 4 SE^t.

4 1 4 36

5 1 4 SSE SWbW

6 1 4 SbE WSW

7 1 4 “ Set the Fore Sail, Reefed.

8 1 2 37¾ Dark Cloudy W^r. with Sleet.

9 1 6 SbW WbS Cleaned below & empl^d. servicing the Rigging in places where it is chafed.

10 1 6 SWbS WbN

11 1 6 SW WSW “ Set Reefed Main Sail.

12 2 SWbW NWbW 38½ Fresh Gale & Rainy W^r. under Reefed Courses & close Reefed Main Top Sail.
38 No obs.

9300

9338

			Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.		D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K. West C. S ^t .
N79°E	28	None	58°:11'S		71°:54'W	72°:27'W	72°:16'W John by T.K. = 8°:57'W

[Page 151]

146.

Remarks

Altho wearing is now become highly dangerous I could not but risk it at 2 O'Clock, as I found I encreased my northing too much on the Tack I was then on. We had no sooner accomplish'd this ~~than~~ but were obliged to lye to under the close Reefed Main Top S^l. & miz Stay S^l., and the Gale continued with great Violence untill 4 in in the Morning, and blew fresh the remainder of the day with cold Rain.

We cleaned & dried below towards Noon & the rest of the People were employed in servicing the Chafed parts of the Rigging.

[Page 152]

147.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Remarks Saturday April 5th. 1788.

1 3 SWbW NWbW Fresh Gale & Drizling Rain. Set the Fore Top Sail.

2 3 SSW W

3 3 2 S°. WSW Some Albatrosses Blue Petterals & Pintada Birds about the Wake of the Ship, where, by floating a line
4 3 5 “ “ 42 with hooks to it beyond where the bait was placed & giving a sudden pull when the Birds had hold of the
5 4 2 piece of Meat, three of the Pintada Birds were
6 4 4 caught hooked some in the feet & other in the body.

7 4 S½W

8 4 SbW WbS 42

9 3 5 “ “ “ Hand^d. the Fore Top S^l. – Squally W^r.

10 3 2

11 3 3

12 3 2

1 3 3 SSW W

2 3 2 SWbS WbN

3 2 4 SWbW NWbW

4 2 4 41¾

5 2 WSW NW

6 2 WbS NWbN “ More Mod. but dark cloudy W^r. with drizzling Rain at times. Set Fore S^l. and out 4th. Reefs.

7 3 2 West NNW

8 3 1 WbN½N N°. 41½ Too great a head Sea to carry the F. TS I was therefore obliged to take it in, altho Anxious to make the Most of the present Wind.

9 4

10 3 4 WNW Birds as usual.

11 3

12 3 4 WSW NW 42½ Blowing Strong with thick uncomfortable Weather
80 & Wind backing again. Close reefed the Main Top
9338 S^l. & am now under Reefed Courses, & it, as much
9418 as the Ship can bear. High sea from the West.

	Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . Noon	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N38°W	62	None	59°:00'S	73:07	73°:09'W	72°:58'W
						S. John by T.K. = 9°:39'W

[Page 153]

148.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sunday April 6th. 1788 Observations

1 4 2 SSW West Strong Gale & thick hazy W^r. with heavy Squalls
Close Reefed the Main Top S^l. and handed it
2 3 4 Albatrosses, Petterals & Pintada Birds about

3 3 2 SWbS WbN

4 3 “ “ 42¾

5 2 4 “ “ “ A little more Moderate. Set M. Top S^l.

6 2 5 SWbW NWbW

7 3 2 SW¹/₂W

8 3 3 SW WNW 42¹/₄ A Star Light Night out 4th. Reef Main
Top S^l. & Set Fore Top S^l.

9 3 2 SWbS WbN

10 3

11 3 “ “ “ Squally – hand^d. Fore Top S^l.

12 3 SSW West 39

1 2 SW¹/₂W

2 2 2

3 2 3 SWbS WbN Set Fore Top S^l.

4 2 3 38¹/₂

5 2 3 SWbW NWbW

6 2 4 WSW NW The W^r. more Moderate & clearing again
Out one Reef of each Top Sail.

7 3 2 At 21^h:3'
Lat^d. 59°:41'

8 3 4 39 Fresh Gale & a head Sea, but a dry Long^d. T. K. =
Air & Fair W^r. The Sun at intervals 74°:29'

9 3 towards Noon very bright. A few
Albatrosses & Blue Petterals seen.

10 3 4

11 4 At Noon Long^d.
by T.K. from C.

12 5 4 41¹/₄ Fresh Gale Fair W^r. with Squalls. This S^l. John
morning cleaned & dried below – 11°:20'West

75 Saw the People all clean & performed
9418 Divine Service. Under Reef Courses

9493 & Dble Reef Top Sails.

Merid Alt^d
O Center 23°:21'

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s . Noon
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d . D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K. Cape Desseado	S48°W 69 59:46S	59°:43'S 74:47W 74°:49'W 74°:39'W	N3°E135 Leag ^s .

[Page 154]
149.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Monday April 7th. 1788 Observations

1 4 5 SW	WNW	Fresh Gales and Open Cloudy W ^r . with frequent Squalls. In 3 rd . Reef Main Top Sail & close Reefed the Fore.
2 4	SW½S	
3 4		
4 4	SW	40¼
5 4 4	SWbS WbN	At 3 ^h :39' Lat ^d . 59°:58' Long ^d . T. K. = 75°:9'W
6 5	SSW W ^t .	
7 4 2	SWbS WbN	
8 4		37 Strong Breezes & a Clear Night out 4 th . Reef Fore Top Sail.
9 3 4	SSW West	
10 3 5	“ “	Heavy Squalls of Sleet & hail Close Reefed the Fore Top Sail
11 4	SbW WbS	
12 4		35
1 3 2	SSW W	
2 2 6	SWbS WbN	

3 2 4

4 2 4 37½

5 2 2 SSW West

6 2 4 “ “ “ Wore Ship.

7 3 NWbW SWbW

8 5 37 Fresh Gales and open Cloudy W^r. with smart Squalls of Hail & Snow

9 3 6 WNW SW At 21^h:36' Lat^d. 60°:24'

10 3 NWbW SWbW Out 3rd. Reefs & kept all hands Long^d. T. K. Employed attending the Sails w^{ch}. 76°:05'W

11 4 3 NW½W from frequent heavy Squalls were Varia p^r. Azths. obliged to be Clued up, but A Compss - 26°:53'E

12 3 6 NWsW “ 37 we must now make the most d^o. turned - 26:16 of this unfavourable Wind. B Compss - 27:27

88 d^o. turned - 28:00

9493 Fresh Gale & Fair W^r. between Mean 27:9E

9581 the Squalls & a high Sea from the West^d.

Under Reef Courses & Dble Reef TS

Long^d. from C. St. John by T.K. = 12°:39'W

Merid Alt^d

O Center 22°:30½'

	Latitude		Longitude				Rem ^s . Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	Cape Deseada
S54°W	47	60:14S	60:19S	76:04W	76°:09'W	75°:58'W	N9°E
							144 leagues

[Page 155]

150.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. April 8th. 1788 Observations

1 2 2 NW WSW Fresh Gales and frequent Squalls of Hail & Sleet. All hands attending the

2 2 Sails being obliged constantly to Clue [clew] up.

3 2

4 2 3 “ 37 At 3^h:39'
Lat^d. 60°:6'S
Long^d. T. K. =
76°:16'W

5 3 4 NWbW SWbW

6 3 6 “ “ The Weather moderating & a prospect
of a Fine Night.

7 2 4

8 1 6 WNW SW 35¼

9 2 NWbW SWbW “ Mod. fine Night Out 2nd. Reefs.

10 2 4 NW WSW

11 2 4

12 2 3 36¾ Light Winds & Fair W^r.

1 1 6

2 1 4

3 1 2 NNW West

4 1 2 “ “ 37¼ Light Winds and cloudy.

5 1 WSW NW

6 1 3 Out all Reefs.

7 1 4

8 1 6 WbS NWbN 38¾ Drizling Rain

9 2 West NNW Thick Fogg. Empl^d. in the Hold getting
Provisions to hand.

10 2 6

11 4

12 4 “ SW WNW 40 Mod Breezes and thick Foggy W^r.
but at Noon it cleared a little & I
got a tolerable observation.

53
9581
9634

Merid Alt^d
O Center 22°:45'

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s . Noon
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K
N34°W	45	59°:37'S	59°:42'S	76°:54'W	77°:03'W	76°:52'W
						Long ^d . made
						from C. S ^t .
						John by T.K. =
						13°:33'West

[Page 156
151.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesday April 9th. 1788

1 5 S° WSW Fresh breezes and thick Foggy W^r. and Wets much.
TK^d.

2 4 NNW West

3 4 NW WSW In 1st. Reef of the Top Sails. Saw a Penguin

4 5 39½

5 3 6 NW½N

6 3 4 NNW W “ TK^d.

7 2 6 SSW½W WbN

8 3 SW WNW 39 Small Rain.

9 3 6 WSW NW

10 3 4 WbS NWbN Wind freshening and a Dark wet Night. In 2nd. & 3rd.
Reef of the Top Sails.

11 4

12 4 West NNW 39¼

1 3 6

2 3 6 WbN NbW “ Strong Gales – Close Reefed and handed the Fore Top Sail.

3 4

4 3 4 W½N 41

5 3 4 WSW NW

6 3 6 SWbW½W D°. Gales with a high Sea & wet weather. Close Reefed the Main Top Sail.

7 3 SWbW NWbW

8 2 6 43

9 3 4 SW WNW

10 4 6 SSW W As I now consider myself in a fair way I determined to stand no longer to the Southward but to make my course as near to NW true as I can.

11 3 NNW “

12 2 4 NbW WbN 41¾ The Gale continues Strong and a high Sea with thick Rain & it as much as I can carry Reef Course & a Close Reef Main Top Sail.

53
9634
9722

Latitude			Longitude			Rem ^s .	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	Long ^d . from
N83°W	46	None	59°:31'S	78:24W	77°:09'W	76°:58'W	C. S ^t . John by T. K. = 13°:39'West

[Page 157]
152.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. April 10th. 1788 Observations

1 2 4 NbW WbN Strong gale & thick Cloudy W^r. which

				increased by 9 O’Clock to a very
2	2	4		Severe Gale of Wind, The Sea broke
				much over us and I was obliged to lye
3	3	NbW½W	W	to under the Reefed Main Sail –
				It continued with heavy Squalls of Sleet
4	3	“	“	40¾ & Rain untill 2 O’Clock when we were
				enabled to set close Reef Top Sails.
5	2	6 N½W	WbN	
6	3	2		
7	2	4 NbW		
8	2			40½
9	1	6		Towards 8 in the Morning it came
				moderate W ^r . with a fine sun shine
10	2	NNW	West	towards Noon. I now ordered all
				cloaths and bedding up, unbattened
11	1	2		all the hatchway & the deadlights
				out and had a thorough clean & dry
12	1	3 NWbN	WSW	39 between Decks. Dried what steering
				sails were on Deck & put them below.
1	1	2		
2	1	4		
3	2	NW	SWbW	
4	2	2	WSW	39 For the first time in this high lat ^d . we
				saw some Fish about the size of
5	2	NWbW	SWbW	Bonitos & appeared to be spotted.
				Many Albatrosses & Small Petterals
6	1	4 NNW	West	with some Pintada Birds about us.
7	1	2		
8	1			38½
				At 9 ^h :38'
				Lat ^d . 59°:10'S
9	1	NWbN	WbS	The Sea very high and confused
				w ^{ch} . we hoped foretold a change
10	1			of Wind but it freshen’d up again d°. 2 Set = 76°:8'W
				at Noon. Were now under dble Mean = 76:7W

11 2 Reef'd Fore & Whole Main Top
Sail with Reefed Courses.
12 4 4 NNW West 40½ Got a very good Observation &
altd^s. for the Longitude.

49
9722
9771

Merid Alt^d
O Center 22°:33'

		Latitude		Longitude		Long ^d . made from
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K. Cape S ^t . John by
N52°E	44	59°:04'S	59°:04'S	77°:15'W	76°:00'W	75°:49'W T.K.
						12°:30'West

[Page 158]
153.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Friday April 11th. 1788 Observations

1 4 2 NbW WbN Strong Breezes & open Cloudy W^r.

2 4

3 4 NWbN WbS Fresh Gales & Squally w^{ch}. put us
under Dble Reef Top Sails.

4 4 41½ At 3^h:18'
Lat^d. 58°:50'S
5 3 NNW½W Heavy Squalls obliged frequently Long^d. T. K. =
to Clew all up. In 3rd. Reefs. 75°:47'W

6 4 NNW West 40

7 3 4

8 3 4 NbW WbN 41 D°. W^r. obliged to be clewing all up
every half hour. Took the 4th. Reef
9 3 in the Fore Top Sail.

10 2 4 N WNW

11 2 NbE NWbN Wore Ship.

12 2 2 WbS NWbN 41½

1 2 3 “ “ “ Severe Squalls. Handed the Fore Top Sail

2 2

3 2 “ “ “ The Squalls so very violent Obligated to hand the Main Top Sail. Sleet & Hail.

4 2

41

5 2 SW WNW

6 2 “ “ “ Strong Gales & a heavy Sea from the WNW, but Squalls not so hard Set the Main Top Sail

7 2 5 SWbW NWbW

8 3 40½ More Mod. Set the Fore Top S^l.

9 2 4 “ “ “ Open Cloudy W^r.

At 21^h

10 3 SWbS WbN D^o. W^r. with squalls of Rain. Out 3^d. & 4th. Reef Main Top Sail.

Lat^d. 58°:42'S

Long^d. T. K. =

75°:42'W

11 3 2

12 3 SbW WbS 40¾ A Very Fresh Gale & a great Sea from the WNW. Under Reef Courses Dble Reef Main Top Sail & close reefed Fore Top Sail. Albatrosses of different kinds, Small Petterals & Pintado Birds about. Caught 1 Albatross & 2 Peterals wth. hook & line.

69
9771
9840

Merid Alt^d
O Center 22°:27'

	Latitude	Longitude	Long ^d . from C. S ^t . Jn. By T. K.
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.
N23°W	16	58°:49'S	58°:55'S 77°:26'W 75°:51'W 75°:40'W 12°:21'West

[Page 159]

154.

Remarks.

We have now but very little intermission from hard Gales with a constant high Sea and not the least Slant of Wind. it has been particularly hard upon us since the 29th. March. The Sea from the WNW is so great that upon a medium we scarce ever make less than 4 points lee way, and when we have an hour or two that we can lye tolerably up the Ship can scarce get a head against the Sea, plunging Fore castle under. I had hopes our New Moon would have brought us a favourable Wind, but it appears to be thoroughly fixed in the quarter it is in. To see ourselves loosing, what we have got with some difficulty makes me carry more Sail than I otherwise would do; but my Men & Officers bear the fatigue with chearfulness & health. We feel no extreme cold altho the Air very bleak and uncomfortable – nothing can be got dried but by the Fire w^{ch}. is kept well up, & I take care they wear no article of dress but what is perfectly dry – I have always people to attend to this particular, & it is from this I date, with some trifling comforts besides, their great share of health – To this time I have not had one Man or Officer that has had a cough – My Gunner has been laid up a few days with Rheumatick complaints but is now doing duty again.

We are generally battened down every where but the after hatchway to whence all hands have only access through our Mess Place.

I wore at Noon the Wind backing to the WSW.

[Page 160]

155.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturd^y. April 12th. 1788 Observations

1	2	4	NWbW	WbS	Fresh Gale & a Great Sea from the WNW with heavy Squalls. Obligated to keep all hands attending the Sails
2	2	2			
3	2		NNW	West	
4	2	6			40½ In 3 ^d . Reef Main Top Sail. Caught an Albatross with a hook & line by Jigging him as before described on the 5 th . Ins ^t .
5	2	6	NbW	WbN	
6	2	7			

7 2

8 2 2 NWbW SWbW 39¾ Strong Gales & Cloudy with some Rain.

9 1 6 NW WSW

10 2 2 NWbW SWbW

11 2 2 “ The Gale much encreased and the Sea Very high obliged to hand both the Top
12 2 2 39 Sails.

1 3

2 3 2

3 3 1

4 3 38

5 3

6 3 2 NW½W Saw a Mother Careys Chicken & 2 Seals.

7 2 6 NW WSW

8 2 4 39 A little more moderate Set the Main
Top S^l. close Reefed, and soon after
9 3 the Fore Top Sail.

At 9^h:19'
Lat^d. 57°:48'S
Long^d. T. K.
75°:41'W

10 3 4 Filled 5 Empty Butts with Salt water.

11 3 4 NNW West More Mod. out 3rd. Reef Main TS

1 6 40½ Wore Ship

12

1 4 SSW At Noon Fresh Gale & open Cloudy
W^r. Under Reef Courses Dble Reef
Main & Triple reefed Fore Top Sail
63 Albatrosses of different kinds,
9840 Petterals Port Egmont Hens &
9903 Pintada Birds ab^t.

Merid Alt^d
O Center 23°:10½'

	Latitude		Longitude		Long ^d . W. of Cape S ^t . John		
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	by T.K.
N30E	77	57:43S	57:59S	76:13W	75:34W	75°:23'W	12°:04'West

[Page 161]
156.

Remarks

Being these some Days past to the Westward of the Continent it became absolutely necessary to attend to my northing as well as westing & particularly as the Wind keeps in the direction it is in. I therefore determined to Stand to the Northward the weather being mild & foretelling a shift to that quarter.

The Ship feeling a little want of weight forward we began to fill Salt water & the Wind towards Noon backing to the Westward we wore Ship and the weather had the appearance of moderating.

The Sun showing itself at times enabled me to get some good observations for the Time Keeper & get a good observation at Noon for the Latitude but the Sea still keeps very high from the WNW.

We are obliged now to pump the Ship every hour, for from the constant Gales and high Sea nothing can stand it, and she now begins to be a little leaky.

I now ordered my Cabbin to be appropriated at nights to the use of those poor fellows who had wet Births by which means it not only gave more room between decks but rendered those happy who had not dry beds to Sleep in.

[Page 162]
157.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sunday April 13th. 1788

1	3	4	SW	WNW	Fresh Breezes and dark Gloomy W ^r . Out 2 ^d . Reef Main Top Sail.
2	3	3			

3 3 4 WSW NW

4 3 4 West NNW 41 D^o W^r. & Foggy. Out 3^d. Reef Fore Top Sail

5 4 WbS NWbN

6 4 WSW NW

7 3 4 WbS NWbN 43 Wind increasing and a bad looking Night
in 3rd. Reefs.

8 3 4

9 4 W¹/₂S NNW

10 5

11 5 “ “ “ Very Squally & a Rough Sea. Handed the Fore Top
Sail.

12 5 43

1 3 WbS NWbN Very Strong Gale & Rain Handed the Main Top Sail
and handed the Main Sail

2 2 4

3 2 2

4 2 “ 43¹/₂ Hard Gale and very severe Squalls wth. Rain & Sleet.

5 2

6 2

7 2 SW WNW “

8 3 SSW W 41 Very Severe Weather and a high breaking Sea
Handed the Fore Sail & brought to under the Reefed
Main Sail. Caught a Brown Albatross w^{ch}. I believe
to be the Same as called [indecipherable].

10 1 4

11 1 4 “ “ “ A little more Moderate Set the Reefed Fore Sail

12 2 1 SbW WbS 38 Strong Gale & thick Rainy W^r. with Squalls of Hail.

73 As much as we can carry Reef'd Courses Wore Ship.
 9903 Saw some Whales. The Sea high & Breaking
 9976 frequently over us. Some Birds about.

	Latitude		Longitude			Long ^d . made from Cape	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	S ^t . John by T.K.
S65°W	60	None	58:9S	77°:58'W	76:12W	76:01W	12°:42'West.

[Page 163]
 158.

Remarks

It was with much satisfaction we found the Wind moderate this Afternoon, and I made the most of it by carrying all the Sail the Ship would bear, particularly the first part of the Night when we laid so well up, but the Wind freshened and became so strong a Gale before midnight that it was as much as all hands could get the Sails in – our Deck was twice filled with the Sea but happily no damage of consequence happened to us. We carried a Reefed Fore Sail untill 8 in the Morning when I was obliged to furl it & bring to under the Main Sail Reefed; but towards Noon it moderating a little we got the Fore Sail set again, when finding I was only encreasing my Southing & easting; & the weather much colder, I wore Ship with hopes of the Wind coming from the Southward.

It is now three Weeks since we came Round Staten Land a time we have spent with much fatigue & almost constant bad Weather. I now begin to see that this is a most improper time to venture into those Seas and I really do not know a more faithful description of it than Lord Ansons, an account I have often doubted, supposing their internal maladies to have aggravated their distresses. Upon the whole I may be bold to Say that few Ships could have gone through it as we have done, but I cannot expect my Men & Officers to bear it much longer, or will the object of my Voyage allow me to persist in it.

My Gunner who has had charge of a Watch is now laid up & my Carpenters Mate & from the Violent Motion of the Ship the Cook fell & received a severe Bruise, & broke one of His Ribs, & one Man Dislocated his Shoulder.

[Page 164]
 159.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Monday April 14th. 1788 Observations

1	2	2	NW	WSW	Heavy Storm of Wind with very severe Squally Hail & Snow which obliged to furl the Courses & bring to under the Main Stay Sail.
2	2	2			
3	1		NW½W	SWbW	At 1 ^h :7'
					Lat ^d . by
4	1		NWbN	WSW	40 Saw several Whales Dble Altd ^s 58°:6'
5	1	4	NbW	W ^t	Ship several very heavy Seas that felled us fore & Aft. This induced me to Set the Reefed Main Sail.
6	1	4			
7	1	4	NWbN	WSW	
8	1	4			40 Much Lightning all round the Compass & heavy Squalls that obliged us to be frequently hauling the
9	1	4	NW	SWbW	the Main Sail up. Obligated to pump Ship every hour.
10	1	4	NW½W		Mean of 2 Sets of At 4 ^h :9' Lat ^d . 58°:00'S
					Observations Long ^d . T. K. 76°:18'W
11	1	4			
12	1	4			40 D° W ^r
1	1	4			
2	1	4			
3	1	4	NW.		
4	1	4			40 D° W ^r .
5	1	4	NWbN	WSW	
6	1	3			
7	1	3	NNW	WbS	“ The Gale moderating – Set the Fore Sail Reefed
8	1	6	NbW	W	42 Blowing very hard and a very high Sea the break of it flying very high over us.
9	1	4			

10 1 2 This being Banyan Day I give all hands a Dinner of
 Portable Soup & Krout, and is a most refreshing &
 11 1 3 valuable Meal.

12 1 6 43 Very Strong Gales & thick Rainy W^r. Under Reef
 Courses w^{ch}. often we are obliged to take in from
 heavy Squalls of Sleet & Hail.
 36 Albatrosses & Birds as usual about us.
 9976 I got a tolerable Noon Observation the Sun being out
 10012 for about 10 Minutes. Wore Ship.

Merid Alt^d
 O Center 22°:46'

	Latitude		Longitude			Rem ^s . Long ^d . from C. S ^t .	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	John by T.K. =
S55°E	71	57:25S	57:41S	76°:08'W	74°:54'W	74°:43'W	11°:24'W

[Page 165]
 160.

Remarks

The repeated Gales Seem now to become more Violent – The Squalls so excessively Severe, that I dare scarce Show any Canvass to it. The motion of the Ship is so very quick and falls so deep between the Seas that it is impossible to stand without manropes across the Decks. My Surgeon from a heavy lurch was thrown down & dislocated his Shoulder, but happily it was soon put in again. The whole Night continued exceedingly tempestuous & I kept on the northern tack the Wind being West Southerly, and in the Morning I made sail again with the Fore Sail to keep my westing as much as possible, but the Sea is so very heavy from the West^d. it is not much better than lying to. At Noon we wore Ship again to the Southward with severe Squalls of Sleet & Hail. By Hooks & Line floating, my People jigged (as they called it) two Albatrosses. We have caught Several of the Brown, & of the White kind, between w^{ch} there appears no difference but in their Plumage, the Same as may be observed among the Gulls in England. They measured 6^F:8ⁱⁿ from tip to tip of the Wing. I have encouraged their eating those Birds, & by cramming them with ground corn like Turkeys they are as fat and not inferior to fine Geese. We have done the same with the Pintada w^{ch}. are as fine & about the size of a Pidgeon.

These some days past we have had many Port Egmont hens about, a very dark brown Birds with a Whitish Bill & size of a Crow.

The Dble Altd^s. & Long^d. by T. Keeper were got by a Mean of several observations w^{ch}. from their agreeing I believe to be exact.

[Page 166]

161.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. April 15th. 1788 Observations

1	2	SSW	West		Very Strong Gales and thick Rain
2	1	6	SbW	“	“ Severe Squalls of Sleet. Handed the Fore Sail & obliged to bring to Under the Reef Main Sail. Obligated to pump Ship every hour.
3	1	4	SSW	WbN	
4	1	4			42½
5	1	4			
6	1	4			
7	1	4	SWbW	NW	
8	1	4			42½ A Very Severe Gale with heavy Squalls of Sleet
9	2	SW½S	NWbW		
10	2				Hail & Snow Squalls.
11	2				
12	2				42
1	1	6	SWbS	WNW	
2	1	4	SbW	West	“ Wind suddenly shifted
3	1	4	SEbS	SWbW	“ It now blew a severe Storm of Wind – Got the Main Sail Handed & lay to under the Miz. Stay Sail
4	1	4			38 The Sea breaking very high over us.

5 1 5 SE½S WSW

6 2

7 2

8 2

37¼ D°W^r. with Intervals of a Clear Sky.

At 20^h:39'
Lat^d. 57°:45'
Long^d. T. K.
74°:15'W

9 2

10 2

11 2

12 2

37½ Laying to as before and a most
heavy storm of wind Hail & Snow.
Obliged to be lashed with a Rope
to get my observations, and is the
only way I can perform them in
general.

43
10012
10055

Merid Alt^d
O Center 22°:8'

	Latitude		Longitude		Long. W. of Cape S ^t . John by T.K.	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S60°E.	45	57°:42'S	57°:41'	74°:51'	74°:8'W.	73°:57' 10°:30'West

[Page 167]
162.

Remarks

Notwithstanding all my endeavours and keeping on the most advantageous tacks which with moderate weather would have done all we could have wished, yet the Gales are so violent there is no doing any thing. The Storm of this Day has been very severe, and we have done nothing but drift before the Wind, so that I am now but little farther advanced than on the 3rd. – Instead of being able to have an advantage of the NW wind which blew at Night, I was put past my Sails & could make nothing of it, & then it shifting suddenly to the SW made it still worse. From this quarter it blows so violently that unless I was 20 degrees to the

Westward of the Land nothing can be done with it, for having 2½ points variation to the eastward & the Sea acting particularly powerfull on the NW board, one makes no better than a course to the NE^t. It is a flattering tack to stand on, but a very deceiving one unless the Wind is free & you are far to the west of the Meridian of the Coast. I have been drove now inspight of all my endeavours from nearly the lat^d. of 61°S. & Long^d of 76°W. since the 7th Ins^t., but had the Winds been moderate I could have been round the Land. How far I may yet be able to accomplish it it is impossible to say. I have now every reason to find Men & Ship complaining, which will the soonest determine this point. At present we are obliged to pump Ship every hour.

[Page 168]

163.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. April 16th. 1788 Observations

1	1	5	SE	SW	A very Severe Storm of Wind & heavy Squalls of Hail & Snow. Lying to under Miz Stay S ^s .	
2	1	5			Obliged to pump Ship every hour.	
3	1	6				
4	2		SEbS	SWbW	38° The W ^r . moderating Set the Reefed Courses & Supplied the People with an additional quantity of Slops on account of the Severity of the weather.	
5	2	6	SE½E	SW		
6	3		SE	SWbS		At 3 ^h :17'
7	2	4				Lat ^d . 57°:44'S
						Long ^d . T. K. =
						73°:57'W
8	2	4			37	
9	2	4				
10	2	5				
11	2	4	“	“	“	Set close Reefed Main Top Sail
12	2	6			37	A Strong Gale but not so squally.
1	2	4				
2	2	2				

3 2 4

4 2 4 37¼

5 1 4 SbE WSW

6 1 2 S° WbS “ Fresh Gale & Cloudy with a high confused Sea out
4th. Reefs.

7 1 4 SW NWbW 37½

8 1 2 “ “ “ Drizling Rain, and the Sea much down. I took this
opportunity to get the 4 three pounders on the Qu^r.

9 3 6 WSW NWbN Deck down into the Hold, to ease the Ship. N14
A Jar of oil fetch'd way & broke to pieces.

10 4 2

11 4 4

12 4 4 38½ Fresh Gales & thick rainy W^r. Handed the Fore
Top Sail. Under close reefed Main Top Sail &
reefed Courses.

60

10055

10115

No Observation.

		Latitude		Longitude		Long. from Cape S ^t . John
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K. by T.K. =
S20°E	30	None	58:10	74°:32'W	73°:49'W.	73°:38'W 10°:19'W.

[Page 169]

164.

Remarks

The Storm of Wind began to moderate by 4 O'Clock this Afternoon when we carried Reefed Courses with some difficulty as I was anxious to stretch again to the Southward, and it kept still moderating to Daylight when we were able to make more Sail, and the Wind backed to the NW with Thick rain which enabled us to lye well up to the westward.

In the Fore Noon the Sea being tolerably down, we were empl^d. clea[r]ing the Fore hold to get our Guns down that the Ship may not be strained aloft by their Weight.

The observations of the Morning & this afternoon may readily be supposed could not be easily got, however as they were the mean of several, & the Forenoon & Afternoon agreeing when reduced to Noon, it is clear they must be very good – I therefore consider my Long^d. from Cape S^t. John to be very ~~good~~ exact allowing for what error may have crept into the T. Keeper since my departure from thence.

It gave the Long^d of that Cape 63°:30'W and from this is the Long^d from Cape S^t. John counted. Capt. Cook whose authority is the best for the extent of Terra del Fuego lies it down 10°:40' of Long^d. from C. S^t. John to Cape Deseada, consequently from this also my distance from the Meridian of that Cape (Deseada) is ~~easily~~ readily inferred. But I now suppose the T. K. to give nearly one Degree too far to the West, if the cold Weather makes it gain as it did before I left Portsmouth.

[Page 170]

165.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. April 17th. 1788 Observations

1 2 WSW NW Fresh Gales and thick foggy W^r. Handed the Fore
Top Sail. A very heavy Sea from the West^d.

2 3

3 3 2 SWbW NWbW

4 4 SSW½W WbN 42 D°. & Rain.

5 4 4 S½W WbS

6 4

7 3 4 SbW

8 3 4 41 A little more moderate Set the Fore Top Sail

9 4

10 4 6

11 4 4	“	“	“	Very Severe Squalls – handed the Top Sails
12 4 4		“	40	
1 4 4	“	“	“	A very severe Storm obliged to furl all Sails but the
2 4 4	S½W			Mizen Stay Sail & lye to. The Snow now falls very
				heavy
3 2 2	SSE	SWbW		
4 2			36¾	Lightening in the NW.
5 1 5				
6 1 5				
7 1 5				
8 1 5		“	36½	
				At 21 ^h :38'
				Lat ^d . 59°:5'S
9 1 5	SbE	WSW		Long ^d . T. K. =
				73°:55'W
10 1 5				
11 1	“	“	“	“
				The Wind not so violent – I bore away for the Cape
				of Good Hope.
12 7	“	ENE	SWbW	36
				A very heavy Gale of Wind under Close Reef Main
				Top Sail & Reefed Fore Sail. High Sea.
				All hands happy at my bearing away.
				Snow falling heavy & severe Gusts of Wind.
74				
10115				
10189				

Merid Alt^d
O Center 20°:02'

		Latitude		Longitude		Long ^d . from
						C. S ^t . John
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K. by T.K.
S12°E.	56	59:05S	58°:57'S	74°:11'W	73°:40'W.	73°:29'W 10°:10'W.

[Page 171]

166.

Remarks

The Weather of this Day began to make all hands feel it, and seeing the Wind so fixed At 11 O'Clock in the forenoon I determined on bearing way for the Cape of Good Hope. The general Joy in the Ship was very great on this account.

[Page 172]

167.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Friday April 18th. 1788 Observations

1 8 ENE SWbW A Very hard Gale of Wind with severe Squalls of
Snow & Hail.

2 8

3

4 NEbE

4 8 34½

5 7 4

6 7 2

7 6 6

8 6 6 34½

9 6

10 6 “ “ “ The Wind suddenly shifting, made me doubt about
standing on to the Eastward I therefore brought to
on the larboured Tack under a Close Reefed Main
Top Sail

12 1 3 WSW SbE 35

1 1 3 WbS S°.

2 1 4

3 1 4

4 1 4 West SbW 34½ Blowing very hard with Snow & Hail

5 1 4

6 1 4

7 1 2 W½N “ “ The Gale moderating made Sail

8 6 34 Mod. breezes & thick Snow. Employed cleaning
6 WbN SWbS & drying below

9 1 4 West SSW At 21^h:37'
Lat^d. 58°:34'S
10 1 6 Long^d. T. K. =
71°:15½'W

11 1 6 NW WSW

12 1 6 35 Light Winds & thick Snow. A very Confused Sea.
94 Wore Ship. Besides the Gunner I have now two
10189 Men laid up for the first time with Colds.
10283 Under Dble Reefed FS & Courses

Merid Alt^d
O Center 20°:17'

	Latitude	Longitude	Long ^d . from C. S ^t . John
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
N63°E.	77	58°:30'S	58°:30'S
			71°:58'W
			71°:15'W.
			71:11
			7°:41'W.

[Page 173]

168.

Remarks

At 10 O'Clock this night the Wind shifted suddenly to the South and blew very hard, and the Clouds came from the SE^t. which gave us hopes of the Wind coming from that quarter. The Gale rather encreased and I therefore laid to under

a Close Reefed Main Top Sail the Sea being so very high that it becalmed the Lower Sails.

In the Morning the Sea became exceedingly confused & but little wind every thing seem'd to ~~show~~ foretell a Shift. ~~of Wind~~. The Snow fell thick and the Air very Cold.

We could make no more Sail at Noon altho moderate weather, for the motion of the Ship is too much to bear the Top Sails hoisted up, without tearing every thing to pieces. My Gunner & two Men are now confined with heavy colds & Rheumatick complaints.

I now began to give my Men & Officers a Pint of the Decoction of Ground Malt once a day & Shall continue it while in bad Weather & until I see a likelihood of fresh Supplies. Proportion four to one.

The Thermometer is kept in a Safe on the Top of the Capstan w^{ch}. I find makes a difference of 2 Degrees to what it is when exposed to the open Air this may be always allowed for as the height is taken in that place. As I have only one on board & having had one broke already by exposing it, I dare not trust this one out in the way of the Ropes.

[Page 174]

169.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturd^y. April 19th. 1788 Observations

1 1 S^o WSW Light Winds and Snow & Sleet. Out 2^d. Reefs.

2 1 6

3 2 6 SWbS WbN

4 3 6 37½ Fresh Gales and thick Rainy W^r. In 2^d. & 3^d Reefs.

5 3 5 SbW WbS

6 3 4

7 2 4 SSW West “ Close Reefed & Handed the Top Sails

8 2 4 38¼ Very hard Gales & severe Squalls of Hail & Snow w^{ch}. brought us under the Reef Main Sail

9 1 4 WbN

10 1 4

11 1 4

12 1 4 39½ Lying to with a High Sea & very Severe Squalls of Snow.

1 1 3

2 1 2

3 1 2 S½W W^t.

4 1 2 37¾

5 1 3 SbW

6 1 2

7 1 4

8 1 3 35½

9 1 4 SSW WbN This forenoon we had intervals of bright Sun Shine & our only duty was drying & cleaning below

10 1 4 At 21^h:46'

11 1 3 Lat^d. 59°:00'

Long^d. T. K. = 71°:9'W

12 1 4 36 Very Hard Gale & a high Sea with Squalls of Snow every half hour. Obligated still to lye to under Reefed Main Sail & sometimes obliged to take it in, in some of the Squalls.
43
10283
10326 Birds as usual about.

Merid Alt^d
O Center 19°:17'

	Latitude		Longitude		Long ^d . from	
						C. S ^t . John
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K. by T.K.

N32°E. 37 59:01S 59:01S 71°:20'W 71°:01'W. 70°:50'W 7°:31'W.

[Page 175]

170.

Remarks

The appearance of a fair Wind has now entirely left us, it seems fixed in the West as much as ever it has been yet, but as I have now waited so long I am determined to wait the event of a Full Moon on Sunday next, altho some of my people have begun to feel the bad effects of the Weather, five being now in the Sick List for the Rheumatism. however a fair wind will soon carry off these complaints.

The Gale ~~is~~ was very heavy and the weather cold with little or no intermissions of Snow Showers Untill Noon, when the Sun shining very bright it cheered the Spirits of all hands. To give the Men a fresh Meal to morrow I ordered a Hog to be killed, out of a half dozen I have remaining. We had great abundance of Poultry Sheep & Hogs but the Weather for this month past has been so severe that we have now scarce any left.

[Page 176]

171.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sund^y. April 20th. 1788 Observations

1	1	3	SSW½W	WNW	Strong Gale with Hail Snow. Lying to under a Reefed Main Sail the Sea Very high
2	1	3			
3	1	4			
4	1	4	SbW½W	35¾	At 3 ^h :36' Lat ^d . 59°:06'S Long ^d . T. K. = 70°:57'W
5	1	2			
6	1	1			
7	1	2	“	“	“ More Moderate Set the Fore Sail.
8	1	7	SSW	West	36 Set the Main Top Sail.
9	2	2	SbW		

10 2 3 SSW “ Very Squally clewed up & Set the Main Top Sail
occasionally.

11 2 2 SWbS

12 2 “ “ 36 D^oW^r.

1 2

2 2 “ “ “ Very hard Squalls. Up Main Sail & in Main Top Sail.

3 1 4 SW

4 2 SWbW “ 35 Squalls less frequent Set the Main Sail & Main Top
Sail.

5 2 WSW

6 1 7 “ “ “ Set the Fore Top Sail.

7 1 7 “ “ “ Mod. W^r. with Snow Out all but 1st. Reefs

8 “ 34
Calm Ships head all round the Compass .

9 “

10 6 NWbW “ Light Winds & dark gloomy W^r. Sky full of Snow.

11 1 6 NW

12 2 6 NW½W 35 Fresh Gales & Squally with some intervals of Sun
Shine between the Snow Squalls.
Employed Cleaning below & mustered all hands in
dry & Clean Cloaths.
Under Dble Reef Main. Triple Reefed Fore Top S^l. &
Reefed Courses. A high Sea from the Deck.
Many Birds about.

Merid Alt^d
O Center 18°:56'

Latitude

Longitude

Long^d. from
C. S^t. John

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	by T.K.
S7°W.	9	59:09	59°:23'	71°:27'W	71°:01'W.	70°:50'W	7°:31'West

[Page 177]

172.

Remarks

The Moderate W^r. and calm in the latter part of this Day gave me further hopes of accomplishing my passage round the Land. It is a ~~Severe~~ Dear Point to give up and a matter I cannot easily ~~give-up~~ reconcile, but it is impossible to act against the severity of this tempestuous Climate. It is with much con[c]ern I see my sick list increased to Six, One of which is a fractured Rib, & the five, severe Rheumatick complaints which totally incapacitates them from Duty.

I this Day gave all hands a good and valuable fresh Meal from a Hog I ordered to be killed, & as I have before mentioned gave them all, (including Officers), a pint of Sweet wort to drink. This drink I see issued myself & make every one take their allowance.

[Page 178]

173.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Mond ^y .	April 21 st .	1788	Observations
---	---	---	---------	-------	------	--------------------	---------------------	--------------------------	------	--------------

1	3	NbW	WbN	Fresh Gales and severe Squalls with Snow & Hail						
---	---	-----	-----	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

2	3									
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

3	3	2	N½W	Handed the Fore Top Sail						
---	---	---	-----	--------------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--

4	3	4	N°.	WNW	36	Hard Squalls. Took in Set the Main Top Sail occasionally.				
---	---	---	-----	-----	----	---	--	--	--	--

5	3	4	N½E	Caught an Albatross with Hook & line						
---	---	---	-----	--------------------------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--

6	1	3	SSW	West	Wore Ship Hard Squalls & very thick Snow					
---	---	---	-----	------	--	--	--	--	--	--

7	2	SW	WNW							
---	---	----	-----	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

8	2	2	SWbS	WbN	35½					
---	---	---	------	-----	-----	--	--	--	--	--

9	2	SSE	SW							
---	---	-----	----	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

10 2 3 SEbS SWbS Wore Ship.

11 2 4 NWbW SWbW

12 3 NW WSW 35

1 3

2 2 6

3 3 NWbN WbS

4 2 3 33 Strong Gales & Snow handed the Main TS
A Very high Sea from the Westward.

5 2

6 1 7

7 2 2 A little more Moderate – Set the Main Top S^l.

8 2 1 34³/₄ Fresh Gale & open Cloudy W^r. Set the Fore Top
Sail. Caught two Pintada Birds.

9 2 2 NbW WbN

10 2 2 N WNW

At 21^h:25'
Lat^d. 58°:33'S
Long^d. T. K. =
70:15

1 1 NbE NWbW Wore Ship

11

1 2 SWbW

12 2 2 35 A Very Fresh Gale. Under Reefed Courses Triple
Reefed Main Top Sail & Close Reefed Fore Top S^l.
60 Having bright intervals of the Sun. Got all the
10365 bedding on Deck & examined it & gave every Man
10425 & Officer a Clean Hammock.
Filled 3 Butts of Water.

Merid Alt^d
Error 19°:14'

	Latitude		Longitude			Rem ^s .
						Long ^d . from C.
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K. S. John by T.K.

N32°E 45 58:31S 58:42S 70°:51'W 70°:18'W. 70:7 6°:48'W

[Page 179]

174.

Remarks

Our lying on the most advantageous tacks this Day was of no benefit to us, I carried all the Sail possible but to no effect – to add to our disagreeable situation, The Surgeon reported to me two additional Sick Men, so that our number of Invalids were now increased to eight w^{ch}. is much felt in the Watches, the Ropes being now work'd with much difficulty from the Wet & Snow – notwithstanding this I had still hopes if we could keep our health up, to gain our point with the least favourable Wind.

The Morning came on with a dry Air, & the Sun appearing at times I ordered all bedding on deck & mustered every one & gave each a Clean & dry Hammock, for altho' it has been my constant endeavours to keep dry below, yet from the heaving Seas & the Ship straining, a great deal of Wet comes through the Seams & makes the Situation of the People now become hazardous with respect to Colds.

I continue a pint of the Decoction of ground Malt to each Man & Officer every Day – and a hot breakfast of boiled Wheat, with Portable Soup & Sour Krout in their Pease.

The Albatross caught this Day measured 7 feet from Tip to Tip of the Wing.

Many Albatrosses, Pintada Birds, Port Egmont hens & Small blue Petterels about the Ship.

This is the Second Day of after the full of the Moon & but little prospect of success from its influence.

Monday being Banyan day I give all hands a rich mess of Portable Soup & Sour Krout boiled in it for their Dinners. Cape Horn at Noon bears N30°E 58 leagues.

[Page 180]

175.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesday April 22^d. 1788 Observations

1 3 WSW NW Fresh gales with Squalls of Snow and Cold W^r.

2 3 WbS NWbN

3 3 West NNW

4 2 6 SW WNW 36 Very Severe Squalls of Snow handed the Fore Top Sail.

5 2 6 SSW West At 5 the Wind back^g. to the Westward I bore away it being needless to persist any longer.

6 6 NEbN WNW

7 6

8 6 35 D^o Gales with heavy Hail & Snow & a very High Sea from the West.

9 6 2 WbN

10 6 2 West

11 6 “ “ “ Out 3rd. Reef of the Main Top Sail.

12 6 35 D^o W^r.

1 7

2 7 WSW

3 6 5

4 5 4 35 D^o W^r.

5 6

6 7

7 7

At 21^h:23'
Lat^d. 57°:50'S
Long^d. T. K. =
67:24W

8 6 6 36 D^o W^r.

9 7 This forenoon employed as usual in making Fires to Air & dry the Ship.

10 7 Served wort to All hands as before.

11 6 6

12 6 2 WbS 37 Strong Gales & Snow under Dble Reefed M.T.S^l.
 & Courses Reefed as much as we can Carry the
 137 Sea running very high from the west^d.
 10425 In the Squalls the Ship goes 8 & 9 Knots & in the lulls
 10562 only 5, but I believe a wrong judgment is given of her
 distance.

Merid Alt^d
 O Center 19°:46'

		Latitude		Longitude		Long ^d . from C. S ^t . John by T.K.
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N60°E	105	57°:39'S	57°:34'S	67°:34'W	66:43W	66:32W 3°:13'W ^t .

[Page 181]
 176.

Remarks

It was with much concern I saw it improper and even unjustifiable in me to persist any longer in a passage this way to the Society Islands – Towards the Evening the Wind & heavy falls of Snow became so violent that I must have laid to, and the Wind backing to the Westward became so fixed with a high Sea Running, led me to determine to bear away for the Cape of Good Hope from the following considerations.

First the surest way to accomplish the Grand Object of the Voyage.

That the Season has commenced when most certainly ~~are~~ Strong Gales are frequent and lasting, and that from a continuance of them should I at last fail of getting round the Land; such a loss of time would be attended with much risk, & probably very detrimental to my proceedings in future.

That my people being but few hands, and by suffering more fatigue may suddenly be taken Ill, & thereby the Grand object of the Voyage be greatly endangered, for notwithstanding their astonishing good health at present (except eight who are laid up with Rheumatic complaints & one with a broken Rib;) yet, it requiring all our force to complete the necessary Duties in those heavy Gales, they are become jaded and symptoms of disease may follow.

That the Ship altho' equal (of her size) to any in the World which if she had not been ~~we~~ I could not have persevered as I have done, begins also to complain

[Page 182]

177.

and is obliged to be carefully attended with the Pumps.

That from the present ~~time~~ Month I may get to Otaheite and be ready for leaving it in good time, & be Secure of being in Endeavor Streights and at Java in a proper season; but if by persevering in this passage (which I am convinced cannot be accomplished during the time I ~~stay~~ could remain here longer) I should meet with further delays by accidents, I should be highly reprehensible under the discretionary orders I am honoured & intrusted with to perform the Voyage.

That I see no Ill that can be attended with the present conduct of my pursuit, the proper time for my passing the most intricate part of the Voyage being fully g[u]arded against, and as it is universally allowed by all Navigators, that the Westerly Winds are the prevailing ones in this Sea, we have every reason to expect a quick Passage to the Cape of Good Hope where every Man will get proper refreshment & have his health perfectly established.

That upon the whole being sum'd up one amounts the matter to a certainty, and the other to a doubt, and my honor & Character being at Stake which to take. I rely on my conduct for the former, being the only one eligible however it may prove successfull.

I ordered the Helm to be put a weather to the universal joy of all hands at 5 O'Clock, and as the Gale continued it was an additional satisfaction to

[Page 183]

178.

think we had no longer lost any time.

The Forenoon was taken up with making Fires in different parts of the Ship & Cleaning among the People and by Noon they were all tolerably dry and comfortable with chearful Spirits that they were no longer to remain off Cape Horn.

This is the 30th. Day of my being in this tempestuous sea, having passed Cape S^t. John on the 24th. March. In 16 Days, (that is,) on the 9th. April at Noon I was in

Long^d 76°:58' West, or count^g. my Long^d from Cape S^t. John by Time Keeper which most likely is not a half degree wrong, too far to the West, I was nearly 13°:39' West of the Cape & had every hope of accomplishing the passage Round; but from this time we had no intermissions from hard Gales & very severe weather, scarce ever having it in my power to do much better than lye to - The Sails & Ropes were worked with much difficulty & the few Men who were obliged to be aloft felt the Snow Squalls so severe as to render them almost incapable of getting below, & some of them sometimes for a while lost their Speech; but I took care to Nurse them when off duty with every comfort in my power. The Invalids I made attend & dry their Cloaths and keep a good fire in every Night, so that no Man when he took his watch had a wet Rag about him – They were at three Watches, & when lying to I would only suffer two men on deck at a time. I gave them all additional Slop Cloaths, and I made their meal pleasant & wholesome as may be observed in the different days occurrences. As I kept far to the Southward no Current seems to have materially affected us.

[Page 184]
179.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. April 23rd. 1788 Observations

1	8	NEbN	WbS	Very Strong Gales with severe Squalls & Snow and Weather Cold. Under Triple Reefs
2	7	6		
3	7	5		
4	7	6	“	36¼
5	8			Very heavy Squalls of Snow. Close Reefed the Top Sails
6	8			At 2 ^h :52'
				Lat ^d . 57°:26'
7	7	2		Long ^d . T. K. = 65°:57'
8	7		WSW	36
9	6	6		
10	7	“	“	“ The Gale more Mod ^t . & a Clear Night – Out 4 th . Reef of the Main Top Sail
11	7			

12 6 5 35

1 6

2 6 SW

3 5 NNE “ Out 3rd. Reef Main Top Sail

4 3 WNW 35

5 3 6 NebE Varia.

6 4 3

7 4 4 NE NNW Dark cloudy W^r. & small Rain came on Suddenly

8 4 4 NEbE SbW 36

9 4 2 EbN NbE

2 2 East NNE. “ TK^d.

10

2 2 NW½W “ Strong gales & thick W^r. which brought us under our Courses Reefed.

11 3 6

12 3 “ NW 39° At Noon D^o W^r. Hands employed attending Fires below & cleaning & drying. Served Wort as before to all hands a pint.

139

10562

10701

		Latitude	Longitude			Long ^d . from C. S ^t . John by T.K.	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	
N65°E	121	None	56°:47'S	64°:08'W	63°:6'W	62°:55'W	0°:24'E

[Page 185]

180.

Remarks

To enable me to keep my People as healthy as possible I have not only appropriated my Cabbin to as many as could hang their Hammocks in it, but I also have all the others bedding brought into it every day while I cannot get them upon Deck ~~from~~ in the bad weather, by this means I have the Tween decks clear & can be properly aired by Fires as well as the Cabbin. It is to be remembered that all hands are at three watches which with the nec[e]ssary comforts I can give them, such as always a hot breakfast of Wheat with Sugar, Portable Soup in their Pease, and a pint to each Man of sweet wort a Day with their allowance of Spirits, very fine old Rum, besides keeping them dry as possible & clean, is all that can be done. I have omitted to mention that they have as much Sourkrout, Mustard & Vinegar as they can use.

Among the Eight Invalids are My Gunner & one of the Mates both of which I am in want of, but See no hopes of their being of any Service during this bad weather & while in this Severe Climate.

[Page 186]
181.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursday April 24th. 1788 Observat.

1 3 WNW North Strong Gales and Cloudy with Rain at times. At 1
Wore Ship, & Set close reefed Main Top Sail.

2 3 NEbE NbW

3 2 6 NE. NNW

4 2 6 “ “ 42³/₄ More Mod. Set close Reefed Fore Top Sail & out
4th. & 3^d. Reef of the Main Top S^l.

5 2 6 NEbE NbW

6 3 4 NE NNW

7 3 6 NEbN NWbN

8 4 “ 44 Fresh Gale & Cloudy W^r. Close reefed the Mⁿ.
Top Sail

9 4 2

10 4 2

11 4 NNE^t. NW

12 4 45½ Squally. Handed Fore Top Sail

1 4 6

2 6 2 WNW

3 6 4 WbN

4 6 5 WbS 44 Strong Gales & Squalls with a confused Sea.

5 6

6 7 WSW. “ Very hard Gale with very severe Squalls & Rain.
handed the Main Top S^l. & Main Sail

7 7

8 7 “ “ 38½ Strong gales & Cloudy W^r. with bright intervals
Set close Main Top Sail. Hauled the Fore up to
prevent the Ship smoking.

10 7

At 21^h:34'

Lat^d. 56°:01'S

11 6 6

Long^d. T. K. =
61:00W

12 6 2 “ “ 39½ D^o W^r. Under close Reefed M. Top Sail & Reefed
Fore Sail The Sea breaking frequently over us.
Served Mustard & Vinegar to the People, & Sweet
wort.

115
10701
10816

Merid Alt^d
O Center 20°:55'

	Latitude	Longitude	Long ^d . from C. S ^t . John by T.K.
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
N56°E	99	55°:51'S	55°:53'S
			61°:38'W
			60°:21'W
			60°:10'W
			3°:09'E

[Page 187
182.

Remarks

The weather now indicates that I have but just got away in time, & my Invalids are rather worse than better. Towards the Morning the Gale became very Strong & a high breaking Sea which obligeth us to batten every Hatchway down, but what is particularly hard upon us is, that going large from the Wind we cannot but with the greatest difficulty get a fire to burn or any one bear the Smoke. There were four Men to Day that took in turn to get the Dinner boiled, which was done with the utmost pain and torture notwithstanding all our endeavours to prevent the Smoke – Three of my Petty Officers & two Men were s[e]ized with a Violent sickness & vomiting & severe head ach[e], and are obliged to keep below. So that I have eleven Men & Officers not able to do Duty, but I trust a weeks run to the northward will recover them. The Fore Sail is generally supposed to be the cause of a Ship's smoaking when going before the Wind, but I found it not to be the case, as I hauled it up without receiving any advantage – I regret I did not bring a small Cabouce to cook on Deck, as this would have been a great service to us.

[Page 188]

183.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem ^s . Friday April 25 th . 1788				Observations
1 6	NNE	WSW		Strong Gales & violent Squalls. In Main Top Sail & Fore Sail. High breaking Sea.
2 3				
3 4	“			Set the Fore Sail.
4 4 4			40	At 4 ^h :2'
5 4 3		West		Lat ^d . 55°:42'S
				Long ^d . T. K. = 59:44W
6 4				Lightning in the NW.
7 4				
8 3 6	“	“	36½	Very hard Gale & a high breaking Sea w ^{ch} . keeps us very wet.
9 5 4				
10 6				
11 6		WSW		

12 6 39½ Very heavy heavy Squalls

1 6 6

2 7 SW

3 7 2

4 6 7 39

5 6 4

6 6

7 6

8 6 2 39 D° Gales & open Cloudy W^r. Many Birds of the
9 7 Albatross & Petteral kind about & much Rock
Weed seen.

10 8

11 8 Cleaned & dried below & served a pint At 21^h:49'
of Sweet wort to all hands. Lat^d. 54°:31'S

12 8 “ 39¾ Strong Gales & a high breaking Long^d. T. K. =
Sea with Squalls of Hail. Under 57:35W
137 Dble Reefed M. Top Sail – Close Reefed
10816 Fore Top Sail & reefed Fore Sail.
10953

Merid Alt^d
O Center 22°:10'

	Latitude	Longitude	Long ^d . from C. S ^t . John by T.K.
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
NE	135	54:16S	54°:16'S 58°:51'W 57°:15'W 57°:04'W 6°:15'E ^t .

[Page 189]
184.

Remarks

The Gale of this Day was very severe, but the Weather being dry we felt it not so much as we otherwise should have done. In the Forenoon we had bright Intervals of Sun Shine, during which I ordered every person on Deck except a few who were employed cleaning below and drying. All the Hammocks were removed into the Cabbin where the Sky-light gave sufficient Air to them, & by this means by Noon the 'Tween Decks got well aired & cleaned. The Invalids also received benefit from the Air & at el[e]ven O'Clock all hands received a pint of strong decoction of Malt or rather infusion as it is made by pouring boiling water on the Malt fresh ground in the proportion of 4 Gall^s water to one of Malt. At Noon I had the pleasure to see them all chearful & well as could be expected except Rheumatic complaints.

We have no symptoms of Scurvey or any other disease, & having sufficient water to carry me to the Cape I ~~therefore~~ think it loosing time to Stop at Falklands Islands, where otherwise I would, (at Berkley Sound) but the most I could promise myself from such a plan would by no means make up for getting a fortnight latter at the Cape Hope, a Place I must now take as much time at as I can possibly Spare consistent with the good of the Voyage.

Beauchenes Island bore by T.K. at Noon N13°W distance 23 leagues.

[Page 190]

185.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturday April 26th. 1788 Observations

1 7 4 NNE SW Strong Gales and a high breaking Sea & open Cloudy W^r.

2 7 4

3 7 4

4 7 40

At 2^h:57'

Lat^d. 54°:02'S

5 7

Long^d. 56°:57'W

6 6 4

7 6 6

8 6 1 39½ Squally with Hail.

9 6

10 6 2

11 6 3

12 6 40½ Fresh Gales & fair W^r. Set the Main Sail.

1 5 2 WbN

2 4 4 WNW

3 5 2

4 6 41½ Fresh Gales & very hazy

5 7 2

6 7 6 Out 2^d. Reefs & Reefs of the Courses
At 21^h:39' Lat^d. 52°:28'S
7 7 2 Long^d. T. K. – 54°:30'W

8 7 6 West 42½ D^o W^r. with a Moderate Sea & the Sun out at times
9 8 2 times. Got all the Invalids, on Deck & cleaned
and dried below wth. Fires.

10 8

11 7 4 Served a Pint of Sweet wort to each Man.

12 7 4 WSW 44 Fresh Gale & very hazy W^r. Many Birds about us
all this Day – Sea Weed, & Whales wth. two blow
sholes at the back of the head.

163
10953
11116

Merid Alt^d
O Center 23°:52'

	Latitude	Longitude	Long ^d . from C. S ^t . John by T.K.
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.

NE 171 52°:13'S 52°:13'S 55°:30'W 54°:05'W 53°:54'W 9°:25'E^t.

[Page 191]

186.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sunday April 27th. 1788 Observations

1 7 6 NNE WbN Fresh Gale & hazy W^r. At 3^h:3' Lat^d. 52°:00'S
Long^d. T. K. = 53:38W

7 2 WbS

3 7 4

4 7 4 44 Saw an Ice Bird the same kind as mentioned on
the 20th. March. This Bird is certainly Web footed &
5 7 WSW therefore differs from the Snow Petteral at Staten
Land as described by Capt. Cook, but otherwise I
6 6 5 should have supposed it to have been the same; but I
7 7 only judged of its being web footed from seeing it
in the act of perching & I may be mistaken for it
has an appearance of a carrion Bird (altho White)
8 6 6 “ “ 42 as described.

9 5 4

10 6

11 6 4

12 7 “ “ 41½

1 6 4

2 6 3

3 6 2 Many Porpoises about the Ship

4 6 “ “ 41½ At 21^h:17' Lat^d. 50°:45'S
Long^d. by T. K. 51:50W

5 5 6

6 5 2 “ “ “ Fine W^r. Set Fore Top M^t. & lower Steering Sail
& out all Reefs.

7 5				Long ^d . O & D East at the Same time – by
8 5	“	“	42¾	Ramsd ⁿ . B = 51°:49'W d° - C = 51:40
9 5				Troughton H = 51:15 Mean = 51:35W
10 5				Varia at same time
11 5				
12 5	“	“	49¾	Fair W ^r . Mustered the People & saw them all clean & performed Divine Service. Served Sweet Wort as usual.
148				
11116				A Compss - 18°:40'E D°. turned – 17:42
11264				B Compss – 17:47 d°. Turned – 18:20

Latitude Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N44°E	143	50:34S	50°:25'S	52°:54'W	51°:31'W	51°:16'W

[Page 192]
187.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Monday April 28 th . 1788	Observations
1	5	6	NNE	WNW		Mod. Breezes & Fair W ^r .		
2	6	2						
3	6	4	“	NWbW		In lower Steer ^g Sail	At 3 ^h :33' Lat ^d . 50°:18'	
							Long ^d . T. K. - 51°:4W	
4	6	2		“	44½			
5	6	6	“	NW		In Top M ^t . Steering Sail. The Wind backing to the northward and W ^r . Cloudy.		
6	6	5						
7	6	6						
8	7	4	“	“	42½	In 1 st . Reefs. Fresh breezes & Fair W ^r .		

9 7

10 6 6

11 6 6 NWbW

12 6 6 “ 45³/₄ Fresh Gale & thick Hazy W^r. In 2^d. Reefs

1 7

2 7 WNW

3 7 6

4 7 6 “ 47

5 7 4

6 7 6 “ “ Small Rain

7 8

8 8 West 47 Fresh Gale & thick Rainy W^r. Pintada Birds
Sheerwaters & some Rock Weed Seen.

9 7 4

10 6 7 Cleaned aired below with Fires & served Sweet
Wort as usual, & Portable Soup & Krout for Dinner
11 6 6 being Banyan Day.

12 6 6 “ 47 D^o W^r. The Ship is now become very leaky in every
part above water w^{ch}. in this Weather keeps us very
damp below notwithstanding I have constant
fires.

169

11264

11433

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
NE	169	None	48°:39'S	49°:50'W	48°:27'W	48°:12'W

[Page 193]

188.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. April 29th. 1788

1 6 3 NNE WbS Fresh Gale & thick hazy W^r. with Rain at times.

2 6 4

3 6 5 NEbN

4 6 “ SWbW 47½ More Mod. out 2^d. Reefs.

5 4

6 3 6 SWbS “ Thick foggy W^r. and great Swell from the NW.

7 5 4

8 6 SW 44¼

9 5 6

10 5 4 SWbS

11 5

12 5 3 42¾ Mod. & Cloudy.

1 5

2 5

3 4 3

4 3 42

5 3 2

6 3 6 Out all Reefs and Set Fore & Fore top M^t. Steer^g
Sail

7 4 6

8 5 6 “ West 44¾ D^o W^r. Got Main T. G. Mast and end & T. Gall &

Miz. Top Sail Yard.

9 5

10 5

Employed drying below with Fires – Served
Sweet wort as usual.

11 5

12 5 4

WbN

49

Dark Cloudy W^r. and a Mod. breeze. My sick
People begin to recover fast.

121

11433

Lat^d. 47°:29'S

11554

Dble Altd^s

h ' " ° '

22:36:24 – 26:34

23:45:2 - 27:36 O Center.

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N56°E	118	47:29S	47°:23'S	47°:23'W		

[Page 194]

189.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesday 30th. April 1788 Observations

1 6

NE

WNW

Strong Breeze and Dark Cloudy W^r.

2 6 4

3 7 2

4 6 6

W

51

Bent and Set the Mizen Top Sail

5 6 7

WbS

6 6 7

“

“

“

Fresh Gale & drizzling Rain

7 7 4

8 7 6

52¼ D° W^r. In Steering Sails & 1st. Reefs.

9 7 WSW

10 2 6

11 6 4

12 6 6 51¼

1 6 4

2 6 6

3 6 6

4 7 51¼ At 22^h:9' Lat^d. 46°:20'
Long^d. T. K. = 43°:7'W

5 7 4 Close Reefed Miz. TS

6 9

7 8 “ SW “ Strong Gales with Rain. Handed Fore & Miz
Top Sl^s. & Main Sail – Got down Top Gall Yard
8 8 50½ & Triple Reefed the Main Top Sail.

9 8 2 Strong Gales & Fair W^r. Empl^d. Scrubbing
Hammocks. Opened a Cask of Pork No 565
10 8 2 Cont^s. 160 P^s. short three.

11 8 2 SWbS “ Served Sweet wort to all hands & dried below
with Fires.

12 8 2 “ “ 48 D^o Gales Open Cloudy W^r. Sheerwaters &
Pintada Birds about us and different coloured
Albatrosses

176

11554

11730 Merid Alt^d
O Center 28°:41'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N64°E	177	46°:13'	46°:14'S	43°:29'W	42°:46'W	42°:31'W

[Page 195]

190.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursday 1st. May 1788

1 8 NE SWbS Strong Gales & open Cloudy W^r.

2 8

3 8

4 8 SSW 45½ Very severe Squalls. In 3rd. Reef Main Top S^l.

5 9

6 9 “ “ “ Heavy Gusts of Wind & Sleet.

7 8 4

8 8 6 42¾ D^o W^r. Ship obliged to be carefully attended with
the Helm & kept before the Sea it runs so high, by
9 8 which means She is frequently to the northward of
her Course. This will prevent me making the Isle
10 7 6 Grand as laid down in Lat^d. 45°:00'S° 35°:40'W
which I fully intended to do, at least to have
11 8 looked for it.

12 7 6 43¼

1 7

2 7

3 7

4 7 4 43¾

5 7 4

6 7 2

7 7

8 7 “ SW 44 More Moderate but a high Sea and dark Cloudy W^r.
 W^r. Continue to scrub Hammocks untill all is
 9 6 6 clean and dried. I have allways two Sets by
 10 7 6 which means the People can be generally Shifted
 twice every fortnight or three Weeks.
 11 7 4 Served Sweet Wort & dried wth. fires as before.
 12 7 SWbS 44½ Mod. Gale & Long Swell from the SSW with dark
 gloomy W^r. , but got a tolerable Obser. Birds as
 185 Yesterday, but no signs of vicinity of Land. Under
 11730 all Sail & Fore Top M^t. Stud^g S^l. — being now 12
 11915 leag^s. to the North of I. Grand I give up all
 intentions of looking for it.
 Merid Alt^d
 O Center 29°:59'

	Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K. Isle Grand
N55°E	186	44°:26'S	44°:46'S	39°:56'W		S77°E dis ^t . 50 leag

[Page 196]

191.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Friday 2^d. May 1788

1 4 4 NEbE SW Fresh Gales and & Cloudy W^r which Soon Moderated
 and the Wind became Variable & Squally with Rain
 2 4 4 “ “ “
 3 4 WSW
 4 3 2 44
 5 2 NW
 6 2 “ 43¾ In 1st. Reefs
 7 1 Varia

8 2 NE 43¾ Fresh Gale Close Reefed the Top Sails – Rainy W^r.

9 3 4 NNW

10 4 “ “ “

11 4 NbW NEbE

12 4 2 N ENE 44¼

1 3 4 NbE E Hard Squalls & Rain. Handed Fore Top Sail

2 3 2 NNE EbS Lightning in the NW & NE.

3 3 3 NEbN EbS

4 3 4 NE ESE 43 Strong Gales & Rain

5 3 4 NEbE SEbE

6 4 4 ENE SE

7 4 4

8 4 6 SEbS 44½ Mod^t. out Reefs & made more Sail, but still dark gloomy W^r. with squalls & Rain.

9 3 4 SSE

1 5 Our principal duty drying C[l]oaths & cleaning & airing below with Fires.

10 1 5 NEbE

11 4 Served Sweet Wort as usual.

12 4 6 ENE S°. 44½ Fresh breezes & unsettled W^r. with Rain at times & much Sea from the Southward.

84 Large Flocks of the small Blue petteral & some brown Albatrosses about us. One Whale Seen.

11915

11999

Merid Alt^d
O Center 30°:41'

		Latitude		Longitude			
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	
N49°E	73	43°:38'S	43°:45'S	30°:39'W			

[Page 197]
192.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturd^y 3 May 1788 Observations

1	4	ENE	SbW		Fresh Breezes & open Cloudy W ^r . Employed making Spun yarn.
2	6		SSW		
3	6				
4	7			45	Fresh Gales & Squally with Rain.
5	6	4			
6	6	4			“ In 1 st . Reefs. Yards Trimmed to an ENE Course w ^{ch} . is the reason when the vary from it.
7	6	4	NEbE	S ^o .	“
8	7	ENE	SbW	43½	
9	7	4			
10	7	4			
11	7	4			
12	7	4		43	
1	7	4			
2	7	2			
3	7	6			
4	8			42¾	

5 8 4 At 20^h:53' Lat^d. 42°:50'S
Long^d. T. K. = 35°:37'W

6 8 5 NebE Hard Squalls

7 8 2 ENE

8 8 4 42¼ Fresh Gales & fair W^r. out Reefs & Set F. T. M^t.
Steering Sail. Could get no Observations for the
9 8 2 Variatⁿ.

Got all bedding & cloaths up of every kind to air
10 8 & cleaned well below & dryd with Fires.
Served Sweet wort a pint a Man as usual.

11 8

12 8 40½ Squalls of Hail & Snow. Much Sea from Southward
- Many flocks of Blue Petterals with some brown
Albatrosses & Pintada Birds about us.

176
11999
22175

Merid Alt^d
O Center 58°:37'

	Latitude	Longitude	Allowed
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d . D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K. 1¼ P ^t . Varia ⁿ . E ^t .			
ENE¼ E 176 42°:39'S 42°:39'S 34°:42'W 35°:5'W 34°:50'W 1 P ^t . for the			Sea & bearing up

[Page 198]
193.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sunday 4 May 1788 Observations

1 1 ENE SbW Fresh Gales & Squally with Hail & Snow with
some intervals of Sun Shine but could make no
2 7 6 observations with any certainty. Saw some Rock
Weed.

3 7 4

4 7 SSW 43½ At 3^h:47' Lat^d. 42°:34'

Long^d. T. K. = 34°:38'W

5 7 3

6 7

7 6 6

SWbS

Shortned Sail to Single Reefs. A sudden opposition of different Winds took place & caused a kind of Whirlwind, it laid us aback for a minute when the former Wind prevailed & we met with no accident.

8 6 6

SW 43½

9 6 6

10 6 2 NEbE

SbE

11 7 ENE.

SW

“ Variable Winds with Hard Squalls & Hail. Lightning to the Northw^d. Obliged frequently to keep before the Squalls.

12 7 4

43¼

1 7

“

“

“

Corpo-Sant. Some electrical Vapour seen about the Iron at the Yard Arms about the Size of the blaze of a Candle.

2 7 4

“

“

“

3 6

4 5

NEbE

41

Top Sails on the Cap. In 2^d. & 3^d. Reefs

5 8 4 NE

S^o.

“

A Hard Gale with repeated severe Squalls of Hail & Sleet. Obliged to keep before it frequently the reason of the Course being altered.

6 8 4

7 8 4

8 8 4

43½ D^o W^r. Aired below with Fires – Mustered the Ships company. Saw them clean –

9 8 4 ENE

Served a pint of Sweetwort to all hands and performed Divine Service

10 8 6

11 8

12 8 6 NEbE

44

D^o Gales – Under Close Reef M. TS and Fore Sail – The Sea High & breaking frequently over us. The Sun appeared about Noon & got a good Observation

178

12175

12353

Allowed
1 – P^t. East Variaⁿ
1¼ P^t. to leeward for the Southly Sea & bearing up.

Merid Alt^d
O Center 32°:09'

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N69°E	178	41:35	41°:40'S	30°:58'W		

[Page 199]

194.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Monday May 5 1788 Observations

1 7 6 ENE SbW Hard Gales with severe Squalls & Hail

2 8

3 8

4 7 4 46¼

5 8 “ SSW Reefed & handed the Main Sail and got down
T.G. Yard

6 8

7 8

8 8 43¼

9 7 6

10 7 2

11 7 4 Set Close Reefed Fore Top S^l. the Squalls not so
heavy.

12 7 5 44½

1 8

2 7 6

3 7 6

4 7 4 45½

At 21^h:31' Lat^d. 40°:42'S

5 7 4 Long^d. T. K. = 29:10W

A Compss - 5°:42'E

6 7 “ “ “ Mod. Gales Out Reefs d°. Turned - 5:28

B Compss - 5:24

7 7 4 d°. Turned - 6:52

Mean = 5:51E

8 7 4 “ “ 46½ Up T.G. Yard & Set Fore Top Mast Steer^s Sail

9 7 4 Employed cleaning below & airing with fires.
Making Spunyarn – Served Sweet Wort as usual
10 7 2 & Portable Soup & Sour Krout for Dinner, being
banyan Day.

11 7 2

12 7 4 47½ Cloudy W^r. With ~~constant~~ frequent Squalls of
Rain - Birds & some Whales.

183

12353

Lat^d. by Dble Alt^{ds}. Noon 40°:36'S

12536

Latitude			Longitude			Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N71°E	182	40:36	40:33	27°:10'W	28°:57'W	28:42W

[Page 200]

195.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesday 6 May 1788 Observations

1 7 4 ENE SbW Strong Gales & Cloudy W^r. with Lulls at times
2 7 4 lowering The Top Sails occasionally

3 7 2				At 3 ^h :32' Lat ^d . 40°:28'S Long ^d . T. K. = 28:36W
4 7 2	“	“	47 ³ / ₄	
5 7 3				
6 7 4	SWbS		D ^o W ^r . With some Squalls	
7 7				
8 6 5	“	“	47 ¹ / ₂	Fresh Gale with frequent Intervals of little Wind and sometimes Strong Squalls
9 6	SWbW			
10 6				
11 6	EbN	“	“	Course altered on account of the Squalls to keep the Sails full
12 5	WbS		49	
1 5	ENE			
2 4 6	Varia ⁿ . 3 Points			At 21 ^h :27' Lat ^d . 39°:51'S Long ^d . T. K. = 26°:11'W
3 4 6				More Mod. Out Reefs, & Set Stud ^g Sails
4 5 6	WbN		50 ¹ / ₂	Varia - Compss A Compss - 2°:58'E d ^o . Turned - 2:31 B Compss - 1:36 d ^o . Turned - 6:04 Mean = 3:17E
5 6				
6 6 4	WNW.			
7 7			54	Strong Breezes & open Cloudy W ^r . Got up all bedding & Bags with Cloaths – Dried below with Fires – Carpenter & Boatswain Empl ^d ab ^t . Necessary Duties – Served Sweet Wort as before. Empl ^d . about the Rigging.
8 7 4	NWbW			
9 8				
10 8 2				
11 8 2				
12 8 6	NWbN		58	Very Fresh Gales & Open Cloudy W ^r . Under

161
12536
12697

Courses & Dble Top Sails – Brown Albatrosses
w^{ch}. our Seamen call Old Curates – Blue Petterals,
Pintada Birds & some Port Egmont Hens about.

Merid Alt^d
O Center 33°:24'

	Latitude		Longitude			
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N72°E	160	39°:47'S	39:39S	23:53	25°:44'W	25°:29'W

[Page 201]
196.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesday 7 May 1788 Observations

1 8 EbN NWbN Fresh Gales & Cloudy. In Steering Sails & 1st. Reefs

2 8

3 8 3 ENE

At 3^h:19' Lat^d. 39°:46'S
Long^d. T. K. = 25°:10'W

4 8 7 “ “ 57¼

5 7 Close Reefed the Fore & Triple Reefed the Main
Top Sail it blowing a Strong Gale.

6 7 6

7 7 4

8 8 4 “ “ 57½ Hard Gales handed the Mⁿ. Top Sail & Reefed the
Main Sail & handed it.

9 7 4

10 6 6

11 6 6 NWbW

12 7 2 58

1 7 6 WbN “ More Mod. Set Triple Reefed Main Top S^l.
 2 7 5 West
 3 8 WbS
 4 7 5 WSW 56½
 5 8 “
 6 8
 7 7 4 “ “ “ Fresh Gales & Squally – Out 3rd & 2^d. Reef M. Top
 S^l. Up Main T.G. Yard – Set M. T. Mast Steer^g
 8 8 4 53½ Sails Split d^o. from a severe Squall
 9 8 2 At 21^h:25' Lat^d. 38°:58'S
 Long^d. T. K. = 22°:49'W
 10 7 7
 11 7 4 SW 53½ D^o W^r. This fore noon Empl^d. gett^g water to hand
 & filling Salt Water. Served Sweetwort as Usual.
 12 7 4 Under Close Reefed Fore TS & single Reefed
 Main – T.G. Sail, & Fore Sail. Birds as usual.
 186
 12697
 12883

Merid Alt^d
 O Center 34:04

	Latitude			Longitude		
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N72°E	184	38:51S	38:44	19°:08'W	22:28W	22°:13'W

[Page 202]
 197.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. 8 May 1788 Observations

1 7 2 EbN SW. Fresh Gales & Squally W^r.

2 7 2 EbN $\frac{1}{2}$ N

3 7 6

4 7 52 $\frac{1}{4}$

5 8 Out 2 & 3^d. Reef Fore TS.

6 7 4

7 7 2

8 7 4 SbW 51 $\frac{1}{2}$

9 7

10 6 3

11 6 S^o.

12 5 4 51 Mod Breezes & Cloudy W^r. & continued so the remainder of these 24 Hours.

1 4 6 SbE

2 4 6

3 5 S^o.

4 4 “ “ 50 $\frac{3}{4}$

5 3 3

6 4 3

7 4 SW “ Set Steering Sails.

8 3 1 51 $\frac{1}{4}$ Empl^d. getting water to hand & about the Rigging. Carpenter about the Boats. Cleaned & dried

9 3 WbS below. I this day stopt serving Sweet wort, seeing my People perfectly well & having but a small

10 4 5 quantity for the Voyage to enable me to serve it in the manner I have done, but I consider it necessary

11 5 to continue the hot breakfasts every day of Boiled
Wheat & Sugar.
12 5 “ “ 54¼ D° W^r. Got an indifferent observation.
Albatrosses Pintada Birds & Sheerwaters as usual.
136 Lat^d by Dble Altd^s. Following - 38°:8' South
12883
13019
Merid Alt^d
O Center 34°:31'

	Latitude	Longitude
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .
N71°E	137	38°:07'S
		D.R.
		38°:12'S
		D.R.
		16°:24'W
		T.K.
		L & T.K.

[Page 203]
198.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Friday May 9 th . 1788	Observations
1	6		EbN½N	WbS			Mod. Breezes and dark Cloudy W ^r .	
								Watch O Center
2	6							At 24 ^h :20':45" - 33°:09'
							Time Nearly At ¼ past Noon	25:38:12 – 34:13
3	6	2		WbN			preceeding.	
							Lat ^d 38°:08' S° –	
4	6			“		55½		
5	6							
6	6	6						
7	7	4						
8	7	4		“	“	56	Fresh Gales & Cloudy	
9	8							
10	8							
11	8	2						
12	8			NW		56½	In Steer ^g Sails	

1 8

2 8

3 8

4 9 “ “ 58 Strong Gales & Cloudy.

5 8 4

6 8 4

7 8 4

8 9 “ “ 58

9 8 3 Empl^d. as yesterday – As I now am near the limits
of Tristan de Cunha I determined to See[k] for it
10 8 3 as long as it cost me not much time but the
Weather is so cloudy I could only catch double
11 8 Altd^s. for the latitude, the best taken of which is in
the following Afternoon where I place them & this
12 8 4 “ “ 59¼ Noon is deduced from it.
I could now see land of a moderate height 7 leag^s.
185 No Meridⁿ. Alt^d.

13019
13204

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
E20°N	182	37°:5'S	37°:17'S	12°:50'W	16°:22'W	16°:07'W

[Page 204]
1991

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Saturday May 10 th . 1788	Observations.
1	8		EbN	WbN		Strong Gales & Cloudy W ^r .	At 1 ^h :30':53" - 34°:33'	Watch – O Center
							1:48:16 – 33:44	
2	8	2					Lat ^d . 1 ^h :30':53" 37°:05'S	
							38 Min before	

3	8	E½S				Noon
4	8	4		“	59½	
5	8	4				
6	8					Handed the Main Sail & Shortened Sail to dble Reefed M. Top S ^l . & Triple Reefed Fore Top Sail.
7	7	6		NW		
8	7	4		“	60	Hauled the Wind with a Fresh Gale & Cloudy W ^r .
9	3	NEbN		NWbN		
10	3					At 8 O’Clock lat ^d . 37°:7'S Long ^d . 15:26W
11	2	7				
12	2	7		“	60	Wore Ship.
1	2	WSW		NW		
2	2	3				
3	2	3				
4	2	2		“	60¾	Strong Gales & Cloudy W ^r .
5	2					
6	2			“	“	“ Bore away with Rainy W ^r .
7	8	East		WbN		
8	7	E½S		WNW	57½	Out Reefs & made more Sail. One Cask Flour N47 = 514lbs gross 59 Tare 455 lbs Nett found unfit for use.
9	6	4				At 21 ^h :46' Lat ^d . 37°:26'S Long ^d . T. K. = 14°:4'W
10	6	4		“	WbS	At 22°:37' Lat ^d . 37:27S Long ^d . T. K. = 14:4W
11	6	6				
12	6	6		East	“	57½ Fresh Gales & fair W ^r . Main

131
23204
23335

T. Mast Steering Sails Set
& all Sails

Merid Alt^d
O Center 34°:39½'

	Latitude	Longitude
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .
E10°S	126	37:27
		D.R.
		37°:10'S
		D.R.
		10:14W
		T.K.
		13°:46'W
		L & T.K.
		13°:31'W

[Page 205]
200.

Remarks

I have endeavored to run on the limits of Tristan de Cunha with the hopes of making it, but thus far I am disappointed. My only authorities for its situation is are Robertson's Elements that placeth it in 37°:12'S°. 13°:23'W & the General Map prefixed to Captⁿ. Cook's last Voyage w^{ch}. placeth it in 37°:12'S & Long^d. 15°:00'W. This last being the Westernmost I entered on that Tract in Time, but I met with no signs of land or the least appearance of any Vicinity of it: however I thought it would not be loosing much time to try its easternmost situation. I therefore at 8 O'Clock ~~lay to~~ stood on & off untill day light, that I might not pass it in the Night – I then stood for it in its parallel, by my Account which at Noon proves to be 17 Miles wrong; but I could See land of any moderate height at least 8 or 10 leagues, besides this, there was no signs of nearness of land, only a very few Oceanic Birds being about. At Noon I steered NE^l both to intersect its latitude & be beyond its Easternmost Situation carrying a Scope of Ten & Twelve leagues in view, but how far the limits this Island & Rocks are determined I cannot now with propriety search any longer after.

My Observations being sufficient Intervals & near Noon I think may be relyed on equal to a Merid. Alt^d.

By a presumed Rate as I call it, found from Lunar Obser^s. I find the True Long^d. by T.K. to day at Noon to be 13°:30' West w^{ch}. I consider to be within ¼ of a degree, & from this taking its situation from Robertson, the Island bears N20°E dis^t. 16 Miles.

[Page 206]
201.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sunday 11th. 1788 May Observations

1	7	4	NE	WSW	Fresh Gales & Fair W ^r . Hands looking out from the Mastheads for Tristan de Cunha.	
2	7	4				
3	7	5		West		At 3 ^h :48' Lat ^d . 37°:08'S Long ^d . T. K. = 23°:21'W
4	8			“	58½	
5	8					
6	8	4	NEbE	WNW	“	In Lat ^d . 37°:00'S°. & True Long ^d . 12°:42'W. Could see at least 7 leagues in any direction. No appearance or Signs of Land.
7	8	6				
8	8	6	“	“	57½	
9	8	5	EbN	West		
10	8	2		WbS		
11	7	6				
12	8			“	56⅔	Strong Gales and Squally with heavy Rain.
1	7	4				
2	8					
3	8	4				
4	8		“	“	59	
5	7					
6	6	6		W		
7	6	6		WbN		
8	6	7		NWbW	57¾	Mod. and dark Cloudy W ^r . Cleaned below – Mustered all

9 5 Variaⁿ. hands & Saw them Clean –
Performed divine Service

10 3 5

11 5 East NWbN

12 6 “ 57½ D° W^r. All Sails Set. Got a sight
of the Sun exactly at Noon by T. K.
w^{ch}. I believe to be within a mile of
the truth.

176
13335
13511

Merid Alt^d
O Center 35°:34'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N66E	167	36°:18'S	36°:12'	7°:04'W	10°:36'W	10°:21'W

[Page 207]

202.

Remarks

I kept my Course to the NE still with Hopes of Seeing Tristan de Cunha and at 6 O'Clock when Night came on I was in lat^d 37°:00'S° & True Long^d 12°:42' West, but with the strictest look out nothing could be seen. I can therefore say nothing more about it than I firmly believe it is not situated between the lat^d of 37°:00'S° & 37°:27'S between the Long^d of 16°:30'W. & Long^d. 12°:15' West. After dark the night proved very Windy & thick Rainy W^r. which induced me to steer no longer out of my Course.

[Page 208]

203.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Monday 12 May 1788

1 6 6 E½N NWbN Mod^t. and dark Cloudy W^r.

2 6

3 6

4 5 “ “ 58 Light Winds & Rain

5 4 4

6 3 2 “ NbW

7 1

8 “ “ Round the Compss 56½ Calm wth. Rain & dark Cloudy W^r. In all Sails

9 3 “ ENE Varia.
from S^o

10 3 to SEbS Light Breezes Set Sail again.

11 2

12 1 East Varia from 58 Light Airs & Varia.
NNW to

1 4 E½N West

2 5 6 “ Hard Squalls with Rain & Lightning

3 6

4 6 6 “ NW 61

5 7 3

6 7 4 “ “ “ Fresh Gales & dark Rainy W^r.

7 7

8 6 7 “ 61¼ Fresh Breezes & darky Cloudy W^r. Set Steer^g
Sails.

9 6 4

10 7 4 Employed cleaning & drying below.

11 7 6 Making Spunyarn & Carpenter about the Boats.

12 7 6 61¾ D^o W^r. No Observations Sea from the NW^t. Some
Sheerwaters, Brown Albatrosses & Pintada Birds

123
13511
13634

about. All Sails Set.

Latitude			Longitude			
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
EbN	123	None	35°:54'	4°:35'W		

[Page 209]
204.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. 13 May 1788 Observations

1	7	3	E½N	NW	Wind Freshening & dark Cloudy W ^r . w th . Squalls of Rain. In 1 st . Reefs.
2	7				
3	7				
4	6				63¼ Fresh Gales & heavy Cloudy W ^r . w th . Squalls. In 2 ^d . Reefs.
5	6	2			
6	6	2			Opened a Puncheon Pork Beef N1291 Contents 86 Dble Pieces short one.
7	7				
8	7				63 Steady Fresh Gale out 2 ^d . Reefs
9	6	7			
10	6	6			
11	7				
12	7				“ 61½
1	6				
2	6				“ “ Mod. Gale out Reefs & Set Steer ^g Sails.
3	6	4		NNW	

4 7 4 West 59½ Fair W^r.

5 7 2

At 20^h:32' Lat^d. 35°:30'S
Long^d. T. K. = 5°:21':7"W

6 7 6

Varia^s. Same Time

7 7

A Compss - 11°:45'W

d°. Turned - 11:49

B Compss - 11:17

8 6

“

“

58½ D° W^r. Hauled all the Cables

d°. Turned - 11:38

up. Got all bedding to Air &

Mean 11:35W

9 6 4

WNW

Cleaned & dried well below

wth. Fires.

10 6 4

Saw a Whale

11 6 3

NW

12 6

“

64 Fine W^r. Under all Sails. Began to
serve whole allowance of Bread.

A Few Albatrosses & Pintada Birds

About

161

13634

14095

13795

300 Error

Merid Alt^d

O Center 35°:57'

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
E10°N	158	35°:26'S	35°:16'S	1°:26'W	4°:51'W	

[Page 210]

205.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. 14th. May 1788 Observations

1 5 E½N NW Mod. Breezes & Pleasant W^r.

2 4 4

3 4 4

4 4 2 “ “ 62½ Coiled the Cables down & At 3^h:36' Lat^d. 35°:21'S
bent the Old Main Sail, Long^d. T. K. = 4°:32':22"W

5 4 and turned all hands to Dancing Same time

6 3 O & D. Sun West

Ramsⁿ. B - 4^h:58':13"W

Trougⁿ. - H - 4:47:28

7 4 E½S NNE “ Spica East D
red^d. same time as above

8 4 3 “ 60¾ Fine Night. Being nearly on Ramsd. B - 4:19:45
a wind In 1st. Reefs. Trought. - H - 4:16: -

9 4 4 EbS “ Ramsd. - C - 4:18:30
Mean = 4:35:27

10 5

11 5 4 E½S “

12 5 3 EbS “ 59½

1 6

2 5

3 4 4 East NbE “ Squally & Small Rain & Light^g
in the NW.

4 4 59½

5 3 3 EbN N°. Out Reefs

6 4 NbW

7 4 3 NW “ Made all Sail. At 21^h:9' Lat^d. 35°:17'S
Long^d. T. K. = 3°:5':44"W

8 4 WbN 60½ Fine W^r. Bent the old Fore Varia^s. same time
S^l. & Fore Top sail. A Compss - 12°:5'W

9 3 6 E½N d°. Turned - 12:28

B Compss - 12:14

10 3 6 Cleaned & kept all Bedding d°. turned - 11:12
& Chests up all day. Kept Mean = 12:00W

11 4 Fires below. Carpenters about
the Boats.

12 4 4 West 61½ Mod. Breezes & Fair W^r. All

Sails & T.G. Steer^g S^{ls}. Set.

104
14095
14199

Merid Alt^d
O Center 35°:54½'

	Latitude		Longitude			
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N83°E	99	35°:13¾'S	35°:01'S	0°:35'E ^t .	2°:51'W	

[Page 211]
206.

Observations since the 26th. April 1788 to the 16th. May following, Reduced to 3^h:36' on the 14th. Opposite by applying the difference of Long^d. made by the T. Keeper.

Time When 1788	Long ^d . by T. Keeper	Long ^d . by Observ ⁿ .	Correct ⁿ . to be applied to zed, then to 3h: 36' on the 13th	True Longd. by Obsern. at 3h: 36 of 7 th	Longd. turn'd into Time	T.K. & flow for Mean Time Greenwich
April 27	51.50W	51.49W	47.17.38	4.31.22W		
		51.40		4.22.22		
		51.15		3.57.22		
May 14	4.32.22	4.50.13		4.50.13		
		4.47.20		4.47.20		
		4.19.45		4.19.45		
		4.16.-		4.16.-		
15		4.18.30		4.18.30		
15	2.31.59	2.44	+2.00.23	4.44.23		
		2.59		4.59.23		
		2.44.7		4.44.30		

Mean Long^d. at 3h.36' the 14th May – 4.32.39W = 0h.18'.10".6)
 Long^d. by T.K. at the same time - 4.32.22 = 0h.18'.9".5) 0h.0'.1".1
 Long^d. by observation more than T.K. +0.00.17
 Long^d. by observation less than T.K. on the 15th March -8.10.31
 Time Keepers error since the 16th March = 0.10.48 in Long^d.

Time Keeper fast for mean Time Green^h 16th March last – 0.0.42.4

The Time Keeper's Error in 59 Days that it has lost = 0.0.43.5

which is about 7 tenths of a second pr. day, but as it must have fluctuated in that interval owing to the various temperature of the Air, I consider its error to be just as above, and its rate at 1.1 pr. day, being its old rate of going.

[Page 212]

207.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. 15th. May 1788 Observations

1 4 4 E½N West Mod. breezes & fair W^r.

2 4 4 “ Sailmakers repairing Sails

3 4 2

4 4 “ WbS 60 All hands to Dancing At 4^h:3' Lat^d. 35°:10'S

Long^d. T. K. = 2°:31':59"W

5 3 4

Reduced to same Time

Regulus West D

6 4 3 “ WSW

Ramsdⁿ. B - 2°:44'W

d°. - C = 2:59

7 4 6

Trough^t. – H – 2:44:7

Mean = 2:49:4W

8 4 6 “ SW 58½

9 5

10 6

11 6 2

12 6 4 “ 58½

1 6 4

2 6 4

3 6 4 “ SSW “ In T.G. Steer^g Sails

4 7 58½ Strong breezes & Cloudy.

5 6 6

6 7

At 20^h:25' Lat^d. 34°:30'S
Long^d. T. K. = 0°:37':37"W

7 8 5

8 8

57¾ Fresh Gales. In Steer^g Sails

Bent the old Main Top S^l.

9 7 5

Carpenters Repair^g Boats &
Sailmakers Sails.

10 7 5

11 8

Cleaned below

12 7 6

“ 58½ D^oW^r. In 1st. Reefs. The Ship
still continues to make water
requiring to be pump'd every hour.

147

14199

14346

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N69°E	146	34:22S	34:33S	3°:19'E ^t .	0°:5'West.	

[Page 213]

208.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Friday 16th. May 1788

Observations

1 7 6 ESE SSW Fresh Gales & Cloudy W^r. In 2^d. Reefs

2 7 6

3 7 4 “ “ “ Strong Gales & Squally In Close Reef Top Sails
& hand^d. Fore Top Sail

4 7 6 “ 59¾ Very hard Gales and the Sea breaking obliged to be
battened down

5 8 4

At 3^h:36' Lat^d. 34°:22'S
Long^d. T. Keeper = 0°:27':25"E

6 8 6 SbW “

7 9 “ “ “ “ Blowing very hard. In M. Top Sail.
8 7 6 “ “ 58¼ The break of the Sea flying over the lower Yards.
9 6 7
10 6 6 “ “ “ A Violent breaking Sea & our course being in the
11 5 7 SE SW the Ship. One of the Seas that broke on us carried
12 3 7 “ 56 boards. Much water got down the companion
which is the only place open.
1 3 6
2 3 5
3 3 3
4 3 3 “ 55¾ D^o W^r. up Main Sail
5 3
6 3 “ “ “ Hove too under the Fore Sail
7 2 SEbS
8 2 55½ More Mod. Set the Reefed Main Sail & Close
Reefed M. Top S^l. on the Cap.
9 6 4 ESE
10 6 4
11 6 4
12 6 4 58½ Strong Gales & Cloudy W^r. with squalls & some
bright intervals w^{ch}. gave me a good lat^d. Saw a
Whale & some Sheerwaters.
136
14346
14482

Merid Alt^d
O Center 36°:19'

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
East	133	34:22S	34°:21'S	6°:00'E		

[Page 214]
209.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Saturd ^y	May 17 th . 1788	Observations
1	4	3	SEbE	SWbS					Strong Gales & Cloudy & much Sea. One of my Quarter Masters by the Violent motion of the Ship was thrown down the the fore Cockpit Hatchway & severely bruised
2	4	4							
3	4	6							
4	5	4		SW	55¼				At 3 ^h :7' Lat ^d . 34°:23' Long ^d . T. K. = 2°:41':49"E
5	4	6							
6	4	6							
7	5								
8	5			“	55				
9	5	3		“	“				Gale taking off set triple Reefed Fore Top Sail.
10	6	2							
11	6	2	SEbE½E						
12	6	2	“	“	55				Fresh Gale & Cloudy W ^r .
1	6								
2	7	4							
3	6								
4	6		“	“	55				

5 6 “ “ “

6 6 “ SWbS “ Mod. Gale. Out 3^d & 2^d. At 20^h:59' Lat^d. 34°:37'
Reefs Long^d. T. K. = 4°:47':45"E

7 6 2

8 6 6 “ 55 Cloudy W^r. with some bright
Intervals. Cleaned & got
9 7 2 every thing on Deck & dried
below with Fires.

10 6

11 7

12 7 “ “ 56½ Mod. Gale & Fair W^r. Up
M.T.G. Yard. Filled a Ton
of water in the Spirit Room to
bring the Ship by the Stern.

140
14482
14622

Merid Alt^d
O Center 35°:49'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
E7°S	140	34°:39'S	34°:34'S	8°:48'E	5°:11'E	

[Page 215]

210.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sunday May 18th. 1788 Observations

1 6 EbS½S SSW Mod. Breezes & Fair W^r. Set
Steering Sails

2 6 4

3 6 4

4 6 “ “ 57 All hands to Dancing. At 3^h:29' Lat^d. 34°:39'S
ong^d. T. K. = 5°:33':51"E

5 5 4					Varia p ^r . Azths.
6 5 4					A Compss - 17°:06'W
7 4					d°. - 17:34W
					B Compss
					d°. - None
					Mean = 17:20W
8 3 4			56	Light Breezes & fair W ^r .	
9 3	“	SW			
10 3 2		WSW			
11 3					
12 2 4		WbN	56	D° W ^r . Many Porpoises about the Ship.	
1 2 2					
2 2 3				Swell from the SSW.	
3 2 3		NWbW			
4 2 4		NW	57¼	Great Swell from the South ^d .	
5 3					
6 3 2		NNW			
7 4					
8 4 4		NbW	59½	Mod. and fair W ^r . – Swell At 20 ^h :18' Lat ^d . 34°:41'S from the SE ^t .	Long ^d . T. K. 6°:48½'E
9 5				Mustered & saw every one	
10 5				Clean and performed Divine Service	
11 5 2					
12 6	“	“	63	D° W ^r . & Swell from the SE ^t . Albatrosses, Pintada Birds & Sheerwaters about.	
101				Water remaing on board	
14622				13 Butts, at 2 Butts in 5 Days	
14723					

equal to 3^{M[onths]}: 10^{Days}

Merid Alt^d
O Center 35°:34'

		Latitude		Longitude		
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
E2°S	101	34°:41'S	34°:39'S	10°:50'E	7:13½Eas ^t .	

[Page 216]
211.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Monday May 19th. 1788

1 7 2 EbS NbE Fresh Breezes and cloudy W^r. Ordered all hands to
have Clean Hammocks

2 7 2

3 7 2

4 7 “ 61

5 7 4 E½S North

6 7 4 “ Fresh Gales & Cloudy W^r. in 2nd. Reefs

7 7 6

8 8 “ 61 Squally. Hand^d. Miz. Top Sail & in 3rd. Reef Fore
Top Sail. Lost a Log & Line

9 7

10 7

11 7 2 NbW “ In 3rd. Reef main Top Sail

12 7 2 “ 61 Strong Gales. a Great Swell from the SE^t.

1 7 3

2 7 3

3 7 6

4 7 4 “ 61

5 8

6 8

7 8

8 8 62 Dark Cloudy W^r. with hard Squalls

9 7 6 Down Main T.G. Yard.

10 7 7 Served Portable Soup & Krout to all hands for dinner as usual, it being Banyan day.

11 8 “

12 8 “ “ “ 61° Strong Gale & thick Rainy W^r. Under Courses & triple Reefed Top Sails – Ship still continues to be Pumped every hour – Pintada Birds & Sheerwaters as usual.
181
14723
14904

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R	T.K.	L & T.K.
E7°N	181	None	34°:19'S	14°:26'E ^t		

[Page 217]

212.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. 20th. May 1788 Observations

1 8 E½S N°. Strong Gales and dark Cloudy W^r.

2 8

3 7 5

4 7 2 NbW 63½

5 7 2

6 6 “ “ “ D^o W^r. & Severe Squalls – Close
Reefed the Top Sails & reefed the
7 7 4 Courses.

8 7 EbS NNW 62¾

9 6 6 “ “ “ Weather Moderating. Out 4th.
& 3^d. Reefs.

10 7 4 “ NW “

11 7 6 “ “ “ A Fine Night. Out all reefs. Up

T. Gall Yard & Set Fore & fore
T. M^t. Steering Sail.

12 7 NWbW 63¾

At 11^h:56' Meridⁿ.,
Alt^d. D Center 77°:19'
Lat^d obs^d. 34°:2'S^o.

1 5 6 ESE

2 6 WNW Set M. T. M^t. Steering Sails

3 5 4

4 5

5 4 “ “ 63 Mod. and Cloudy

6 4

7 4

8 3 63 Light Breezes & Fair. Set At 20^h:40' Lat^d. 34°:05'S
T. G Steer^g. Sails. Long^d. T. K. = 13°:21' East

9 2 4 Up all bedding & Bags & Varia Same time
Cloaths Cleaned below. A Compss - 21°:37'W

10 2 2 Wormed a Rub'd part d^o. turned - 21:36

of the B[est] B[ower] with B Compss - 22:11

11 2 2 a Catfall. Put the 2^d. d^o. turned - 20:13

M. TS in good repair. Mean 21:24W

12 2 2 “ “ 66¾ Carpenter ab^t. the Boats.
Fine Pleasant W^r. w^{ch}. revives
a few Rheumatic Invalids.

134 The Quarter Master who fell
14904 on Saturd^y is doing well & no
15038

dangerous symptoms about him.

	Latitude		Longitude			
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
E6°N	133	34°:05'S	34°:05'S	17°:05'E ^t	13°:33'E	

[Page 218]

213.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. 21 May 1788 Observations

1 2 4 ESE½S WNW Light Breezes and fine W^r. All Sails
Set.

2 2 4

3 3 2

4 4 “ “ 66¾ All Hands to Dancing. At 4^h:6' Lat^d. 34°:6'S
Long^d. T. K. = 13°:49'E^t.

5 3 6 Varia^s. same time

A Compss - 21°:59'W

6 4 d°. Turned - 21:30

7 4 B Compss - 21:51

d°. Turned - 21:19

Mean 21:45W

8 4 2 “ “ 63¾

9 5

10 4 4

11 4 6

12 5 “ “ 63¼

1 5

2 4 6

3 3 6 “ NWbW

4 3 “ NW 63

5 3

6 3

At 19^h:52' Lat^d. 34°:05'S
Long^d. T. K. = 15°:4'East

7 3 2 N

Varia^s. same time

A Compss - 23°:08'W.

8 3 4 NNE 62¾ In Steer^g Sails

d^o. turned - 22:42

B Compss - 23:26

9 4 4 ESE NE

Employed about the Sails,
Boats, Making Spun yarn &
Cleaning below

d^o. turned - 22:06

Mean = 22:50W

10 4 4

11 4 5

12 5 NEbN 65½ Fine W^r. Swell from the WNW
Under all Sails about 7 Points
from the Wind.

95

15038

15133

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
East.	95	34°:05'S	34°:07'S	19°:00'E	15°:30'E ^t .	

[Page 219]

214.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. 22^d. May 1788

Observations

1 4 5 ESE½S NE Mod. Breezes & fine W^r.

2 5

3 4 6 ESE

At 3^h:32' Lat^d. 34°:06'S
Long^d. T. K. = 15:33

4 5 “ 64¾

Varia p^r. Azth same
time.

5 5 2

A Compss - 23°:22'W

d^o. turned - 23:46

6 5

B Compss - 22:36

d^o. turned - 22:14

7 5	EbS	NEbN		Mean 22:59W
8 4		“	62	Cloudy.
9 2 6				
10 2 6				
11 1 6				
12 1 4		“	61	
1 1 6				
2 2 6				
3 3 6				
4 4 4		“	61½	
5 5 4	“	N		
6 6 4		NWbW		Set Steering Sails
7 6 4	ESE			
8 7		“	61½	Mod & Cloudy with flaws of Wind Got the Anchors over the Bows & Cables bent. Saw a Sail in the South
9 6 4				
10 6	“	“	“	“
11 7	EbS	Nº	“	Rainy W ^r . In 1 st . Reefs.
12 8 4		NNE	63¼	DºW ^r . No Obser ⁿ . Albatrosses White Petterals, like a Small Gull w th a forked tail & some fish Seen. The White Petteral is very seldom far from Land.
113				
15133				
15246				

Latitude

Longitude

R

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	Table Bay
East.	111		34°:05'S	21°:14'E	17°:41'E		

[Page 220
215.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Friday 23 ^d . May 1788	Observations
---	---	---	---------	-------	------	--------------------	-----------------------------------	--------------

1	8	4	EbS	NbE			Fresh Gales & Cloudy in 2 nd . Reefs.
2	8	“	“	“	“		Saw the Table Land of the C. Good Hope E ¹ / ₂ N. off shore 8 or 9 leagues.
3	8		SEbE				
4	7	6	“	“		62 ¹ / ₄ D° W ^r .	The Sugar loaf Hill in Table Bay NE ^t . 6 or 7 leag ^s .
5	7						
6	3	4	EbN ¹ / ₂ N	N°.		TK ^d . D° W ^r .	with some Rain Tripled the Top Sails & hauled the Wind
7	2	6	WbN ¹ / ₂ N				Sounded 20 fm ^s . course Shells C. Good Hope SE ¹ / ₂ S 4 leag ^s .
8	2	4		“		62 ³ / ₄	
9	2	2	WbS	NWbN	“		No Ground at 75 fm ^s .
10	2	4	SW	WNW			
11	2	4	SWbS	WbN			
12	1	4	SSW	West	62		Mod. & Fair W ^r . Hove Main Top Sail to the Mast & Sounded 80 fm ^s but no Ground. C. Good Hope EbN.
1	1						
2	1	4	SWbS	WbN			
3	1	6	N	WNW			
4	1	6				61 ¹ / ₂ D° W ^r .	Cape Good Hope E ¹ / ₂ N 4 leag ^s .
5	1		NbE	“	“		Bore away.
6	1	6	East	“	“		Hove to, Sounded 69 fm ^s . C. G. Hope

2 SW E^t. 4 leag^s. nearly.
 7 2 4 ESE NW “ At 20^h:23' Lat^d. 34°:28'S
 Long^d. T. K. by RB = 18°:43'E^t
 8 2 SE N 61½ Light Winds & Fine W^r. At 20^h:31' Lat^d. 34°:28'S
 C. Good Hope ENE 5 Long^d. T. K. by TH 18°:42'E^t
 9 2 SSE Miles. Westⁿ. Land N½E^t. Varia^s. Same time
 Many Seals, Gannets, A Compss - 23°:51'W
 10 2 4 Albatross & some Shags, d°. turned - 23:58
 with Patches of Rock B Compss - 24:01
 11 2 6 SE NEbE Weed as big in the Stem d°. turned - 22:31
 as a Man's Leg, passing. Mean - 23:35W
 12 2 6 ESE NE^t. 60½ D° & Cloudy. C. Good Hope
 N15°W dis^t. ab^t. 3 leag^s. C. False
 77 EbN½N & the E^t. high land of
 15246 Simon's Bay N½E.
 15323 The Sail seen Yesterday now in
 - 300 error on 13th. May the Offin[g] & hoists Dutch Colours -
 15023 is com^g. in here by her working to
 Windward.

Merid Alt^d
 O Center 34°:46

	Latitude		Longitude				
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	True
		34°:29'		22°:22'E	18°:52'E	18°:52'E	18°:29'E

[Page 221]
 216.

Remarks

Being certain of my situation ~~and~~ altho' the Weather rather thick I carried all possible Sail to make the land, and to my expectation I made the Table land very distinctly at 2 O'Clock. I steered in a direction along shore to make the Cape – False Bay being the proper place for me to get refreshments at this season of the Year. I spent the Night under Sail and at Day break was very well Situated to get in, but the Wind being variable and having not much of it, our progress to Noon was very trifling. I Showed our Colours to the Ship in the Offin[g] which proved to be a Dutch East India Man, & by her tacking I found she was endeavoring to get in here, which Yesterday I had no Idea of, by her keeping so much to the Southward; but I imagine she had it not in her power to benefited by a latitude, as my certain Situation in that respect was only owing to a Meridian Alt^d. of the

Moon. Some Ships keep in the lat^d of the Cape when they are bound to False Bay, but that is by no means so proper as keeping in the lat^d. of Table Bay 33°:55'S°. The Land being there very high & remarkable – besides if by keeping nearly as you can in the lat^d of the Cape, there should be an error in your account of 4 or 5 leag^s. in lat^d w^{ch}. frequently happens when no observation, a Ship may pass the Cape without seeing it in hazy thick weather, & be to the Eastward of False Bay before they are aware of it, all the Cape Land being considerably lower than about Table Bay.

By Angles I made the Cape to bear at	N	E
the time the Long ^{ds} . by T. K. were found, N42°E 5 Miles =	3.7	3.3 = 4:0
Mean Long ^d ., by Time Keeper	-	- - - 18:42:30
Long ^d . by d°. d°. of the Cape Good Hope =		18:46:30E ^t .
The Lat ^d . I make as I have done in a former Voyage -		34:23:00S°.
The true Long ^d of the Cape is allowed to be in - -		18:23:15E

[Page 222]
217.

H Winds Ther Remarks in False Bay Saturd^y. 24th. May 1788

1	N	Mod. & Cloudy W ^r . Working to Windward into the Bay
2		
3		to
4	NWbN 55¾	The Highest part of the Cape W½N & Simons Bay NW6N
5		Thick Rainy W ^r . with Squalls.
6	“	At ½ past 6 After making several Boards to try the Soundings
7		I brought to w th . the Sm ^l . B ^r . in 22 fm ^s . Sandy bottom. At day
8	NNE 56	Light the White Sandy Way in Simons Bay bore NW False Cape
9		SE½S Cape of Good Hope SW¼S off shore ab ^t . 2 or 3 leagues.
10		
11		

12 57 Mod. & Cloudy W^r.

1

2

3

4 “ 57

5 “ “ Strong Breezes & Squally. At ½ past Weighed under Dble Reefs
6 N^o. TK^d. wth. Seal Island bearg N¾W Simons Bay WNW & False
7 NbW Cape SSE^t.

8 “ 57

9 Attempted to get through between Noah's Arc & Romans
10 to Rocks, but the Squalls being very heavy & thick weather I
11 bore round the Rocks & worked to the Northward of them and
12 NW. 58 at ½ past 11 Came to an Anchor in 9 fm^s. & Moored Open
 Hawse to the NW*. The Weather very thick & Rainy
 Found here one Dutch outward Bound Indiaman & 5 other
 Dutch Ships with one French East India Country Trader.

*See the bear^{gs} in the Next days Work.

[Page 223]

218.

Remarks

Perhaps a Voyage of five Months which I have now performed without touching at any one place but at Tenarif, has never been accomplished with so few accidents, and Such health among Seamen in ~~such~~ a like continuance of bad weather – There is nothing I think has happened more material to remark than this happy circumstance, having never had a ~~complaint~~ symptom of either Scurvy Flux or Fever – and as such a fortunate event may be supposed to have been derived from some peculiar mode of management – it is proper I should point out what I think has been the cause of it.

It is well known that the heavy calamities that attend Seamen in long Voyages are the diseases above mentioned, and that those are occasioned by improper Diet and severe Colds. To act respectively against those diseases Government has given us grand specifics, and as to Fevers they will be more or less common in proportion to the prevention of Colds. We have it much in our power to act against the latter by taking care of the Men in their cloathing, and the rest will generally be prevented, by the timely distribution of the necessaries that Ships may be supplied with, and a strict regard to cleanliness.

Seamen will seldom attend to themselves in any particular, and simply to give directions that they are to keep themselves clean and dry as circumstances will admit, is of little avail – they must be watched like children, as the most recent danger has little effect to prevent them from the same fate.

The Mode I have adopted has been a strict adherence to the first grand point; cleanliness in their persons & bedding, keeping them in dry Cloaths and by constant cleaning and drying the Ship with Fires – To this I attribute their having ~~so~~ kept free of

[Page 224]

219.

Colds so wonderfully as they have done. A great Nuisance which is in general an attendant in Ships in a long continuance of bad weather is dirty Hammocks & Bags – this I think I perfectly got the better of, by having two Sets, one of which was in charge to be ~~kept~~ got cleaned and dried as a general Stock or property whenever they were done with; and by this means I ~~was~~ had it in my power to deliver clean Hammocks & Bags as often as I saw it necessary. One Person of a watch was appointed to dry Cloaths by the Fire, & a Man never came on Deck or went to Sleep in wet apparel. No foul Cloaths were ever suffered to be kept without airing, and in cleaning Ship all dark holes & Corners the common receptacles of all filth were the first places attended to.

After all that can be done perhaps Ships may be Subject to Fevers & Fluxes, but the Scurvy is really a disgrace to a Ship where it is at all common, provided they have it in their power to be supplied with Dried Malt, Sour KROUT & Portable Soup – With these Articles properly issued, I am firmly convinced no Scurvy will appear. Chearfulness with exercise, and a sufficiency of rest are powerful preventives to this dreadfull disease, a calamity which even at this ~~time~~ present period destroys ~~more than~~ more Men than is generally known. To assist in the two first particulars every opportunity I directed that the Even^{gs} should be spent in dancing, & that I might be secure in the last I kept my few Men constantly at

three Watches even in the worst of weather, and I found them additionally alert on a call when their immediate service was required.

Was I to lay down general Rule for the issuing of the articles I have just mentioned, it should begin within a fortnight after a Ship leaves a Port of good Supplies, before Salt diet begins to produce any ill effects. The Malt infusion, by pouring boiling water on when it is ground, at the rate of four to one, after being let to stand for an hour should

Continued to pages on 227.

[Continued on Page 232]

[Page 225]

220.

Week Day	N ^o D ^y .	Winds	Ther.	Remarks in False Bay Cape of Good Hope
1788 May				Very Squally W ^r , with frequent hard Rain. At one pm came on board an Officer from the Resident to enquire respecting the health of my People and to acquaint me in case I saluted the same number of
			58½	Guns would be returned. I therefore sent a Message to the Resident [page torn] Brand that
Sund ^y .	25 th .	NW	57	I should Salute with 13 Guns w ^{ch} . I did, and it was Returned with the same Number. At 2 Moored Ship with an open Hawse to the NW – Romans Rocks S73°E the Hospital S72°W Noahs Arck
			55½	S35°E ^t . about ¾ of a Mile from the Shore. Punished John Williams with 6 lashes for neglect of duty in Heaving the Lead. Stocked the Sheat Anchor bent the Cable and got it over the side. In the Morning I went on shore & directed that All hands should be
			59	served a pound of fresh Meat every day & Vegetables with Wine & Soft bread. Rec ^d . Accordingly.

			58	Light breezes & Calms w th . some small Rain at times. AM. I directed that the Mizen Mast should
	NW			be raised out of the Step & two feet cut off it, as it is too taut & strains the Ship about the Quarters & it
			57	was done and the Rigging repaired & fitted. Loosed

Mond^y. 26th. Calm Sails to Dry – Anchored the Beverwick Dutch East Indiaman from Holland Left the Downs the last day of Jan^y. Found the Bread in the Bead Room damaged w^{ch}. I ordered to be got up & examined into. Received Fresh Meat Soft Bread Cabbages & Celery wth. Onions & Leeks & Wine – Took the Time Keeper on Shore.

Tuesd^y. 27 Calm 62½ Calm & fair W^r. Fixed a Tent on shore for the Cooper – Sent Empty Cask on shore – Empl^d. 55 over-hauling the Bread. Armourer employed 54 on shore getting some necessary Iron Work made. The Carpenters began about the birth work of 62¼ the Waist & Quarters. Unbent all Sails.

[Page 226]
221.

Week Day	N ^o D ^y .	Winds	Ther.	Rem ^s in False Bay Cape of Good Hope
May 1788		SSE		Fair W ^r . Completed the Mizen Rigging & black'd the Yards & Gaff. Began to overhaul the Rigging in general. Sent empty Casks on shore –
Wednesd ^y . 28		Calm	57°	Sailed the French Ship. Carpenters repairing & fitting up the Birthing in the Waist. Received Fresh Meat, Cabbages, Cellery, onions & Leeks. Empl ^d
		NbW	63°	ab ^t . the Bread. Cooper & Armourer on Shore.

		N	63°	Strong Gales & Squally with frequent heavy Rain.
		NEbN	60°	Struck Yards & Top Masts. Employed in the
Thursd ^y . 29 th .		NbE	57°	Cabbin picking & sorting the damaged Bread.
		NbW	56°	Fresh Meat & Vegetables as before.

			57	Strong Gales & constant Rain with very sharp flashes of Lightning. Empl ^d . the People below
		North	58	about the bread. Little else could be done.
Friday 30		NW	55	Fresh Meat & Greens as before. At 11 AM

		S ^o	54	Anchored a French Packet du Roi from the Mauritius bound to Havre de Grace.
Saturd ^y .	31	S ^o .	57 51 51½	D ^o W ^r . Employed overhauling the rigging below & picking the damaged bread. Served Fresh Meat & Greens as usual.
June 1788			53	Fresh Gales and clear W ^r . Set the Carpenters to Caulking – Boatswain about the Rigging & all the necessary duties forwarded without delay. Fresh Meat & Greens as usual.
Sund ^y .	1	SEbS.	54 55¾	
Monday	2	SEbS.	54 53½ 53½ 55½	Fair W ^r . & Fresh Gale. Anch ^d . the Java a Dutch East Indiaman from Ceylon. Employed Caulking & Refitting the Rigging and in the Hold. Hauled the Seine & caught Mullet sufficient to serve all hands. Fresh Meat & ^c . as Usual. Found the damaged Bread P ^r . Survey after being most carefully picked taking off ⅓ for wet to amount to 2500 lbs and also 30 Bags that were laid at the bottom, of the Bread Room totally Rotten & unfit for any use whatever. Found two Pun ^s . Pork totally unfit for use the Pickle being leaked out.
[Page 227]				
222.				
Week	N ^o	Winds	Ther.	Rem ^s . in False Bay Cape of Good Hope.
Day	Day			
June 1788	SEbS	57	Fair W ^r .	Employed refitting the Rigging – In the
Tuesd ^y .	3	to	Hold Cooper & Armourer on Shore – Sailmakers at	
	Calm	65¾	Work about the Sails – Served Fresh Meat & Vegetables as usual. Hauled the Seine & served Fish.	
Fair W ^r – Employed about the Rigging and other				

		58	Artificers about their respective works. Hands
Wednesd ^y	4	Calm	55 about the Hold. Served Fresh Meat & Vegetables as usual. Hauled the Seine & served Fish as before.
		57	

Fair W^r. Carpenters Caulking – Boatswain about
The Rigging – Sailmakers repair^g Sails

Thursd ^y .	5	Calm NNW	Received & served Fresh Meat & Greens as usual. At 1 PM Fired 21 Guns in commem ⁿ . of His Majestys Birthday. I now took the Therm ^r . on Shore to know the temperature of the Air the T. Keeper stood in.
-----------------------	---	-------------	--

		NNW	Strong Gales & Rainy. Empl ^d . in the Main Hold to get the Iron stocked Anchor up, for a Sheat Anchor & put ^g Coals in the Coal Hole.
Frid ^y .	6		
Boatswain		NNE	about the Rigging. Served fish Meat & Greens & ^c as usual. Rec ^d . Plank for the Carpenter

		NbW	Strong Gales & Rainy with Lightning & Thund ^r . Carpenters empl ^d . refitting the Dead Lights. Began to water the Ship – Served Fresh Meat & ^c . as before Seeing the weather so unsettled & the impossibility of my own Carpenters completing the Necessary work to be done. I therefore hired four Caulkers who were also Shipwrights @ one Sp ^h . Dollar p ^r . day and Ordered them off.
Saturd ^y	7		
		WNW	

		WNW	Fair W ^r . but at times a little Squally. Four Artificers empl ^d . from the shore & our own Carpenters at work repairing the lining & Cants of the Bends & Caulking. Re ^d . on board a Craftload of Stone Ballast in lieu of Coals Expended – Empl ^d . in the Hold & about the Rigging. Rec ^d . & served fresh Meat as usual.
Sund ^y .	8	NW	
		NbW	

[Page 228]
223.

Week Day	N ^o Day	Winds	Ther. on Shore	Rem ^s . in False Bay Cape of Good Hope.
1788 June		NbW		Fair W ^r . with some Squalls of Rain in the latter part. PM sailed the French Packet for Europe by which I Sent letters to the Lords of the Admiralty Carpenters & Artificers from the Shore as
Mond ^y .	9 th .	to NW		Yesterday Armourer & Cooper on Shore on their Necessary duties. Sailmakers employed on board Served Fresh Meat & Greens as usual.
<hr/>				
Tuesday	10	Calm	NNW	Fair W ^r . Got Yards & Masts on End & Employed Completing the Rigging & in the Hold. Four Artificers from the Shore & our Carpenters empl ^d . as before. Cooper & Sailmakers also employed. Rec ^d . Fresh Meat & Greens as before.
<hr/>				
Wednesd ^y .	11	NW ^{ly} .		Fair W ^r . Artificers Employed as Yesterday – In the Hold – Painted Lower Masts – Blacking where necessary – Sailmakers, Cooper & Armourer as before. Sailed a Dutch Merch ^t . Ship for Batavia. Served Fresh Meat & Greens as usual. Rec ^d . Plank for the Carpenter
<hr/>				
Thursd ^y .	12	Varia	NbW	Cloudy W ^r . with some Rain. Artificers from the Shore & our Carpenters as before. Empl ^d . in the Hold and watering. Hands knotting Yarns. Sent the Powder on shore to Air having rec ^d much injury from the bad Weather we have experienced – Cooper empl ^d . rep ^g . the Casks and Sailmakers the Sails – Served fresh Meat & Vegetables as usual.
<hr/>				
		SEbS.		Fair W ^r . Artificers empl ^d . this day from the Shore & Discharged our own Carpenter still employed

		SSE	about the Birthing of the Waist & Quarter Deck & Caulking part of the Upper works – Empl ^d . In the
Friday	13	S ^o	Hold & receiving on board Flour. AM anchored the
		SbE	Dublin East Indiaman Cap ⁿ . Smith, with Cap ^t . Balfour & part of the Reg ^t . 77 th . Saluted us w th . 11 Guns, returned 9 – Sailmakers & Cooper empl ^d . respectively. Served Fresh Meat & ^c .

[Page 229]
224.

Week	N ^o	Winds	Ther.	Rem ^s in False Bay Cape of Good Hope.
Day	Day		on Shore	

1788				Light airs Calms & Fair W ^r . Breamed and blackd the Bends. Our Carpenters employed Still on Caulking & other necessary Works & finished
June		Round		the former – Employed in the Hold and receiving on board Flour & Oil. Sailmaker & Cooper as before empl ^d . respectively. Served Fresh Meat and Vegetables as usual.
Saturd ^y .	14	the		
		Compss		

				Fair W ^r . & Calm. Employed completing the Rigging & in the Hold Launch watering. Rec ^d . some plank for the Carpenter – Painted the Ship's Sides. Cooper & Sailmakers as before. Served Fresh Meat & Greens.
Sund ^y .	15	Calm		

		Calm		Fair W ^r . with some Calms. Arrived here a French Merch ^t . Ship bound to S ^t . Malo & Dutch Brig from Table Bay – Fitted a New Rudder Coat. Shifted Anchor for the Iron Stock'd one. Sailmakers & Cooper as before. Carpenters about necess ^y . Duties – Rec ^d . Flour & Calivances p ^r . Shore Craft. Served Fresh Meat & Vegetables as Usual.
Monday	16	NWbN		

		NNW		Fresh Gales & Fair W ^r . Employed about various necessary matters and in the Hold. Sailmakers & Cooper as before – Rec ^d . Fresh Meat &
Tuesd ^y .	17	SSW		
		SbE		

Vegetables as usual.

Wednesd ^y .	18	All Round	Light Airs & Calms. Employed watering & the Carpenters & Boatswain completing their Work with all dispatch – Served Fresh Meat & Vegetables as usual.
------------------------	----	-----------	---

Thursd ^y .	19	Calm	Calm W ^r . Empl ^d . Watering & other Duties as Yesterday. Rec ^d . by a Shore Craft all our Bread. Served Fresh Meat & Vegetables as usual.
-----------------------	----	------	---

[Page 230]
225.

Week Day	N ^o Day	Winds	Ther. on Shore	Rem ^s . in False Bay Cape Good Hope.
-------------	-----------------------	-------	-------------------	---

1788 June. Friday	20 th .	All round	Light Airs & Fair W ^r . Employed watering & bending Some of our Sails and other Necessary Duties Cooper & Armourer on shore as before Rec ^d . Fresh Meat & Vegetables. Sailmakers completing the Sails.
-------------------------	--------------------	-----------	---

Saturd ^y .	21	D ^o .	D ^o W ^r . Came on board Col ^l . Gordon Comm ^r . in Chf of all the Dutch Troops – Saluted him w th . 11 Guns. Empl ^d . Watering & in the Hold. Rec ^d . on Board all our Wine by a Shore Craft. Carpenters employed as necessary. Served Fresh Meat & Vegetables.
-----------------------	----	------------------	--

Sund ^y .	22	Calm	D ^o W ^r . Empl ^d . in the Hold – Bending Sails and stowing the Booms. Rec ^d . Fresh Meat and Vegetables as before. Rec ^d . 3 Barrels of Gunpowder.
---------------------	----	------	---

Calm. Empl^d. completing the Rigging &

Mond^y. 23 D^o. necessary duties. Carpenters also employed.
Rec^d. Fresh Meat & Vegetables.

Tuesd^y. 24 NWbW Mod. & fair W^r. PM sailed the Dublin East
Calm Indiaman – Saluted wth. 11 Guns – returned 9
SbE Sailed also two Dutch Indiamen & two Dutch
NE. Merch^t. Ships outward bound. Empl^d clearing
S^o. Ship & reeving running Rigg. Served Fresh
Meat & Vegetables.

Wednesd^y 25 Varia D^o W^r. Launch watering & Carpenters
NW completing their Work. Rec^d. Fresh Meat &
Vegetables. Paid them Government allowance &
Also the Armourer & Sailmakers.

Thursd^y. 26 WNW Fresh Gales & very hard Squalls wth. heavy Rain
to - Sent hands to cut Brooms – Served Fresh
North Meat &^c. as usual.

Friday 27 N^o Fresh & Cloudy. Completed our Water. Anchored
to a French Packet N 5 bound to Isle de France.
NE Rec^d. on board Wine – Hauled the Seine –
Served Fresh Meat &^c.

[Page 231]
226.

Week	N ^o	Winds	Ther.	Rem ^s . in False Bay Cape Good Hope
Day	Day		on Shore	

June 1788

	NE	Mod. breezes & Rainy W ^r . Sailed the French Ship for S ^t . Malo. Hoisted in the Launch Employed
Saturd ^y . 28	N ^o .	cleaning Ship & getting ready for Sea. Served fresh Meat & Vegetables as usual. Sent dispatches by her.
	NE	

Sund^y. 29 NE
SE^{ly}. D^o W^r. Employed getting ready for Sea – Served
Fresh Meat & Vegetables as usual.

Mond^y. 30 Calm Calm W^r. AM The Resident Christoffle Brand
Esq^r. came on board to visit the Ship – Saluted him
with 11 Guns on his coming and going. Empl^d.
Getting on b^d. Brooms. Served Fresh Meat &
Greens as usual.

Tuesd^y. 31 NNE
N^o
NW. Light Airs & thick Rainy W^r. All ready for Sea –
Ships draught of Water forward 12:00 & 12 feet
Aft. AM unmoored Ship & hove to a half Cable on
the B. B^r [Best Bower] – Received in all while here
Bread in biscuit
& Soft bread 9200 lbs
Flour 7166 lbs
Oil 34 Gall 4 lb
Calivances 69 Bushels
Wine 776¼ Gall^s.
Fresh Meat 1656 lbs
(a) Raisins 119 lbs
Gunpowder 3 Barrels
300 lbs
256 Cabbages.
256 Bunches of Greens &^c.

(a) The Rains by neglect was ~~never~~ not charged to Government. – It must
therefore come in the next supply.

[Page 232]

227.

[Following on from Page 224]

be given to the people at a pint wine measure P^r. Man as often as the quantity on
board will allow; but in Case the quantity will not afford it constantly it is
necessary it should be continued for a fortnight at a time, and let the
intermissions be properly fixed as in cold & wet weather it is a fine &
comfortable draught, and refresheth the Men exceedingly. I have seen the most
Valuable effects from it.

The Portable Soup is a very grateful and nourishing thing – boiled with the Pease at the rate of one oz to four of of Pease, as the directions are is fully sufficient and makes a most valuable Meal; but I have prefered instead of boiling it with the Pease on those days when there is Meat, to boil that quantity into Soup mixed with Krout on Mondays which is a banyan day and generally a Poor day for living. The boiling it with the Oatmeal too makes an excellent breakfast – out of necessity it must be made thinner than Burgoo, which of itself is a great advantage, for I consider it certain, it would in common Cases on board of King Ships, if instead of giving the People Burgoo three times a Week, the same quantity was divided and a hot breakfast every day made of thick Gruel; it would be much more Salutory. Hot breakfasts are particularly to be prefered in Stormy & Wet Weather to eating a scrap of salt meat or a piece of buiscuit, but very common, Seamen do their duty without any breakfast at all, and this has a pernicious tendency.

To avoid this in the late Stormy weather I gave every one a hot breakfast of ground wheat & Sugar with butter, but this cannot commonly be done, as the allowance will not admit of it, however thick Gruel with Portable soup added at the rate of one ounce of Soup

[Page 233]

228.

to two ounces of oatmeal or even three, will make it a nourishing Meal and this Plan also I adopt.

The Sour Krout may always be supplied and the consumption of it need not be more than half a pint P^r. Man a Day. Four Quarts boiled every pease day to 10 Quarts of Pease enriches that Meal exceedingly & is sufficient for forty men.

The Infusion of Malt I always prefered giving between ten & eleven O'Clock in the forenoon to any other time. Mustard & Vinegar I gave in such quantities as the People could use & however these two articles are thought little of, I consider them of real use to people on Salt diet.

This has been the general mode of my management, and is what I had in view when I applied for the different Articles. I had besides, Pott Barley & essence of Malt, but I have not thought it necessary to issue those articles, they will become of great use hereafter, particularly the former in hot weather, when I may divide the allowance of Salt Beef and make barley broth, or as other circumstances may make it necessary in such a Climate.

The Winds and weather we have had in the tract from Cape Horn here, seem to point a certainty that I just left it in good time, and that at the beginning of Winter it is exceedingly tempestuous with constant westerly Winds, and it appears to me too, that those winds are prevalent the whole of the Winter months, which I do not consider to fully set in before the Month of March. I am thoroughly convinced, that had I been a fortnight sooner there I could have made my passage Round the Cape into the South Sea with the greatest ease.

I have forgot to remark that I have made it a rule to Issue Flour & Fruit in lieu of one half their allowance of Salt Beef.

[Page 234]
229.

The Tract I have taken to this place, which I endeavor'd to make of some avail, has been productive of no New circumstances. The Sea appears evidently free of any considerable Lands, as I did not meet with the least signs that could lead me to an Idea that I was any way in the neighbourhood of it. The weather likewise was too boisterous & Cloudy to make many observations, the most material of which might have been the line of no Variation. In the Lat^d. 39°:51'S 26°:11'West I had 3°:17' East Varⁿ., but I had no opportunity afterwards to observe it, untill in the lat^d. 35°:30'S 5°:21'W, when I found it to be 11°:35'W^t.

I wish'd much to have fixed the situation of the Isle Grand, but a Strong SW Gale put me past it. I was equally unfortunate in my intentions to make Tristan de Cunha, which however I believe I have determined, does not lie between the lat^d of 37°:00'S & 37°:37'S between the Long^d of 16°:30'W^t. & 12°:15'West as I have fully remarked on the 11th. May.

The Time Keeper which the Board of Longitude favored me with, made by M^r. Kendal, has performed remarkably well. The difference of Climate we have been in has made it fluctuate a little in its Rate, but the changes have been very trifling, so much so, that I consider it the most superior Watch I have yet met with, & for its performance hitherto deserves to be deemed excellent.

It gave the Long^d of this place 18°:47':40"E whereas it is said to be in 18°:33'E a difference of only 14':40" in Long^d equal to 12 Geographical Miles, and is by what I could ascertain by my Lunar observations nearly its greatest error in any one part of the Voyage.

The lowest we have had the Therm^r. was

[Page 235]

230.

32 Degrees, but it is to be remembered that the temperature of the Air was 2 Degrees below whatever it is marked, as I found by frequent experiment, the Therm^r. being kept in a Safe to prevent it being broke; so that 30 became the real height.

The Grand object now became the refreshment of my People, about which I heartily set to work, having only one Man not able to do duty which was occasion'd by a fall.

After Saluting the Fort from a Message previous to it from the Resident M^r. Brand, that he would return any number Gun for Gun, I went on shore and made the necessary arrangements with that Gentleman to Supply the Ship with whatever we wanted, the full authority lying with him, and he immediately sent off Dispatches to the Governor at Cape Town to acquaint him of my Arrival.

A Dutch Ship being in Table Bay bound for Europe and waiting only for a Wind to carry her out; by this conveyance I wrote to the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty, and requested M^r. Brand to direct that care might be taken to get it conveyed on Board, which he afterwards informed me was done.

I now directed that fresh Meat and Soft Bread should be issued at the usual rate of one pound P^r. Man each Day with a Pint of Wine, likewise as many Cabbages, Bunches of Celery, Onions & Leeks as were not only necessary to their broth, but to make the other part of the Meal pleasant and wholesome; and having made the necessary arrangements for the Ships Duty to be carried on, every one began to be employed in their particular departments as circumstances

[Page 236]

231.

would admit of. The Cooper I fixed a Tent for, and the Armourer I was permitted to have at work in the Smiths Shop; finding him in Coals, which was much better than erecting my own Forge.

The Ship wanted to be caulked in every part, and to be repaired about the Quarters & Waist where the Sea has laid us quite open. My own Carpenters were not able to complete this in time. I was therefore under the necessity to engage some Artificers, and to purchase some necessary Boards and Plank to repair the damage that had been done to us. The Sails and Rigging had of course suffered proportionally, and the former particularly wanted Repair, which was done by the People on board.

I had before been at this place and at Table Bay when with Cap^t. Cook in his last Voyage, and I was therefore particularly surprised to find a great change in the prices of Provisions and every other Article. I could not get Mutton or Beef under four pence P^r. lb or four Spanish Dollars by the Sheep, which when I was here before cost no more than two Dollars. I took the Sheep at first in preference to buying by the pound, but this I found would not Answer as the Sheep run so very small, and I therefore bought the Sheep after they were killed at four pence P^r. lb. The Tails of those Sheep were equally small as the largest did not weigh above 6½ lbs, for at the Cape Town I have seen them weigh ten: however the Mutton altho smaller, was much sweeter & preferable to the larger kind.

On my arrival I found a Dutch East Indiaman just come in that had left Europe the last of Jan^y. in comp^y. with

[Page 237]

232.

three others not yet arrived, one of these came in two days afterwards – This last had a great many sick men on board, but the other I was told had only a few. The other Ships were still hourly expected and remained so on my leaving this place. The Senior Captain, or Commodore as they call him, told me he parted with one of the missing Ships off Cape Finister, [Finisterre] and that they all had particular orders to touch here before the[y] proceeded to the East Indies. It is a striking circumstance, to remark, that it could be possible for a Ship (as we have done in this) by sailing five weeks earlier, to have employed no more time in performing more than double the task; for even putting it on the footing of the arrival of the Ship that I found here and had come in only three days before us, the difference that remained then, was only between the 23^d. Nov^r. the time I sailed ~~from~~ and the last of Jan^y. that he past the Downs – To make up for which I had been off the Coast of Terra del Fuego 30 Days from the lat^d of 59° to 61° & the Passage from thence here one Month. To account for these great differences which are frequently found to take place between the Dutch Ships and ours in their passages to those remote parts, I must leave to those who are better acquainted with that Nation.

A few Days having elapsed I went to the Cape Town to see His Excellency Governor Van der Graaf, who received me with much politeness and Sympathised much on our embarrassed situation off Cape Horn, scarce believing that any Ship would have ventured to persist in a passage that way in so unfavorable a

[Page 238]

233.

Season of the Year. He requested to know if every thing was doing for me at False Bay that I wished, as he had ordered every assistance to be given to me, and all supplies of whatever kind the[re] might be, to be delivered instantly on my application: all which was fully complied with great readiness by the Resident M^r. Brand.

I spent this day with him, in the course of which he often expressed a peculiar joy at the prospect of a reestablishment of friendship and goodwill between England and the States. His Majesty's Ship the Vestal he told me had been there from the 11th. March to the 8th. April So that Captⁿ. Straghan arrived at Table Bay 12 Days earlier than I did at Staten Land, having past it the 24th. March & he sailed the day before me from England and had touched at Madeira the same as I had done at Teneriff.

I met afterwards some of their sick Men that had been left behind, and who applied to me to take them the Voyage, but this was out of my power – They said they had 38 Sick on their arrival – were 14 Days going to Madeira, & had stayed 6 Days there.

After taking leave of the Governor, I spent the next day with Col Gordon the Commander of the Troops, to whom I am obliged for some seeds and a few Plants which he gave me to add to the already abundance of other valuable things at Otaheite. This Gentleman will be better known when he publishes his Travels into the Caffrae Country, an enterprise which was not only of the most hazardous Nature; but from it only will

[Page 239]

234.

a ~~proper~~ can we be tolerably acquainted with that country – The World will also be benefited by his general draught of it, which it appears to me by his indefatigable labours to be very accurately delineated.

The only thing that I now wanted was a written authority or permission for provisions and liquors to be put on board the Ship, without which according to the law here, neither could be Shipped, and this I found was forwarded to me without delay. The Fiscal whose office these kind of Papers go through, (as well as most others) and who always attests them had certainly sent it without loss of time; but with it was announced I had a certain number of Dollars to pay as a fee for such a necessary material. I objected to this private kind of imposition, and I heard no more of it, afterwards.

This Town is considerably increased within these eight Years and its respectability with regard to Force seems to have kept way with its other enlargements.

The original Fort is vastly improved and enlarged, with outworks of considerable Strength at the back of it where is the only accessible part, by which means, if they are kept in good order, landing for an attack at the upper or East part of the Bay will now become not only a doubtful enterprise but a laborious one. But the principal part which their attention has been particularly drawn to, is the West points opposite to Penguin or Roben Isl^d, which commands the entrance – Their Works here are considerably enlarged and have exceeding heavy

[Page 240]
235.

Cannon. This place with a sufficient number of Troops will have great power and prevent Fleet of Ships from getting within two Miles of the Town, at which distance they may be advanced within 1½ mile or less of several considerable Batteries close to the shore on the East side, which are capable of doing the greatest execution.

The Bay of itself is easy of access, and the depths of Water are gradual from 7 to 3 fm^s. to the southward of the West point. Without this which may be called the Road, the depth of Water is greater, 17 or 18 fm^s. being between Roben Island and Lyons Rump, gradually decreasing towards the East shore.

But the entrance into this Bay is not confined to the pass between Roben Island and Lyons Rump – There is one equally good on the NE of the Island, yet either is open to the Batteries in advances towards the Town: so that upon the whole, this place is now very secure, without a considerable Force is opposed against it, unless landing could be made eligible a few leagues to the southward on the Coast, and a descent be made between the Sugar Loaf Hill and Table Mountain at the back of the Town. But this could not be done secretly as no Ships can be on the Coast without it being known, so that their Indifference to that side may thoroughly be warranted.

They have now 4500 Dutch and Wittenburg Troops, and their attention to Military order & discipline

[Page 241]
236.

appears to be rigid and pursued with great ardour, they ~~however~~ nevertheless consider their situation ~~their~~ precarious in time of War, and have monthly signals, which are communicated to all their Shipping, that denote on their arrival, whether the Place in the possession of themselves or an Enemy.

A spacious and extensive Building is now nearly finished which was begun about the Year 1780: It is a commodious & well plann'd Hospital situated with an open prospect to the Sea near the Fort; but however elligible in itself, rests much blame with those who plann'd its situation, as it will become a nuisance to the Town of which it is now a part. It would be superfluous in me to remark the neatness and many other circumstances respecting this Town already so generally known, & which appears to me to have had no material alteration. Every thing seems to be the same both in Manners and Customs, and the deserved advantages of Industry keep pace with all their Transactions; for however they may have been remarked for their keenness in their dealings, they seem to do little other than comply with the universal maxim of Trade – to get as much as they can openly & fairly and what more do we meet with in any part of the World.

Slaves are a property here as well as in the West Indies and the number imported by the French (to whome that Trade has been confined) from Madagascar, Mosambique, Sumatra & Mallaca have been considerable, but it appears there is in some degree a stop put to this Trade, for the Seller

[Page 242]

237.

has now only permission to part with as many as can pay for the supplies he absolutely is in need of. To this if the Police would oblige the owners of these Poor Wretches consigned to constant drudgery, to cloath and feed them properly it would be much to their honor and humanity, for it is distressing to see some of them carrying weighty burthens, naked, or what is worse, in such Rags that one would imagine could not fail to reproach the Owners of a want of decency and compassion in not relieving such a degree of wretchedness of which they were the cause, & had every call on their humanity to remove. Several of these poor Wretches I have seen pick up the most Offensive Offals and clean them for their food. But I understand it is among the lower Class of Inhabitants that they suffer so much, for not having always private employment for the Slaves that belong to them, and not constant opportunities to hire them out, they are then considered a burthen, the Proprietor not recollecting the duty he owes to their support.

In my return in 1789 I understood Slaves were well regulated.

Notwithstanding the oppulence and great plenty of this country, it is at times (altho' but seldom) subject to a great degree of want – About two years since they experienced in some measure a famine in all their Settlements, but this is a circumstance that rarely happens, on the contrary they have great abundance of the necessaries of Life.

This however is gathered from detach'd Farms through a large Tract of Country wherever the land is elligible for cultivation, for by far the greatest part is nothing but

[Page 243]
238.

barren Mountains, and in general most of the lower grounds a loose Sandy Soil – The Hills also mostly partake of it, which with immense Rocks and Stones constitute the whole range of Mountains in the neighbourhood of this Coast. Wood is very scarce of any tolerable size, but there are on some parts of the Coast (as I am told) Trees that are sufficiently large to be fit for the common uses of Shipping; but in general the Hills have a plenty of Bushes very good for the purposes of Fuel.

In places where pains are taken in planting the Fir & Oak, they grow luxuriantly, and as the Winds frequently blow with great violence both in Summer & Winter Months, the Oak is become of great consequence in sheltering all their Gardens. They are planted very close together, and after being kept carefully pruned and grown to about Twenty feet high, they become not only great shelter, but even a barrier to the Plat they surround.

It now occured to me that in visiting many foreign places amidst Captⁿ. Cook's late new discoveries, we used to attend to the growth of the Trees to judge of the prevailing Winds, and in attending to the same particular here where the trees were exposed to all quarters, I observed the branches had, as I had seen before, one common tendency – This was to the NW and of course agreeable to my general maxim the prevailing Wind was SE^t., but this is only a Summer Wind at this place, and as the Tree is then in a state of growing and the branches naturally taking any warp that may be given them, it is obvious they

[Page 244]
239.

may incline in an opposite direction, which a contrary Wind equally lasting and strong cannot alter, when the young branches have become firm Wood as the other parts of the Tree. It therefore appears, that to judge of the Winds from such

circumstances only prove, that which is common in the Spring or Summer Months. However upon an exposed Coast the Sea Winds upon all Trees have generally a bad effect.

But to return to the general matter of my account – There are many pretty and desirable situations in this Country – the principal of which lie between the Cape Town & False Bay, directly in that Road under the highest land in the Vicinity of the Promontory, called the Table Hill – a tremendous height of Rocks that draws the attention of all Travellers who ever pass it, and from whence a Chain of Hills continue to the Sea which terminates the Southern extremity of this quarter of the Globe.

In this Road are many Gentlemens Houses neatly laid out with Gardens – some of them have Avenues of Pine Trees and other ornaments to their property that not only have the appearance of wealth, but taste. Yet this is not common with respect to the latter, unless the Eye had never been accustomed or the judgement to express it, but by streight lines. Too much preciseness and formality certainly affect the beauty of their designs, as they might surely follow the perfections of Nature without ~~rejecting~~ destroying their views in rejecting its redundancy. It is here however clipt with an unmercifull hand, and the Myrtle and other Evergreen Walks which would be beautifull of themselves, are made tiresome to the Eye by being formed into Pyramids and strange Figures.

[Page 245]

240.

In this Neighbourhood which is the only fertile part of the Country hereabouts, is the famous Constantia. Here are two Estates of that Name which produce the remarkable fine Wine so scarce to be had truly genuine. I was assured they only made 80 leagners Annually of prime Wine between them, and that in bad Years only 18 – but its excellence is universally allowed, and none but those two Estates produce the same quality. Very fine Madeira is notwithstanding to be met with at the Cape, and where it is well made & of a proper Age it is equal to any Wine whatever. Of the Article Wine, the Country produces 2000 leagners every season and about 800 leagners of Brandy – This with Corn, Live Cattle, & Sheep, are the Staples of this Country. The Flour is so very sandy, that at first it creates a disgust to every one, and it is difficult to say what is the cause of it, but is generally allowed to be occasioned by the softness of the Mill stones, which I rather suppose, than admit some illiberal conjectures to the contrary.

The distance from Cape Town to False Bay is computed about 25 Miles – one third from the Cape Town the Roads have been taken much pains with, and is pleasant Riding except in high Winds; but from that to False Bay they are very

sandy & it is heavy travelling. The Road is across an extensive flat country which is limited by a Range of high Mountains on the East the Country of the Hottentots, & by the Cape Mountains in the West. When within eight Miles of False Bay where the High Road begins by the Sea side, there is established a Post of Soldiers to prevent any communication of the two places without leave, so that no one can take this route without a passport. Near this

[Page 246]
241.

Post is a lake of Water formed by the Sea which at the part generally passed is about $\frac{1}{4}$ Mile Wide & 3 or 4 feet deep, but more or less as the entrance is barr'd or not barred up with sand, it is however fordable with safety, the bottom being firm, so that not only Horses but all the Waggon's cross it.

I expected from the accounts given me in my passage from England from on board an English South Sea Whaler, called the British Queen, to have found some of these Ships at the Cape, but on enquiry I was told not one of them came there, the place of Rendezvous being in and about Saldanha Bay. In conversation at Col^l. Gordons Table I found these Ships had given great offence by their conduct at that place, or rather upon the whole by frequenting it; the Dutch having established a fishery there, and where they resorted annually to kill Seals for the oil. This they asserted was in a great measure done away by the frequency of our Shipping using that place, these animals having left it, and of course affected their principal resource for that article.

The Melancholy circumstance also of the loss of the Grosvenor East Indiaman became part also of the conversation. On this subject Col. Gordon expressed great concern that it had been understood from him that hopes were still maintained to flatter the affectionate wishes of the surviving Friends of those unfortunate People – He said he had in his Travels in the Caffrae Country met with a Native who had described to him there was a Woman among his Country Men who had a Child, and that as she frequently embraced it

[Page 247]
242.

[it] cried most violently; but this was all he could understand, and being on his return home with his health much impaired by the fatigue, all that he could do was to make a Friend of the Native by promises, and he accordingly assured him of the greatest rewards of every thing that was valuable to him on conditions that he would take some letter to this Woman for him, & bring him back a token of

her being there. Accordingly he wrote letters in English French & Dutch desiring that as an answer, any sign or mark might be returned by either writing with a burnt stick, or any other thing she might devise to assure him she was there, and that every effort would be made to ensure her safety & escape. But the Caffrae altho apparently delighted with the plan he had undertaken never returned to him, or did he hear any more by the means he had pointed out to him, to convey it through the Hottentots, where he might himself have joined the Colonel and got his reward. From this, all that he concluded was, that this unfortunate poor Woman, was certainly seen by the Caffrae as he described; but he firmly believed she could never have supported an existence for many Months among such a savage set of People, and that he scarcely thought it possible for any of the shipwreck'd people to be alive, and therefore was peculiarly unhappy that any of their remaining Friends had faith through him that any thing could be done in favor of them.

The Governor had used his endeavors at an

[Page 248]
243.

early period of this affair and some expeditions were set forward with great honor to his humanity & feelings, but they were all without effect.

On my return to False Bay I began to expedite the duty of the Ship with my utmost exertions being determined to get to sea without a moments loss of time, but this being the depth of Winter and the weather being frequently Stormy with much Rain I could not get on with so much dispatch as I at first thought might be done.

I now got the Time Keeper on shore to establish its error, & Rate of going and began to make observations for that purpose whenever an opportunity offered.

The very severe weather I had experienced made it necessary for a general examination of the provisions & Stores – The Bread in the Bread Room I feared was damaged, and I considered that from the Violent motion & working of the Ship other things might be equally hurt & lost of which I could here only get a knowledge of. I directed therefore to examine every species of provisions, but there proved to be nothing hurt so as to be useless except two Pun^s. of Pork and 2500 lbs of Bread, besides 30 Bags that lay at the place where the leak was. Those were losses that could not possibly be prevented, and were replaced among my other Supplies. The Powder also was damaged and in airing & sifting the Gunner represented a want of Three Barrals to complete up to a sufficiency for the use of the Ship, and this also I ordered to be in readiness for us to.

[Page 249]

244.

It was the 25th June before the Carpenters had completed their work and I then payed them the money for their labour allowed by Government. The Sailmakers and armourer also I paid at the rate of 15 Stivers p^r. day. I saw no article in my Instructions to authorise this, but I knew it to be constantly done in like situations.

On the 13th. The Dublin East Indiaman arrived from England commanded by C[aptain]. Smith, he put in here to water the Ship. On Board was a party of the 77th. Reg^t. under Col^l. Balfour. They were all well, and left us on the 24th.

Capt Smith had three Time Keepers & a pocket watch all of M^r. Arnolds make, and as he observed I was finding the Rate of mine, of M^r. Kendals, he requested I would discover what error his might have gathered in the course of the Passage. One of the T. Keepers however had received a blow in the Ship & was stopt, but the others on the day he sailed he got safe, with their errors from mean time at Greenwich and Rate of going.

Out of the whole only the small pocket Watch or Chronometer, had performed tolerably well.

On the 30th. I was all ready for Sea with every person in the most perfect health & spirits, and I finally closed my busyness with M^r. Brand leaving with him letters to the Admiralty & other necessary papers & accounts to the different Boards, to be sent by the first safe conveyance. My publick acknowledgement is now due to M^r. Brand for his readiness to serve us, and his punctual and honorable way of proceeding.

I could lay in no great stock of Sheep for the use of my People & Officers, for having no place to keep them except on Deck, I had little reason to hope I could preserve them alive many hours, or prevent them from being washed

[Page 250]

245.

or prevent them from being washed overboard, having a Winters passage to perform through a Track where the Winds are strong & the Sea high.

I had now been here 38 Days during which time every person greatly benefited by the abundance of Vegetables and Fresh Meat that they daily received, and their allowance of a pint of Wine a day, which was of a very good quality.

With these advantages I sailed on the 1st. July near a month earlier than my most sanguine expectations had allowed me to think of when I left Cape Horn, and is of great importance with respect to my arrival at Otaheite.

I have now determined to touch at Van diemens Land to wood & Water and afterwards at Dusky Bay New Zeland if wind & circumstances will permit without much loss of time. Dusky Bay I mean to go into, with an intent to carry the Cloth Plant round with me, but this is only a secondary consideration – To be as soon as it is possible at the Society Islands depends the success of my undertaking, & therefore I have fixed my route to be to the southward of New Zeland, where I expect I shall find the prevailing winds to be westerly. I shall endeavor to pursue a new Track by which means it will be of use to future Navigators, and the Voyage may very properly, so far, be said to be on discoveries. On such a piece of service all voyages have been considered as matter of publick concern, and I trust the few Men who ~~who~~ now again undertake it with me in the depth of winter, will hereafter be rewarded for their chearfullness and good behaviour. They began the Winter off Cape Horn in the Month of March, equal to our September, and they have no chance of ending it but with the spring in the Month

[Page 251]

246.

of October – In justice therefore to them, it is my duty to mention it, as they will be the only people that ever Navigated these Seas a whole Winter in such tempestuous weather and with so few Advantages.

The Observations I was able to make in this Bay were not numerous but they were exceedingly good and as many as opportunities would allow me. The Time Keeper on the 29th. June when I took it on board was 0^h:3':33", 2 too Slow for Mean Time at Green^{ch}. and its Rate of going 0':3" loosing on Mean Time, and is the Rate I carry on. My Lunar Observations make the Long^d. of this place 18°:48':34"E – The Lat^d. 34°:11':34"S°. The Variation of the Compass on shore 24°:04'W but the Variation on Board 22°:28'Wst. It was high Water at $\frac{3}{4}$ past Two and flowed nearly six feet. The Observations were all made in M^r. Brands House.

The Longitude of Simons Bay as established by the New Requisite Tables is 18°:33'E. The situation of the Cape Town is certainly determined with exactness,

& I therefore take it as allowed in $18^{\circ}:23':15''E^t$. Now to compare the relative situation with that of the Cape Promontory however it has been determined appears not to have been exactly done. The situation of the Cape from a plan I have made of this Bay, is certainly (Speaking to the nearest mile) 3 Miles in long^d East of Simons Town. That this place also is to the East of the Cape Town can be observed by the Meridian passing a tract of country far beyond the parrallel of its latitude, and if I was to rely on information I should fix it at 5 or 6 Miles in long^d. The Cape Promontory I therefore conceive is more to the East than as established, and is not under the same meridian with the Cape Town. If there are a sufficient number of Observ^s. to fix the Long^d. of Simons Bay, the Cape should be determined

[Page 252]

247a.

by its situation with respect to it, which is three Miles to the East of Simons Town.

I am positively certain the latitude of the Cape Promontory is not $34^{\circ}:29'S$ but $34^{\circ}:23'S$ as I have had very satisfactory observations off it with excellent Instruments of Ramsdens & my observations agree with those I made in the year 1776. I have given all my observations fair and without biass and the Long^d may be a trifle too far to the East – I have therefore taken the long^d from the Requisite Tables as the most exact & from that I find the error of the Time Keeper from Mean Time at Greenwich.

[Page 253]

247.

Latt^d of False Bay by M^r. Bayly - $34^{\circ}:11';4''S^{\circ}$

Long^d 18:21:30E^t

Variation 22:16 – West

Dip of the South end of the Needle - $46^{\circ}:46'$

High water at 2^h:50' in the Afternoon on the full & change Days Rise & fall at the greatest 5^F:5^{In}

Mⁿ. Bromd Ebbs & flows every 6 hours 6:00

A French Captain in 1785 made the Varia 22":56' West

[Page 254]
247a.

[Duplicate of 247(a) above.]

[Page 255]
248.

[Blank page]

[Page 256]
249.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y 2^d. July 1788

1 NW Mod^t. and fair W^r.

2

3 “ “ “ “ “ Fired a Gun Signal for the Cutter – Returned &
hoisted in the Boats – Re^d. 2 Sheep for the People.

4 “ “

5 At 4 Weighed and made Sail – Saluted the Governor
with 13 Guns w^{ch}. was returned wth. the same
6 number.

7

8 “ “ “ “ “ Cape Good Hope WNW 4 leagues & Cape False
ESE from whence I take my departure allowing in
9 3 2 S¹/₂E N^o. Lat^d. 34°:23'S^o. & Long^d. 18°:36'E

10 3 6 SbE

11 4 4 SSE

12 5 2 “ “ 59 Cape False NNE¹/₂E 6 leagues

1 4 3 “ “ “ Set Fore T. M^t. Steer^g Sail

2 4 3

3 4 3

4 4 4 NNW All steering Sails Set

5 5

6 5 4

7 6

8 7 “ “ 57½ Fresh Breezes & Cloudy. Cape Legullus ENE
Cape Good Hope NbW½W just discernable – Dis^t.
3 6 ab^t. 18 leag^s. Got the Anchors in board & Cables
9 unbent.

3 6

10 6 6

11 7 4 At 10 Cape Legullus NNE dis^t. 8 leagues.

12 7 4 “ “ 58½ Very Hazy W^r. could not see the Land distinctly
The part about Cape Legullus is low land, at least,
88 much lower than any part of the Coast.

15323

15411

Merid Alt^d
O Center 31°:38'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S51°E	94	35°:22'S	35°:25'S	19°:52'E		

[Page 257]

250.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. 3 July 1788

1 8 SE NW. Fresh Gales and cloudy W^r.

2 8

3 8

4 7 “ West Squally in Steering Sails

5 7

6 7 6 “ “ Close Reefed the Miz. Top S^l

7 6 4

8 6 6 WSW 60 Passing Squalls with light Rain

9 6 6

10 6 6

11 6 6

12 6 6

1 7 4

2 7 4

3 7 3

4 7

5 6 5

6 7

7 7

8 6 NWbW 56¹/₄ D^o W^r. set Fore Top M^t. & Lower Steering Sail

9 6 6 WSW Empl^d. cleaning below. Carpenters repair^g the Launch. Served fresh Mutton to all hands.

10 7 “ West

11 6 6

12 7 “ “ “ Fresh gale & Squally with a Swell from the SW.

169
15411
15580

Merid Alt^d
O Center 30°:56'

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d . D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.			
E17°S 163 36°:09'S 36°:27'S 23°:05'E ^t . 23°:28':50"E ^t .			

[Page 258]
251.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Friday 4th. July 1788

1 6 6 SEbE½E WNW Fresh Gale and a following Sea. Set Mⁿ. Top Mast
Steerg^s Sails and larb^d. Lower Steerg S^l.

2 6 6

3 6 2

4 6 4 “ WbN 59½ At 4^h:7' Lat^d. 36°:12'S°. Long^d. T.K 24°:2':50"East

5 6 4

6 7 “ “ “ Squally and Rain. In M. T. M^t. Steer^g Sails & Larb^d.
Lower d^o.

7 6 3

8 6 “ “ 58

9 6 2

10 6 2

11 6 “ “

12 6 4 “ “ 56½ D^o W^r. In Lower Steer^g Sail

1 7

2 7

3 6 Lightning in the West

4 6 6 56

5 5 4

6 6 “ “ “ Set Steering Sails

7 6 2

8 6 “ “ 58

9 5 4 Squally & Rain at Times

10 5 Cleaned below. Carpenters empl^d. repairing the Launch.

11 4 4

12 5 4 “ WNW 58¾ Mod^t. And open Cloudy W^r. Under Lower & Main T. Mast Steering Sails. Few Birds Seen. Not so much following Sea.

140

15580

15728

Merid Alt^d

O Center 30°:38'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
E9°S	149	36°:32'S	36°:23'S	26°:07'E ^t .		

[Page 259]

252.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturd^y. 5 July 1788

1 5 4 SEbE½E WNW Mod. and open Cloudy W^r.

2 5 4

3 5 4

4 5 4 Varia. 59½

5 4

6 4 SW

7 3 2

8 1 4 57¼ Light Airs & Cloudy

9 1

10 1

11 “

Calm

12 “ 59

1 3 “ “ “ Light Breezes & Fair W^r.

2 3

3 3

4 3 61 Light in the NE

5 2 6 SSE East

6 3 4 SEbS EbN

7 4 2 SE ENE

8 3 6 SE½S 62½ Mod. & dark Cloudy W^r.

9 4 4 SSE East Carp^s. Empl^d. as yesterday, and the People in
Shifting their bedding into clean Hammocks.

10 4 6

11 4 6

12 5 “ “ Cloudy W^r. & Squally. In double Reefs.

82

15728

15810

Merid Alt^d

O Center 30:15

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S68°E	78	37°:01'S	36°:59'S	27°:37'E		

[Page 260]

253.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sund^y. July 6th. 1788 Observ^s.

1 4 SSE E^t. Fresh Gale & dark cloudy W^r.

2 4

3 5 4 SbW SEbE

4 5 63³/₄

5 5 2 SbE¹/₂E E^t.

6 5 4 SSE “ “ Squally & threatening bad W^r. Down
T.G. Yards & close Reefed the Top
7 4 6 Sails

8 3 6 “ 64

9 3 6 SEbS EbN

10 3 4 Very severe Squalls and Lightning
w^{ch}. obliged us to furl all but the Fore
11 1 SE ENE Sail

12 1 65

1 1 2 “ “ “ Very heavy Rain Thunder & Light^g.

2 “ 4

3 “

Calm

4 “ 62¼

5 1 6 ESE N Light breezes & a confused Sea.

Made Sail. Up M.T.G. Yard out

6 2 Reefs & set Fore & F.T.M^t. Steer^g
Sail

7 2 4 At 21^h:8' Lat^d. 38°:11'S
Long^d. T. K. = 29°:44':40"E

8 3 65¼ Fair W^r. and cloudy. Mustered the
Ships Company. Saw them all clean
9 3 4 NWbN & read the Articles of War.

10 3 4 Served Fresh Mutton to all Hands.

11 2 6

12 2 1 “ NW 67½ Fair W^r. & much head Sea. Some
Albatrosses & Sheerwaters about.

70

15810

15880

Merid Alt^d

O Center 29°:10'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R	D.R	T.K.	L & T.K.
S38°E	77	38°:12'S°.	37°:55'S°.	28°:37'E ^t	30°:3'E ^t	

[Page 261]

254.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Monday July 7th. 1788
Observations

1 2 ESE NW Cloudy W^r. wth. intervals of Sun Shine.

					Some Skipjacks seen, Sheerwaters & Pintada Birds.
2	2	4		N	
3	2				
4	1	4	“	“	66¾ At 3 ^h :41' Lat ^d . 38°:13'S Long ^d . T. K 30°:21¾'E
5	1				Varia p ^r . Azths.
6	1	SEbE	NEbE		A Compss – 26°:06'W d°. turned - - 26:35
7	“	“	Calm		B Compss – 26:27 d°. Turned - - 27:42
					Mean 26:42W
8	1	5	ESE	NNE	67½ Flows of Wind at times like being in the neighbourhood of Land.
9	4	4	SEbE	NEbE	
10	4	6			
11	5				
12	5	2			67½ Squalls of Rain & very Severe Lightning w th . distant Thunder
1	4	5			
2	4				
3	3	6	“	“	
4	5		“	“	68 D° W ^r . Dble Reefed the Top Sails
5	4	4		Varia	
6	4	4	SE	ENE	
7	3	4	SEbS	EbN	
8	3		SSE	E ^t .	65¾ Thunder Light ^g and Rain & very dark Gloomy W ^r . and Confused Sea. Saw a Whale.
9	2	5			
10	1	4	“	“	“ Very bad W ^r ., & violent Winds threatening from every quarter. Took in all Sails but the Fore Sail

11 3 2 ESE SSW & got down M.T.G Yard.

12 2 4 EbS SbE 57 At Noon blowing Strong wth. most severe Thunder
& Lightning – Under the Fore Sail & Miz Stay Sail.

73
15880
15953

No Observ.

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K. Corrected from
E9°S	64	None	38°:22'S	29°:57'E		Obs. on the day following

[Page 262]
255.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesday July 8th. 1788

1 2 4 EbS SbE Strong Gales with severe Thunder, Lightning and
Rain

2 2 4 ENE SE

3 2 4 “ “ More Mod^t. Set Dble Reefed Top Sails & Main S^l.

4 2 3 EbS SbE 60¼

5 2 2 NbE EbN A very confused Sea and Riplings like Strong
Currents.

6 2 Varia

7 “
Calm

8 “ 61 Calm & very severe Lightning. The Air emitting
frequently a sulphurous smell

9 1 4 SEbS SbW

10 2 3 “ “ “ Hard Squalls and dark Gloomy weather, severe
Lightning from every Quarter. Handed all the Sails
but the Fore Sail.

12 2 ESE S° 59½

1 3 4 SEbE SSW “ Set the Main Sail

2 3 4

3 3 4 SWbW

4 3 4 57½ Hard squalls and Rain but not so much Lightning

5 4 4

6 5 2 SWbS

7 5 6 “ “ Set close Reef'd Main Top Sail

8 6 “ SW 56½ Strong Gale & Cloudy W^r. Many Birds coming before the Squalls

9 6

10 5 6 Employed cleaning and Airing the Ship with Fires.

11 6

12 6 56½ Strong Gales & Cloudy W^r. Pintada Birds
Albatrosses, Blue Petterals, Dark brown
Sheerwaters & Port Egmont Hens.
Under close Reef'd Main Top Sail & Courses

80

15953

16033

Merid Alt^d

O Center 30°:14'

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	The error of 32
N51°E	93	37°:22'S	37°:55'S	31°:29'E			is divided
							between yesterday
							& to day.

[Page 263]

[Blank page]

[Page 264]

255.

[Duplicate copy of Page 255 [Page 262] above.]

[Page 265]

256.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. July 9th. 1788

1 5 6 SE½E SW Strong Gales & Cloudy with Squalls & at times Small
Rain. A Great Sea from the SW.

2 5 6

3 5 6

4 5 4 “ 56

5 6

6 6 6 SWbS

7 7

8 6 54¾

9 5 6

10 5 4

11 5 2

12 5 2 55½

1 5 4

2 6 2

3 6 4

4 6 5 56½

5 7

6 6 4

7 6 More Mod^t. Out 4th. Reef Main & set close Reefs
Fore top Sail.

8 6 56

9 5 6 ESE SbW

Cleaned below

10 5 4

11 5 4

12 5 6 56½ Very Fresh Gale & Cloudy W^r. Birds as Yesterday
Under Courses, Close Reefed Fore & Triple
Reefed Maoin Top Sails

143

16033

16176

Merid Alt^d

O Center 30°:13'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
E3°S	140	37:30S	37°:32'S	34:26E	34°:54'E ^t .	

[Page 266]

257.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. July 10th. 1788 Observations

1 5 6 ESE SbW Very fresh Gale & Cloudy W^r.

2 6

3 6 EbS South

4 5 4 East SSE 56

5 7

6 7 Strong Gales & Squally – handed Fore Top S^l.

7 5	EbS	S°.		At 3 ^h :11' Lat ^d . 37°:22'S
				Long ^d . T. K. = 35°:13¾'E
8 5 4			55	Very hard Squalls & Rain
				Varia p ^r . Azths.
9 6				A Compss - 29°:26'W
				D°. turned - 30:03
10 4				B Compss
				d°. Turned
				Mean - 29:44W
11 5				
12 5	“	“	54	
1 4				
2 4 2				
3 4	ESE	SW		
4 4			55	
5 4 3	EbS	S°.		
6 4 3				
7 4 3	East	SbE		
8 4 3			54	
9 4 4	E½S			Cleaned and dried below. Albatrosses
				Sheerwaters & Pintada Birds about us.
10 4 5				
11 4 5				
12 4 5	“		56½	Very bad Weather but got a tolerable
				Observation. Under Courses – Much Sea
120				from the Southward which frequently breaks
16176				over us.
16296				
	Merid Alt ^d			
	O Center	31°:12'		

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N59°E	101	36°:38'S	36°:26'S°.	36°:14'E		

[Page 267]

258.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Remarks Frid^y. July 11th. - 1788

1	4	EbS	S°.	Strong Gales and squally with Rain & dark Cloudy W ^r . Much Sea from the Southward.
---	---	-----	-----	---

2 4

3 4

4	3	6	E½S	57½
---	---	---	-----	-----

5 4

6 4

7 4 2

8	4	4	58¼
---	---	---	-----

9	4	East	SbE
---	---	------	-----

10 4

11 4 4

12	4	4	59
----	---	---	----

1	3	3	E½S
---	---	---	-----

2 3 3

3 3 3

4	3	3	“	59
---	---	---	---	----

5 3 6

6 4 2

7 4 2

8 4 4 “ 60½

9 5 East Cleaned and dried below.

10 5

11 5 EbN SSE 61½

12 4 Very unsettled Weather – The Wind moderating.
Sea confused & Clouds gathering heavy in the
NW. Few Birds about. The Pintada Birds &
79 Albatrosses & Blue Petterals gone w^{ch}. I find
16296 fortells the end of the South^{ly}. ~~Wind~~ Gale as they
16395 keep to the Southward unless blown up to y^e
North.

Merid Alt^d
O Center

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N43°E	96	35°:28'S	35°:25'S	37°:34'W	39°:12'E ^t	

[Page 268]
259.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturd^y. July 12th. 1788 Observations

1 2 4 E^t. Varia Mod. and cloudy. Wore Ship &
out all but 1st. Reefs

2 1 5 SbE

3 1 6 S° ESE “ Fair W^r. aired all Wet Sails & opened
all Hatches

4 2 “ 63 At 3^h:32' Lat^d. 35°:30'S
Long^d. T. K. = 39°:14':24"E

5 3 4 SbW½W SEbE

6 3 4 SSW½W SE

7 3 4 SbW½W SEbE

8 3 62½

9 2 4

10 2 4

11 2 2

12 2 62½

1 2 Up Main T.G.Y^d. & set the Sail

2 2

3 2 SSW SE

4 1 6 62½

5 1 6 SbW SEbE

6 2 Up Fore T.G. Yard & out all At 20^h:21' Lat^d. 36°:07'S
Reefs. Long^d. T. K. = 39°:5':30"E

7 3 S°. ESE Varia p^r. Azths.

A Compss - 29°:09'W

8 3 62 Fair W^r. Hung all wet things d°. Turned - 29:28

up to dry, cleaned thoroughly B Compss - 30:5

9 3 SbW SEbE below & the People afterwards d°. Turned - 29:29

empl^d. Washing their Cloaths. Mean = 29:33W

10 3 3 SSW SE

11 4 1

12 3 7 SW SSE 63½ Fair W^r. & Cloudy. All Sails Set.

62

16395

16457

300 Error 13th May

16157

Merid Alt^d
O Center 31°:46½'

	Latitude		Longitude			
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S2°E	51	36:19½S	36:24S	37°:36'E	39°:09'E ^t .	

[Page 269]
260.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Sund ^y .	July 13 th .	1788	Observations
1	3	4	SWbW	SbE		Mod. & Fair	W ^r .			
2	5	2								
3	5	6								
4	6					“	64½	TK ^d .		At 3 ^h :0' Lat ^d . 36°:28'S
5	5	4	EbN	SEbS		“	In 1 st .	Reefs.		Long ^d . T. K. = 39:00E
6	4	2								Varia p ^r . Azths.
7	4	2	ENE	SE						A Compss - 30:18W
8	4	2								d ^o . turned - 31:4
9	3	6	SWbW	SbE						B Compss - 30:13
10	4		SW	SSE						d ^o . turned - 30:40
11	3	5								Mean. 30:34W
12	4						63½	Fine Night		
1	3									
2	2	2	SWbS	SEbS						
3	2	2								

4 2 2 “ “ 62¾ Taken aback

5 2 2 ESE S°

6 2 6 At 20^h:58' Lat^d. 36°:40'S
Long^d. T. K 39°:6'East
Varia p^r. Azths.
A Compss – 26°:50'W

8 3 63½ Fair W^r. Cleaned below d°. turned - 28:6
- opened all Hatchways B Compss - 27:40
9 3 - Up all Bags & cloaths - d°. Turned -
Mustered all hands and Saw Mean = 27:34W
10 4 SE SSW them clean.

11 4 4 Performed divine Service

12 4 63¾ Fine W^r. A few Sheerwaters ab^t.

91
16157
16248
Merid Alt^d
O Center 31°:34'

	Latitude		Longitude			
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S12°E	23	36:41S	36:44S	37°:43'E	39°:23'E	

[Page 270]
261.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Monday July 14th. 1788 Observations

1 5 6 SEbS SW Fine W^r.

2 5 6

3 5 6

4 5 6 “ “ 64⅔ At 3^h:44' Lat^d. 36°:46'S
Long^d. T. K. = 39°:47'E

5 5				Varia p ^r . Azths.
6 4 4				A Compss - 28°:05'W
7 5 2				d°. turned - 28:05
8 4 6		63¼		B Compss - 27:56
9 4				d°. turned - 26:25
10 4 4	WSW		Out Reefs & Set Steer ^g Sails	Mean = 27:38W
11 4				
12 4 2		63¼	Fair W ^r .	
1 4 4				
2 5				
3 5 3	West			
4 5 4		63	Dark Cloudy W ^r . & small Rain	
5 6 4				
6 6				
7 6 2				
8 6		63	Fair W ^r . with some light Squalls of Rain.	At 20:52 Lat ^d . 37°:14'S
9 5 2	SWbW			Long ^d . T. K. = 41°:13'E
10 7			Cleaned below. Carpenters about the Launch. Few Birds	Varia p ^r . Azths.
11 6				A Compss - 28°:22'W
12 5 6	“	62½	Fair W ^r . Stud ^g Sails set.	d°. Turned - 28:12
				B Compss - 26:56
				d°. Turned - 27:46
				Mean = 27:49W
128				
16248				
16376				

Merid Alt^d
O Center 31°:02'

	Latitude		Longitude			
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S70°E	122	37°:22'S	37°:35'S	40°:09'E ^t .	41°:35'E	

[Page 271]
262.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. July 15th. 1788 Observations

1 5 3 SEbS SWbW Very Fine W^r. In Stud^g Sl^s.

2 3 4 SWbS

3 3 4

1 6

4

1 7 ESE S°. 61

5 3 6 SWE¹/₂E SbW

6 4

7 4 ESE S°.

8 4 63 Squally & Rain – in 1st. Reefs

9 6 1

10 6 2

11 4 4

12 3 6 58 Fine W^r.

1 2 SEbE SbW

2 2

3 3 4 SE SSW

4 4 4 SEbS SW 58

5 5

6 4 6

7 3 6

At 20^h:37' Lat^d. 37°:20'S

Long^d. T. K. = 43°:49'E

8 3 “ 55³/₄

Varia p^r. Azths.

A Compss - 27°:34'W

9 2 5

Opened all Hatches & Scuttles d°. turned - 27:00
& cleaned Ship. B Compss - 26:28

10 2 2

Flocks of Blue Petterals d°. turned - 26:45
on the Water. Mean. 26:57W

11 2 3

West

Carpenters about the Launch &
hands drawing Yarns.

12 2 3

WbN

60²/₃ Very fine Weather Stud^g SI^s.
Set.

91

16376

16467

Merid Alt^d

O Center 31°:10'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S88°E	86	37:24S	37:20S	41°:56'E	43°:57'E ^t .	

[Page 272]

263.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. July 16th. 1788 Observations

1 3 SSE¹/₂E NW Fine pleasant W^r.

2 3

3 3 4 “ N°.

At 3^h:17' Lat^d. 37°:29'S

Long^d. T. K. = 44°:3':52"E

4 4 NNW 61

5 4 6

6 6

7 6 5

8 6 6 58 $\frac{3}{4}$

9 7

10 7 4

11 8 N^o. In Starb^d Stud^g Sails

12 9 “ 60 $\frac{3}{4}$ Very fresh Gale & hazy W^r.

1 8 4

2 8 “ “ “ In all Stud^g. Sails

3 8 4

4 9 61 $\frac{3}{4}$

5 8 2

6 8 2 “ “ Cloudy

7 8 2

8 8 3 “ 62 $\frac{1}{4}$ In 1st. Reefs and handed the Main Sail.

9 8 3

10 8 Served Slops to the Ship's Company.
thick gruel mixed with Portable Soup
11 7 4 every day for breakfast.

12 7 4 “ 61 $\frac{3}{4}$ Strong Gales & thick Rainy W^r.

167

Albatrosses, Pintada Birds, Blue
Pettersals, & Dark Brown Sheerwaters

16467 about. In 3rd. Reefs.
16634

		Latitude		Longitude		
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
SEbE¼E	167	None	38:50S	45:00E		

[Page 273]
264.

H K F Courses Winds Rem^s. Thursday July 17th. 1788

1 8 SSE½E N^o. Strong Gales & Squally W^r. with Rain & not So thick.

2 7 Varia

3 6 4 to More Moderate Out 3rd. & 2^d. Reefs

4 6 WNW 61½ Dark Cloudy W^r.

5 6

6 7 6 NWbW Squally with Rain, Lightning & distant Thunder.

7 7

8 6 6 Varia 57½ Fresh Gales & Small Rain.

9 8 to

10 8

11 6 4

12 6 4 WSW
57

1 6

2 6 4 Hard Squalls of Rain

3 7

4 5 SE SWbS 56 In 2nd. Reefs

5 5 2 ESE S°.

6 5

7 4 6 SEbE SbW

8 4 6 50½ Dark Cloudy W^r. Out 2^d. Reefs.

9 4 3 The Air being very damp & cold I ordered every Person to put on additional warm Cloathing.

10 6 SEbS SWbS Cleaned & aired below

11 4 ESE S°.

12 6 SE SSW 50½ Strong Breezes & Cloudy under Single Reefs.
Many Pintada & other Birds about as Yesterd^y.
Swell from the Westward.

141

16634

16781

Merid Alt^d

O Center 29°:14'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S69°E	140	39°:40'S	39:39S	47:48E	49°:57'E	

[Page 274]

265.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Friday 18th. July 1788 Observ^s.

1 7 4 SE SWbS Strong Breezes & Cloudy.

2 6

3 4 6

4 2 SEbE SSW 48 Light Winds inclineable to Calm.

At 3½^h Lat^d. 39°:40'S

5 1 4 ESE SbW

Long^d. T. K. = 50°:21'E

Variaⁿ. Pr. an Ampl^d.
27°:11' West

6 1

7 1 SEbE SSW

8 2 “ SE NWbN 48 Fine W^r.

9 3 3

10 4 4 Out Reefs & Set Stud^g Sails

11 6 4

12 6 6 “ “ 52¼ Fresh Gale

1 7 “ “ “ “ In Stud^g Sails. H^d. Main S^l. & Miz
Top Sail & close Reef^d Fore Top S^l.

2 8

3 8

4 8 “ “ 55 Strong Gale & Rain. Dble Reefed the
Main Top S^l. & hand^d. Fore TS

5 8

6 8

7 7 4

8 7 4 “ “ 57½ In 4th. Reefs M. Top S^l. Hard
Gales & thick Rainy W^r. Down
9 7 Top Gall Yards.

10 7 4

11 8

12 7 4 55¾ Very Hard Gales & thick Rainy W^r. with a High
breaking Sea. Scuding under Close Reefed
M. TS on the Cap & Fore Sail.

139

16781

16920

		Latitude		Longitude		
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S73°E	151	None.	40:23S	50°:56'E		

[Page 275]
266.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturd^y. 19th. July 1788 Observ^s.

1 6 6 SE NW Hard Gales and Rainy

2 5 5

3 5 2 SE½E WSW Wind shifted suddenly to the WSW

4 6 51¼

5 5 4

6 5 4 “ “ “

7 7 2

8 7 49 Gale more Moderate – out 4th. Reef Man TS and
set close Reefed Fore TS

9 6 6

10 7 2

11 7

12 6 6 “ “ 48 Fresh Gales & clear W^r.

1 5 4 SWbW

2 5 2

3 5

4 5 “ “ 47½ Cloudy W^r. & Light Winds out all but 1st. Reefs.

5 3 4 NW

6 2 6 “ to “

7 1 2

8 1 “ “ 48 Light Variable Winds & thick Rain with a long Swell from the Westward.

9 1 4 East SSE At 23^h:21' Lat^d. 40°:56' Long^d. T. K. 56°:12'E

10 2 “ ENE SE

11 1 5 NE ESE

12 1 4 NNE East 52¼ D° Winds and cloudy W^r. with a Damp Cold Air. I

112 Air. I now began to serve Sour Krout to all
16920 Hands. Dried & Aired below wth. Fires. Many
17032 Birds & some whitebelly Sheerwaters w^{ch}. are
the first we have seen in this side of the Cape.

Merid Alt^d
O Center 28°:20'

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K. Error in Acc ^t .
S74°E	118	40°:55'S	40°:34'S 53°:23'E 56°:05'E is divided Equally in the 2 Days

[Page 276]
267.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sunday 20th. July 1788 Observ^s.

1 3 4 SEbE¼E NbE Variable Winds with Rain untill two O'Clock when it came on to blow exceedingly hard and brought us under a close Reef Main T. Sail and Fore Sail

2 6 to

3 7 WNW

4 7 4 57¼

5 7 6

6 7 6	“	“	Very hard Gale with severe squalls & Rain and continued so all night
7 9 2			
8 8 4		“	56¼
9 7 4			
10 7 4			
11 8			
12 8			54¾
1 8			
2 8		W ^t .	
3 8			
4 8		“	48½
5 8 2			At 22 ^h :33' Lat ^d . 40°:32'S Long ^d . T. K = 59°:50'E
6 8 4			
7 8			
8 8 4		“	46 Gale very severe with violent Squalls of Hail, but bright intervals of Sun Shine
9 8 4			
10 8 4			Saw the People all clean and performed Divine Service – Aired below with Fires
11 8 4			
12 9 “			44½ Gale worse and will oblige us to lay by if it does not abate. A Very high Sea.
189			Scudding under four Reefs M. TS & Fore Sail
17032			
17221			
Merid Alt ^d			

O Center 28°:57'

	Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
E7°N	195	40°:30'S	40:36S	57°:36'E	60°:07'E	

[Page 277]
268.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Mond^y. July 21st. 1788

1	8	4	ESE	West		An hour had scarce elapsed before it blew a most severe storm, & before we could get the Sails in it
2	1	4	N°.	WbN		drove us Fore Castle under, but we brought to under the Miz. Stay Sail without accident.
3	1	4				
4	1	4	“	“	43½	
5	1	6				Got the Top Gall. Masts down on Deck & Miz TS Yard. Lowered the Lower Yard half down got in the Jib Boom and Struck the Mizen Top Mast, Gaff and Crossjack Yard.
6	1	6				
7	1	6	NNW	WbS		
8	1	6	“	“	42½	Set the Fore Stay Sail & the Ship lay well to – Gave every Man a Dram & Sent them below by a good fire.
9	1	6	NbW½W			
10	1	6				
11	1	6	N½W	W ^t .		The weather continued the same w th . heavy Squalls of Hail & Snow untill 8 In the morning when it moderating a little I bore away under a Reefed Fore Sail.
12	1	6	“	“	43½	
1	1	6				
2	1	6	N°.	WbN		Gave all hands a breakfast of Portable Soup & oatmeal.
3	1	6				All the Forenoon employed cleaning and drying below – and drying Cloaths by the Fire.

4 1 6 “ 44³/₄

5 1 6

6 1 6 Towards Noon some small Intervals of Sun Shine
between very hard Squalls of Hail, and blowing a
7 1 6 Storm of Wind wth. a very high Sea. The Ship
Scuding before it.

8 1 6 “ “ 46

9 7 4 ESE

10 7 4 Got observations with much difficulty
I generally allow lying to in a heavy Gale the
11 7 4 Ship as much more as the distance is by log (a)

12 7 4 “ “ 47¹/₂ At 22^h:21' Lat^d. 39°:44'S
Long^d. T. K^r. - 60:27E^t.

70 (a) T. K. proves this to be great an allowance

17221

17291

Merid Alt^d
O Center 29°:58'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N61°E	104	39:40S	39:41S	59°:35'E	60°:48'E	

[Page 278]

269.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. July 22^d. 1788 Observations

1 7 EbS West The Gale so very heavy & Sea so high that we
cannot steer our Course being obliged to keep
2 7 4 before the Sea.

3 8

4 8 “ “ 48³/₄ It now became highly dangerous to run any longer.
I therefore lay to under a Reefed Fore Stay Sail &
5 1 6 N°. WbN a Miz. Stay Sail, and lowered the Lower Yards half

6 1 4	“ “ “	Mast down. I had scarce got every thing done before we experienced as heavy a Storm as ever blew, with Hail & Sleet, the Sea also exceedingly high.
7 1 4	NNW WbS	
8 1 6		44¾
9 1 4	NbW½W	By a violent Blow from a heavy Sea on the Quarter the Man at the Wheel was thrown over & was much b[r]uised.
10 1 6		
11 1 6		
12 1 6		44½ All Night a Fire was kept in & the People could sit tolerably well by it & dry Cloaths.
1 1 6	NNW	At 22 ^h :35' Lat ^d . 38°:50'S Long ^d . T. K. = 61°:38'E
2 1 4		
3 1 4		
4 1 6		44¾
5 1 6		
6 1 6	“ “ “	The violence of the Storm began now to abate and tho' still blowing exceedingly hard was bearable to what we had suffered in the Course of the Night.
7 1 6		At 9 I bore away again under a Reefed Fore Sail
8 1 6	“	46 with a high Sea & a hard Gale. Gave my People a hot breakfast of thick Gruel mixed w th . Portable Soup.
9 1 4		
10 7	ESE	
11 6	SEbE½E	
12 5 6	WSW 49¼	The Gale still moderating. Employed all the Forenoon drying & making the People as comfortable as Possible. Bright intervals of Sun Shine with some squalls of Sleet.
79		
17291		
17370		
	Merid Alt ^d	

O Center 31°:01'

	Latitude		Longitude			Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N58°E	97	38:49	38:49	61:22E	61°:48'E	

[Page 279]

270.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. July 23^d. 1788 Observations

1 6	SEbE½E	WbS	Strong Gales & Squally. & Much Sea			
2 6	“	“	“	Set close Reefed Fore Top Sail. Saw a Whale of the kind that have two blowholes at the back of the head.		
3 6 4						
4 6 4			50	At 3 ^h :32' Lat ^d . = 38°:49' Long ^d . T. K. = 62:16		
5 5 3						
6 5 4						
7 6						
8 6			52¾	Swayed the Main Yard up and set Close Reefed Main Top S ^l .		
9 8		NWbW				
10 8						
11 8						
12 8 4			55½	Hard Squalls hand ^d . F.T.S ^l . Ship Rolling very deep		
1 8						
2 8 3						
3 8		WNW				

4 8 “ 57³/₄

5 7 4

6 7 4 WbS

7 7 4 “ “ More Mod. Set Fore Top S^l. but could make no more Sail. Fair W^r.

8 7 “ 55³/₄ Gave the People a hot breakfast as Yesterd^y. & Portable Soup & Krout in their Pease. Issued clean Hammocks & got the dirty ones Washed. The bedding that was wet all hung up to dry & such as was dirty I ordered to be washed, & the owners to be supplied wth. Slop beds for the time.

9 7 6

10 7 3

11 7 “

12 7 “ 56¹/₂ Strong Gales & Fair W^r. wth. much Sea. Got the Ship well cleaned & dried Under Triple Reef Top S^l^s. & Reefed Fore S^l.

170

17370

17540

Merid Alt^d

O Center 30:52

+12

31:04

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d . D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.	E ¹ / ₄ S 170 38°:59'S	38°:57'S 65:00E	

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. July 24th. 1788 Observations

[Page 278]

271.

1 5 4 SEb¹/₂E WbS Mod^t. Gale with some Squalls of Rain
Out Two Reefs of the Top Sails, & Swayed the
2 5 6 Mizen Gaff up.

3 5 6 SWbS

4 6 “ SEbE SSW 53

5 5 4 “ “ Out 2^d. Reef of the M.T.S^l.

6 5

7 5 “ WSW

8 5 SEbE½E “ 52¾ Mod^t. and fair W^r. & Fair W^r. Out Reef of the
Fore Sail the Sea being still very high.

9 3

10 3 3

11 3 3

12 4 “ “ NWbN 54

1 5 3

2 5 4 “ NbW “ Fresh Gales & Squally dble Reefed the M. Top
Sail.

3 6 2

4 7 NNW 51

5 7 6

6 8 NWbN Strong Gales & Squally with Rain at times and
some bright intervals & continued so the
7 9 remainder of this day.

8 8 6 NWbW 58 Cleaned below – Served hot breakfast as usual &
Portable Soup with their Pease & Sour Krout.

9 8 3

10 8 3 “ West

At 22^h:0' Lat^d. = 38°:58'S
Long^d. T. K. = 67°:49'E

11 8

12 8 “ “ “ 55 Under Dble Reefs & Fore Sail. Got good
observations, but could take none for the Variaⁿ.
the Sea being so high. Some Pintada Birds.
Blue Petterals & Albatrosses
146
17540

17686

Merid Alt^d

O Center 31°:17'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
East	146	38°:58'S°.	38:59S	68°:08'E	68°:06'E ^t .	

[Page 279]

272.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Frid^y. July 25th. 1788 Observations

1 8 2 SEbE½E WSW Strong Gales & Squally wth. Rain – handed Fore
Top S^l. & Close Reefed the Main Top S^l.

2 8 4

3 7 4

At 3^h:42' Lat^d. = 38°:58'S
Long^d. T. K. = 68:51E

4 8 4 “ 52

5 8

6 8 “ “ Very hard Squalls and Rain with a heavy Sea on
the Beam from the South^d. which at times breaks
all over us.

7 7

8 6 4 SW 50½

9 5 6

10 6

11 5 4 “ “ “ Ship'd a very heavy Sea w^{ch}. threw us almost on
our beam Ends, but no damage was done but
overturning some Tubs with Plants I had brought
49½ from the Cape

12 5 5

1 6 6 SEbE

2 6

3 5 SWbS

4	5					48¾	
5	4	1	“	“			
6	4	4	“	“	“	Fresh Gale & Squally. Set the Main S ^l . and Fore TS close Reefed. Reefed the Fore Sail & the remainder of this day empl ^d . drying & cleaning below.	
7	5			SSW			
8	5					50	
9	5					Served a hot breakfast as Yesterd ^y . & Portable Soup and Krout.	
10	5	5	SEbE½E				At 21 ^h :27' Lat ^d . = 38°:53'S Long ^d . T. K. = 71°:00'E
11	5	5					
12	5	5				49¾ D° W ^r . and a continuance of the South ^{ly} . Sea, and the Ship a most violent Motion	
		148					
		17686					
		17834					
			Merid Alt ^d				
			O Center 31°:36'				
			Latitude			Longitude	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	
N87°E	148	38:52S	38:52S	71°:19'E	71°:15'E		
[Page 280]							
273.							
H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s . Saturday July 26 1788	Observ ^s .
1	5	4	SEbE	SSW		Fresh Gales and Squally w th . bright Intervals. Much Southerly Sea which gives the Ship a very violent Motion.	
2	5	4					
3	5	6					
4	6					50½	At 3 ^h :25' Lat ^d . 38°:50'S Long ^d . T. K. 71°:38'E

5 5	SEbE½E				Varia ⁿ . same time
6 4 6					A Compss - 19°:57'W
					d°. Turned - 19:54
					Mean = 19:55W
7 5 2	ESE	S°.			
8 5		“	50½	Mod ^t . & Cloudy & Sea less	
9 3		“			
10 3	“	“	“	“	Fair W ^r .
11 3	EbS.	SbE	“	Out 3 rd . Reef M TS & fourth Reef Fore TS	
12 3 4		“	50	D°W ^r .	
1 3 4	ESE	S°.			
2 3 4					
				Out 3 rd . Reef Fore TS.	
3 3 4					
4 4		“	49¾		
5 4					
6 4					
7 3 6	EbS½S			Out 2 nd . Reefs. Served Gruel & Portable Soup as usual.	
8 3 4		“	50	Fair W ^r . Opened all Hatches & got all beddings Bags & Cloaths on Deck & cleaned & Air'd very well below. Dried all small Sails	
9 3					
10 2 4					At 21 ^h :28' Lat ^d . 38°:30'S
					Long ^d . T. K. 73°:10'E ^t .
11 2 4					Variation same time
					A Compss - 18°:33'W
12 2 4	ESE		50⅔	Fine W ^r . Very few Birds ab ^t . Served Mustard to the People. B Compss - 20:20	d°. Turned - 19:53
95				Ship very well cleaned &	d°. Turned - 18:11
17834				air'd & every Man in good	Mean = 19:14W
17929				health.	

Merid Alt^d
O Center 32:13

		Latitude	Longitude		
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.
N75°E	95	38:28S	38°:31'S	73°:16'E	73°:21'E
					L & T.K.

[Page 281]
274.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Sund ^y .	July 27 th .	1788	Observations
1	2	4	SEbE	SbW		Fair W ^r .				and Light Winds, and the Southerly Sea not so high – Served Vinegar to all Hands
2	2	4								
3	3	2								At 3 ^h :53' Lat ^d . 38°:27'S
4	3	2			52					Long ^d . T. K. = 73°:39'E
5	3	4								Varia ^s .
6	4									A Compss - 18°:56'W
7	3	7		SSW						d°. Turned - 20:34
8	4				53					Mean = 19:40W
9	3									
10	2	2								
11	2	2								
12	2	2		SWbS	53	Light Winds & Cloudy				
1	1	4								
2	1	2		SW						
3	1	4								

4 1 4 53¼

5 1 4

6 1 4 West Out 1st. Reefs & Set Stud^g Sails. Up Main T.G
Mast & set the Sail

7 2

8 2 WNW 53½ D^o W^r. and smooth Water. Very few Birds about.
Saw a small Branch of Rock Weed.

9 2 2

10 2 5 Cleaned Ship & got up all bedding & Bags
Saw the People all Neat & Clean and perform'd
11 3 " Divine Service.

12 3 54¾ Fair W^r. & Cloudy. Smooth Water. Fore Top
Mast and lower Stud^g Sail Set. Portable Soup &
60 Krout issued to day as usual.

17929

17989

Merid Alt^d
O Center 32°:17'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S80°E	60	38:38	38:36S°.	74°:32'E	74:48E	

[Page 282]

275.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Mond^y. 28th. July 1788 Observa^s.

1 3 4 SE NW Fair W^r. and cloudy.

2 3 5 Note in Oct^r. 1789 I was told At 2^h:54' Lat^d. 38°:41'S
by the Cap^t. of the Dutch Long^d. T. K. = 74°:59'½E

3 4 6 Packet that wth. the Eⁿ. point Varia p^r. Azths.
of S^t. Pauls bear^g SWbS there A Compss - 20°:3'E^t

4 5 55 is 23 fm^s. black Sand. It is a d^o. turned - 20:23
good Road & fine fresh Water B Compss - 20:48

5 4 to be got. Also a Hot Spring d^o. Turned - 19:26

6 4 1	NWbN	in w ^{ch} fish had been boiled as well as on a fire. The lat ^d of the Road 38°:39'S	Mean = 20:10W
7 5			
8 5	“	54¾ Cloudy W ^r . I now ordered an ESE Course to be steered in hopes of making the Island S ^t . Paul.	
9 5 4 ESE			
10 6	NNW		
11 6 SEbE NEbN		Wind variable & a little Squally. In lower Stud ^g Sail S ^l .	
12 6 4 ESE NNE	54½		
1 7	to		
2 7	NNW	Fresh Breezes w th . some squalls of Rain. in T. M ^t . Stud ^g Sail	
3 8			
4 8	53		At 21 ^h :2' Lat ^d . 38°:43'S Long ^d . T. K. = 75°:00':42"E
5 7 2	“	Set Stud ^g Sails	Lat ^d . at Noon determ ^d by.
6 7 2	“	Fresh Breezes & Cloudy	1 st . set Dble Altd ^s - 38°:47'
3 3		Saw the Isl ^d . S ^t . Pauls EbN	2 Set d ^o - d ^o - 38:50
7		10 leagues	A good Alt ^d . exactly at Noon by T. Keeper 38:49
3 3 E½N			146 Lat ^d . at Noon = 38:48⅔
8 7	54¾	D ^o W ^r . The Etr ^s . of the Island N74°E to N79°E ^t . In 1 st . Reefs.	
9 7 4 EbN½N		Several Whales close in shore.	
10 7 4 EbN WNW	“	At 20 past 10 The west end bore true North dis ^t ab ^t . 1½ leagues	
11 7 4 E½S		At 50' past 10 The East end bore true North ab ^t . 1 leag ^s .	
2 EbN SWbW			
12			
5 SEbE	54	Strong Gales & Squally which brought us under Close Reef M. T. S ^l . & Fore Sail. The W ^r . being	

148 very thick & Rainy at times I bore away at half past
 17989 11 being then about 4 Miles offshore
 18137 At Noon The Center of y Isl^d. NWbW³/₄W 12 Miles
 & S°. part WNW 10 Miles.

Merid Alt^d
 O Center 32°:20'

	Latitude		Longitude		Correct Long ^d . By
					Voyage in 1792
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.
S85°E	139	38°:49'S	38°:43'S	77:30E	77:31E

[Page 283]
 276.

Rem^s

By Cap^t. Cox Lat^d. in the Road 38°:42'S° Long^d. 73°:3'E^t. Variaⁿ. 19°"55'W
 May 1789. Seals innumerable: some Whales – Abundance of Fish – Hot Springs
 round a lake – No Wood – Did not taste the Water – Bear^{gs}. at A T SE p. O
 Compss SWbS 2'. AE point NW pt h2'. Entrance into Bason WbN 1¼ - Sugar
 loaf WNW – Dist^d. by Vlaamming a Dutch Man in 1697 Amsterdam bore N10°E
 to N29°E – Center N19°E^t. from A place

[See image for drawing of Island St Paul.]

NB. By Correction in my voyage 1792 the long^d. is +27'.45" E^t than here has
 down. See next Page.

I had it in view in the course of this Passage if I could at all make it possible, to
 run in the limits of the Island S^t. Paul, being possessed of so valuable a means to
 determine its situation as my Time Keeper. I therefore consulted the different
 authorities for its latitude. The New requisite Tables published by Authority and
 w^{ch}. I had a great respect for placed it in 37°:51'S°. 77°:48'E. Robertson's
 Elements in 38°:20'S° 75°:25'E (3rd. Addition). Haselden's Seaman's assistant
 places Amsterdam in 38°:40'S° 72°:45'E^t. but this I consider a mistake in calling
 S^t. Pauls, Amsterdam, as I have always supposed S^t. Paul to be the southermost
 Island, and he takes no notice of S^t. Paul's. Hamilton Moore seems to have made
 the same mistake, for in giving the situation of the two Islands he makes
 Amsterdam the Southermost & says it lies in 38°:30'S 74°:00'E S^t. Pauls in
 37°:52'S 77°:55'E^t. but then he is erroneous in Long^d. the Long^d if the Names
 are misplaced, as S^t. Pauls, (as he lays it down) is certainly the easternmost Island.
 Guthrie in his late Geographic Table Places S^t. Pauls in 37°:51'S 77°:53'E. A

New general map lately offered to the Publick with Captain Cook's last Voyage lays S^t. Pauls in 37°:40'S° 75°:30'E^t. - & the Mariners Compass in 38°:20'S 75°:25'E^t. However among the variety of differences I concluded

[Page 284]

277.

that about the lat^d of 38°:40'S°. I might fall in with some land.

It is strange that the Publishers of those works should not have made themselves acquainted better with the latitude of these Islands, particularly as real information might surely have been got from our Indiamen's Journals in their Route to China, some Ship or other, seeing them every Year. But a Rage seems to have got among these publishers of errors about fixing places in their true long^d, (w^{ch}. if they can do to one degree is sufficient for all ships,) & in the mean time they have neglected the grand point the latitude, which they err as much in, when it might be known to five miles. I really believe that was a general Map to be made by the ~~materials~~ requisites in the Old Mariners compass & the errors came to be compared wth one made from newer authorities it would have the advantage. It is remarkable we saw very few Birds & no signs of Land.

This Island w^{ch}. I take to be S^t. Pauls I have now determined to lie in 38°:47'S°. & Long^d. 77°:14':34"^(b)E. It is land of a Moderate height and an Iron bound shore. It was dis^t. from us when first seen 10 leag^s, and appeared a little circular & even at the top – As we advanced the the extremes soon showed themselves distinct, the northermost like a flat Foreland, & the southermost a Hill on it, that makes at first like an Island. As we got past the East End we saw a very remarkable high Sugar loaf Rock close to the shore, & to the NW of that some others. It is a high Clift-Shore every where except a point near the East End, where I was I steering in for to try soundings, but the Gale came on so Strong wth. very thick weather I was obliged to bear away – indeed it came so thick & Squally while running down the Shore, that I could not determine what it was that constituted the verdure which covered all the upper part of the Isl^d., but I believe it to be nothing more than Moss & the common herbage which is found on the tops of most rocky Islands. I could see nothing like a Bush. We Saw several Whales close to the shore & if I may judge from appearances there is no Anchorage. The greatest extent of this Lat^d. is 5 Miles from East to West & about 3 from North to South.^(c) The situation of it in Long^d is deduced from the Observ^s for the T. Keeper in the Morn^g & those in the afternoon reduced to Noon. Note (a)

[Page 285]

278.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. July 29th. 1788 Observations

1 7 SEbE SW Strong Gales & Squally W^r.

2 7

3 7

4 7 2 50½ Got M.T.G. Mast & Miz. Top At 2^h:24' Lat^d. 38°:51'S
Mast down. Long^d. T. K = 77°:55'E

5 7 6

(b) Allowing a proportional part of the Time Keeper
6 7 4 Error found at Adventure Bay (following) gives
7 7 6 the Long^d. 77°:42':19"E^t. It is certainly within a ¼
of a Degree of the truth.

8 7 6 50½ More Mod. Set Close Reefed Fore Top S^l.

9 7 3 SWbS

10 7 “ “ “

11 7

12 7 2 “ 48¼ Fresh Gales & fair W^r.

1 6 6

2 6 6 (a) See my following Voyage where I determine
the Long^d. of the End of S^t. Pauls to be in 77°:40'E

3 6 6

4 6 2 48

5 6

6 6 SW Out 2 Reefs of the TS.

7 5

8 5 4 49 Served Portable soup & Oat Meal for breakfast as
usual. Up all bedd^g and bags & cleaned below.

9 6 6 Sailmakers Repair^g the Miz. TS & Carpenters
Caulking

10 6

11 5 4

12 6 49¼ Fair W^r. & a sharp pleasant Air. A few Albatrosses
and Petterals about. Opened a Cask of Beef 1262
161 Contents 86 eight pound Pieces.
18137 Under Si[n]gle Reefs
18298 (c) See Account in my 2^d. Voyage where I suppose
it 3½ Miles

Merid Alt^d
O Center 32°:23'

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d . D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.			
S86°E 161 39°:00'S 39°:00'S 80:58E			

[Page 286]
279.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Wednesd ^y .	July 30 th .	1788	Observations
1	5		SEbE	SWbW		Fresh Breezes & fair W ^r . Out Reefs & Set the Fore Top Mast & lower Steering Sails				
2	5	6								
3	5					Long ^d .by T.K. Lost the Obsev ^s by T.K. brought on - 80°:48'E this afternoon				
4	4	7	“	WSW	50½	Varia ^s at 4 ^h . nearly in Lat ^d - 39°:04'S				
5	5	2				A Compss - 18°:54'W d°. turned - 19:33				
6	5					B Compss - 20:7 d°. turned - 18:37				
7	6		“	WNW		Mean = 19:18W				
8	5	6	“	“	49¼					
9	6	1								

10 6 2	“	NWbW	“	Squally W ^r . In stud ^g Sails Dble Reefed the Fore & Single Reefd the Main Top Sail
11 7 2				
12 6 4			50	
1 6 4				
2 6 4			“	Fresh Gales & dark Cloudy W ^r . with Squalls. In 2 nd . Reef Main Top Sail.
3 6 6				
4 6 5				
5 7	“	NW	51½	
6 8				Small Rain at times & continued so with fair intervals the remainder of this day.
7 8				
8 8			52	
9 8				Portable soup served for At 21 ^h :36' Lat ^d . 39°:35'S breakfast & dinner as before Long ^d . T.K. = 83:19:46E
10 7 5				Sailmakers empl ^d . making Bags for the People to hold their Cloaths in.
11 7 6				Cleaned & aired below –
12 7 5	“		54	Squally w th . Small Rain. Under Single Reefed M. TS Fore Sail and dble Reefed Fore T. Sail.
155				A few Albatrosses & Petterals about.
18137				
18292				
	Merid Alt ^d			
	O Center 31°:59'			

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
ESE¾E	155	39°:39'S	39°:40'S	84°:20'E	83°:43'E	

[Page 287]
280.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. July 31st. 1788 Observations

1 8 SEbE NW Fresh Gales and open Cloudy W^r.
Great Number of Albatrosses

2 7 4

3 7

4 6 6 NWbW 54¹/₄

5 7 2

6 7

7 7 4

8 7 4 NW 54¹/₄

9 7 2

10 7 4 NNW

11 7 4

12 7 3 “ N^o. 54¹/₂

1 8 SEbE¹/₂E

2 8

3 8

4 8 4 54 Small Rain at times

5 7 7

6 7 7

7 7 7 Wet unpleasant W^r.

8 7 7 54 Portable Soup served for Breakfast
and Dinner as usual.

At 3^h:5' Lat^d. 39°:44'S
Long^d. T.K. = 84°:12'E
Varia p^r. Azths.
A Compss - 18°:22'W
d^o. Turned - 18:56
Mean = 18:39W

9 6 5	NNW	Albatrosses – Mother Careys Chicken & Petterals.
10 6 3	NW	
11 6	WNW	Employed drying & clean ^g below – Sailmakers making Bags.
12 5 4	West – 51¼	Very Rainy & unpleasant W ^r . Under Single Reef Fore TS and Whole M. TS.
176		
18292		
18468		

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S79°E	176	None	40:13'S	88:06E		

[Page 288]
281.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Friday	Aug ^t . 1 st . 1788	Observations
1	5	2	SEbE½E	W					Fresh breezes and thick Rainy W ^r . Many Albatrosses & Petterals about.
2	5	4		SW					
3	3	4	“	SSW					
4	1	4		“	48½				Light Airs & Calms. Swell from the SW. Took the Sails in to prevent their being beat to pieces from the violent motion of the Ship
5	1								
6	1								
7	1		ESE	S°					
8	1	4			49¾				Light Breezes Set Sail.
9	3		East	SSE					
10	3		Esat	SEbS					
11	3								

12 3 ENE SE 49½

1 3 3 NE ESE

1 2 NEbN EbS. TK^d.
2

1 2 S°. ESE

3 3 5

4 3 5 49¾

5 4

6 4 4 S½E EbS

7 4 4

8 3 5 49 Served Portable Soup & At 21^h:4' Lat^d. 40°:43'S
Krout as usual. Long^d. T.K. = 87:58E

9 4 2 Cleaned and Aired below &
Empl^d. drawing & knott^g

10 4 S°. ESE Yarns Repairing the services
of the Rigging & other necessary
11 3 duties.

12 3 “ 50 Fair W^r. but threatening much
dirt from the Southward & Westward.
76 Many Albatrosses of all the different
18468 kinds – Blue Petterals a few Pintada
18544 Birds & the common Sheerwaters.

Merid Alt^d
O Center 31°:14'

		Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.
S47°E	59	40°:53'S	40°:40'S	89:02E 88:00E
				T.K. L & T.K. Error alt ^d . in this day.

[Page 289]
282.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturd^y. Aug^t. 2^d 1788 Observations

1 2 SSW SE Very Cloudy & particularly in the SW.

2 “
Calm and Rainy W^r.
3

4 3 ESE SSW 48 Mod. breezes & dark cloudy W^r. with Rain

5 3 One Cask Rum N^o 32 Con^g 32 Gall^s.
found entirely leaked out.

6 2 2 SW

7 3 6

8 3 2 45³/₄

9 4 2

10 4 2

11 4 6

12 6 WSW 46¹/₂ A Little Squally

1 6

2 6

3 6 “ “ “ Fair W^r. out all Reefs & Set Fore Top Mast Steer^g
Sail and Lower d^o.

4 6 46³/₄

5 6 6 At 21^h:28' Lat^d. 40°:56'S
Long^d. T.K. = 89°:54'E

6 6 Varia p^r. Azths.

7 6 A Compss - 15°:3'W

d^o. turned - 15:10

B Compss - 15:58

8 6 SW 46³/₄ Fair W^r. Hot breakfast served Mean = 15:24W
as usual.

9 6 2 Employed cleaning Ship

10 5 6 Saturday being the day no
other Work is done except the
People cleaning & mending
11 4 their Cloaths.

12 4 48½ Light Breezes and fine W^r.
with a Sharp dry Air.

104
18544
18648

Merid Alt^d
O Center 31°:27'

	Latitude		Longitude			
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
E2°S	104	40:56S	40:58	91:19E	90°:10'E	

[Page 290]
283.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sunday Aug^t. 3rd. 1788 Observations

1 4 4 ESE WSW Fine W^r. & pleasant Air

2 3 4

Varia

3 2 4

to “ Some small showers of Rain

4 2 4

46¾

Saw a Small patch of Weed

5 2 4

At 3^h:16' Lat^d. 40°:56'S
Long^d. T.Keep = 90:26E

6 3

NW

Var^s. same time

7 5 2

“

N°.

A Compss - 16°:56'W

d°. turned - 16:19

8 5 2

“

NNW

47½ Mod. and fair W^r. with some
Rain at times.

B Compss - 14:46

d°. turned - 15:18

Mean 15:50W

9 5

10 5 4

11 6 3 “ N^o.

12 6 4 49 Fresh Breezes & Cloudy

1 7 2

2 8 4 “ NbE. “ Fresh Gales & Squally. In Stud^g
Sails & Dble Reefs

3 8

4 8 “ N^o. 49½

5 8

6 7 6

7 7 6 NNW

8 8 49½ Some Weed seen. Portable Soup
issued for breakfast & Dinner as
usual.

9 8 2

10 8 4 Cleaned below & performed Divine
Service.

11 8

12 7 6 NbE 51¼ Strong Gales & Squally in 4th Reefs
TS. Albatrosses & Petterals as
usual. Much Sea & breaking
frequently over us from the NW.

143

18648

18791

Merid Alt^d

O Center 31°:18'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
E10°S	143	41°:21'S	41:24S	94:24E		

[Page 291]

284.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Mond^y. Aug^t. 4th. 1788 Observa^s.

1 8 4 ESE N°. Strong Gales and dark Cloudy W^r.

2 8 4

3 8 4

4 8 50³/₄

5 8

6 8 6

7 8 4

8 8 6 51³/₄

9 9

10 8 4

11 8 2

12 8 51³/₄

1 8 2

2 8 4

3 8 1

4 8 51¹/₂ Hard Gale & thick Rainy W^r. In Top Sails

5 7 6 NbE

6 7 4 NNE

7 7 Saw some Rock Weed

8 6 6 51¹/₂ Portable Soup Issued for breakfast & Dinner as usual. and the Weather being very uncomfortable & Wet I ordered Sweet wort to be got ready & served a pint to every Man & Officer at the

9 7

10 7 5 proportion of 1 Gall of Malt to 4 of Water.

11 8

12 6 4 “ “ 51¾ At Noon Reefed the Courses being as much as I
could possibly carry. A Very Strong Gale & thick
Rainy Weather.

192
18791
18983

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Dble Altd ^s	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S80°E	191	41°:54'S	41°:58'S	98°:33'E		

[Page 292]

285.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. Aug^t. 5th. 1788 Observations

1 7 2 ESE N°. Hard Gale and the Sea breaking frequently over us,
with thick Rainy W^r. & Squalls

2 7 2 Covered the Boats well with coverings to prevent
their filling with water. The Spray Sea flying over
our lower Yards.

4 7 2 52

5 6 6

6 6 6

7 7

8 7 52

9 6 6

10 6 6

11 6 6

12 6 6 52

1 6 4

2 6 2

3 6

4 6 1 52

5 6 2

6 6 2

7 7

8 7

9 6

10 6

11 6

12 6

159
18938
19097

Merid Alt^d
O Center 30°:38'

The W^r. continuing just the same. I ordered and saw the Ship well dried by fires. Served Portable Soup for Breakfast & dinner as usual & gave a pint of Sweet Wort to every Man at eleven O'Clock.

52³/₄ Momentary sights of the Sun through the Squalls enabled me to get a good latitude. Under Reefed Courses – Few Birds.

	Latitude		Longitude			Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
EbS ¹ / ₂ S	160	42°:33'S	42°:25'S	102°:03'E		Lat ^d . Obz ^d is from an Alt ^d . exactly at Noon by Time Keeper

[Page 293]
286.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesday Aug^t. 6th. 1788

1 5	EbS	NNE	The Weather of this day has been very bad, being almost constant Rain & thick Weather with a very Strong Gale and the Sea breaking constantly over us.
2 4 6			
3 4			
4 3 6		53¼	It moderated at times and the Main Top S ^l . with four Reefs in it was occasionally Set and taken in.
5 4			
6 5			
7 5 3			The Ship being Wet below I had two good fires between Decks and kept the Men as comfortable as possible. All wet cloaths were kept by the Galley Fire and got dried by the time they were wanted.
8 5 3			
9 5 3			
10 5			
11 5			
12 5		52⅓	In the Morning the People received their good breakfast of Portable Soup Gruel as usual, and also very good Pease Soup for dinner, having at eleven O'Clock got their pint of Sweet Wort each Man & Officer.
1 4 6			
2 5			
3 5			
4 5		51½	
5 4 6			Fires were continued below & the Ship got tolerably dry by Noon, when the weather had some appearance of Moderating.
6 4 5			
7 4 5			
8 4 4		52½	Some Albatrosses of different kinds as we have seen of[f] Cape Horn. Some Small blue Petterals and Sheerwaters, but No Pintada Birds.
9 4 2			

10 4 4

11 4 6 NbE

12 4 6 52¼ Got not any Observations the Sun never being
once out the 24 Hours.
114 Under Reef Courses & 4 Reefs in the Main Top
19097 Sails.
19211

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
E¾S	114	None	42°:49'S	104°:35'E		

[Page 294]
287.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. Aug^t. 7th. 1788 Observations

1 4	EbS½S	NbE		The Weather now began to change, & became moderate with little Winds, and variable w ^{ch} . settled
2 4		to NW		the latter part of this Day very suddenly in the South. The Air became much colder and many
3 3				Birds made their appearance from the South –
4 3 3			51	Albatrosses Pintadas & Petterals. Towards Noon it came Fair W ^r . but the Clouds heavy in the South.

5 3 4

6 3 “ WNW

7 3

8 2 6 48¾ Made Sail occasionally

9 2 1 “ Varia to West & SW

10 1 4

11 1 5 “ “

12 1 6 47¾

1 2 6

2 3

4 3

48½

At 22^h:19' Lat^d. 42°:42'S
Long^d. T.K. = 104°:56'E

5 3 4

Squally & Rain

6 4

7 3 EbS. SbE

8 2 2 E½S

47¼ Served Potable Soup Gruel for Breakfast as usual.
Cleaned below & had three good Fires to Air the
Ship.

9 3 2

10 5 4

11 5 6 ESE S°. “ Served Sweet Wort a pint P^r. Man.

12 5 4

46 Mod. breezes & Fair W^r. Under Single Reefs. I got
good observ^s. for the Time Keeper but none could
be got for the Variation.

78

19211

19289

Merid Alt^d

O Center 31°:03'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N84°E	77	42°:41'S	42°:39'S	106°:21'E	105:11E	

[Page 295]

288.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Frid^y. Aug^t. 8th. 1788 Observations

1 4 4 ESE SbW Mod and fair W^r. Many Birds about as Yesterd^y.

2 5

3 5 4

4 5 6 44½ Cloudy. W^r. No observations could be got this
Afternoon

5 5 4

6 5 6 SEbE½E SSW

7 6

8 5 43¼ Fair W^r.

9 5 6 ESE SbW

10 3 6

11 3 6 EbS SSE

12 3 6 to SSW 42¾ Cloudy

1 3 5

2 3 5

3 3

4 3 6 42¼

5 2 4 East SbE

6 3 SEbE½E SSW

7 2 4 ESE SbW “ Cloudy W^r. and a dry cold Air – Got all the Cables
and every thing up from below & cleaned Ship.

8 9 4 EbS S°. 42¼ Served Portable Soup, Krout and Sweet wort as
Yesterday.

9 4 EbN SEbS At 20^h:55' Lat^d. 42°:32'S
Long^d. T.K. = 106°:57'E

10 4 NEbE SEbE Trimmed Sharp to the Wind
having smooth Water.

11 3 2 ENE SE^t—

12 3 2 “ 42¼ Cloudy W^r. with some intervals of Sun Shine

Got the Cables down & made fires below.

96

19289

19385

Merid Alt^d

O Center 31°:36'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N80°E	92	42°:25'S	42°:30'S	108°:23'E	107:6	

[Page 296]

289.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Saturd ^y .	Aug ^t . 9 th . 1788	Observations
1	4		EbN	SSE					The wind began to encrease with very Squally W ^r . which brought us under dble Reefs.
2	8		East						Rain & Sleet.
3	8								
4	7	4	EbN			43¾			
5	6		EbS	S°.	“				It now blew a Strong Gale with Squalls which obliged me to taken in the Fore Top Sail. At 6 We are under close Reefed M. TS & Reefed Courses.
6	5								
7	4	6							
8	4	6				43¼			
9	4	4							
10	4	2							
11	4	3	ESE	SbW					
12	4	2				44¾			
1	5	4							

2 5 4 “ “ “ Hard Gales - hand^d M. Top S^l.

3 3 Rain At 21^h:53' Lat^d. 42°:4'S
Long^d. T.K = 109°:06'E

4 3 Varia. same time
A Compss - 11°:53'W

5 2 SEbE SSW 45 d°. Turned - 11:47
Mean = 11:50W

6 2 “ Set close Reefed M. TS.

7 3

8 3 3 45¾ Strong Gale & fair W^r. Served
Portable Soup Gruel as usual &
9 3 3 Served a Pint of Sweet wort to
each Man.

10 3 4 SE½E SWbS

11 3 Sailmakers Employed putting a 2nd. Reef to the
second Fore Sail.

12 3 4 SE 46 Aired & cleaned below. Made two Fires between
Decks. Out Reef of the Main S^l.

106 At Noon Fair W^r. & Mod. Gale – Light Squalls of
19385 Rain at times. Many Blue Petterals, Pintada
19491 Sheerwaters & small Albatrosses. Much head
sea. Under Dble Reefed TS & Reefed Fore Sail.

Merid Alt^d
O Center 32°:16'

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d . D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.	N77°E 103	42°:02'S 41°:59'S	110°:38'E 109°:13'E
H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem ^s . Sund ^y . Aug ^t . 10 th . 1788	Observations		

[Page 297]
290.

1 3 5 SE SWbS Fair W^r. and Mod. Gale. Issued Clean Hammocks
and Bags to all the Seamen.

2 4

3 4			At 3 ^h :24' Lat ^d . 42°:07'S
			Long ^d . T.K = 109°:26'E
4 3 6	“	46¼ Fresh Breezes. Out all but	Varia. same time
		1 st . Reefs in the Top Sl ^s .	A Compss - 11°:51'W
5 3 4			d°. Turned - 12:24
			Mean = 12:07W
6 3 4			
7 3 6	SW		
8 3 4		47	
9 3			
10 3	SWbW	Some light Rain at times	
11 3			
12 3	WSW	47	
1 3			
2 2 6			
3 3			
4 3 2		47½	
		Varia ⁿ from	
5 3		W ^t . to NNW	
6 3 2			
7 3 2	“	“	“
8 3 6		NWbN 48¼ Set Steer ^g Sails. Mod ^t . and cloudy W ^r . Served	
		Portable Soup Gruel & Sweet Wort as Yesterday.	
9 5 6			
10 5 6		Mustered the People & Saw them clean Read the	
		Articles of War & performed Divine Service.	
11 6 4	SEbE	NNW	

12 7 “ 50 Cloudy W^r. the Sun out at times & got a good
Observation.
91 Small Albatrosses, Pintada Birds & blue
19491 Petterals. - Smooth Water.
19582

Merid Alt^d
O Center 31°:51'

	Latitude	Longitude
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d . D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.		
N61°E 88 42:45S 42:50S 112:23		

[Page 298]
291.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Mond^y. Aug^t. 11th. 1788 Observations

1 6 6 SEbE NbW	Fair W ^r . and for the first time since I left the Cape I got some distances of the Sun & Moon but could get no Variations.
2 6 6	
3 7 3	
4 7 3	51½ Employed Washing the Hammocks & Bags.
5 7 N°.	At 3 ^h :56':18" Lat ^d . 42°:57'S° Long ^d . T.K. = 110°:45':6E O West D Observ ^d . & reduced to same time By Ramsden B - 112°:34' d° - C 112:51:15
6 7 2	
7 8	
8 8 4	50 Very fresh Gale & Squally. Troughton H - 112:11 In Stud ^s Sails. Mean = 112:12:5E ^t .
9 9	T.K. less than Obs - 0:26:59
10 8	
11 8	
12 8 4	49¾ Sea covered with luminous spots.
1 6 ESE	

2 5 3	SEbE	WSW	Wind suddenly Shifted & the Air much colder.
3 5 6			
4 6		43¼	Very Squally & Light ^g . In Dble Reefs.
5 7			At 21 ^h :56' Lat ^d . 43°:47'S Long ^d . T.K. = 114:24:25E
6 7	“	“	“ Hail & Sleet Varia ^s . same time A Compss - 12°:09'W d°. Turned - 12:28 Mean = 12:19W.
7 7			
8 7 4		43½	Serv ^d . Portable Soup Gruel as usual for breakfast.
9 7 3			
10 7	“	“	“ Fair Intervals. Cleand & Dried below with Fires.
11 6 6			Sailmakers ab ^t . the Fore Sail and Hands making Cable Platts.
12 6 4		43¼	Squally with Fair Intervals. Kept a point more to the Eastward & out Reefs & Set F.T.M ^t . Stud ^g Sail. A Few Small Albatrosses, Blue Petterals and Sheerwaters.
172			
19582			
19754			
			Merid Alt ^d O Center 31°:00'

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S67°E	173	43°:53'S	43°:51'S	116°:01'E	114°:48'E	
[Page 299]						
292.						
H K F Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Tuesd ^y .	Aug ^t . 12 th .	1788 Observations
1 6 6	ESE	WSW	Squally W ^r .	with Fair Intervals w ^{ch} .	enabled me to	get distances of the Sun & Moon
2 6 5		SW				

152

19754

19906

Merid Alt^d

O Center 30°:52'

	Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.
S80°E	151	44:19S	44:23	119:29	117:59E

[Page 300]

293.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. Aug^t. 13th. 1788 Observations

1 7 EbS WbS Squally with Fair W^r. at times, and at others slight
showers of Rain

2 6 4 WSW

3 6 3

4 6 48½

5 7

6 7

7 6 6

8 6 4 “ 47½

9 6 4

10 6 4

11 6 4

12 6 6 WNW 47¾

1 6 6 East

2 7 4

3 8

4 8 47¾

5 7 4 At 21^h:39' Lat^d. 44°:16'S

Long^d. T.K. = 121:26E

6 7 4 Varia p^r. Azths. same time

A Compss - 6°:38'W

7 7 6 Served Portable Soup for d°. turned - 6:14

Breakfast & Dinner as usual B Compss - 6:30

8 7 4 48½ & Wort at eleven O'Clock d°. turned - 6:10

Mean = 6:23W

9 8 Mustered All hands to their

Quarters & exercised.

10 8 Unbent the old Fore Sail &

Bent the Second Best.

11 8 4

12 8 4 50 Wind increasing and the Sea rising from the
Westward. Under whole FS & Fore T.M^t. &
lower Stud^g Sail. Few Pintada & Blue Petterals

172

19906

20078

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N88°E	171	44°:13'S	44°:09'S	123:26E	121:56E	

[Page 301]

294.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. Aug^t. 14th. 1788 Observations

1 8 EbN WNW Fresh Gales and cloudy W^r. Much Sea from
Westward

2 7 6

3 7

4 7 3	48½	Carried away Fore T. M ^t . Stud ^s Yard. In Stud ^s Sails.	At 2 ^h :29' Lat ^d 44°:07'W Long ^d . T.K. = 122:23E
5 7 4	NWbW		Could get no Azth ^s . w ^{ch} . I regret much as
6 7 6			I am sensible the Variation decreases very
7 8			fast and am anxious to determine ye line of
8 8 4	47	Strong Gale Dble Reefed The TS	no Variation this part.
9 8	East.		
10 7 4	SWbW	“ Wind suddenly Shifted.	
11 8			
12 7 4	SW	43¼	
1 8		Close Reefed the Fore TS and triple Reefed the Main TS – Some Rain.	
2 8			
3 7 3			
4 7 4	42	Strong Gales Hail & Snow. At 22 ^h :7' Lat ^d 43°:41'S Many Luminous patches on the Water.	Long ^d . T.K. = 125:30E
5 8			
6 7 4			
7 7 4			
8 7 4	41½	Severe Squalls – Hail & Snow. Empl ^d . taking in & setting the TS occasionally Served Portable Soup & Wort as usual & some empl ^d . making Plats.	
9 6 6			
10 7 6			
11 7 5			
12 7 5	45	Strong Gales & high breaking Sea – Several heavy ones made way over us this Morning &	

184 Stove the Quarter Boards in. Under Close Reefed
 20078 Fore TS & triple reefed Main TS & Fore Sail.
 20262 Many blue Petterals, some small Albatrosses,
 & Pintada

Merid Alt^d

O Center 32°:8'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N79°E	184	43°:39'S°.	43°:44'S	127°:37'E	125°:47'E	

[Page 302]

295.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Frid^y. August 15th. 1788 Observations

1	7	4	E½S	SW	Strong Gale and a high breaking Sea obliged to carry all possible Sail. The Squalls of Hail and Snow much Wind in them which we sometimes clew all up to. Between the Squalls fair Intervals and continued the same all these 24 Hours. Many Birds about.
2	7	2			
3	7	4			
4	7	4		42⅓	
5	7	4			
6	7	4			At 3 ^h :13' Lat ^d 43°:39'S
7	7	5			Long ^d . T.K. = 126:15E ^t .
8	7	5		40	Could get no Observations for the Variation, a circumstance I never fail to determine whenever an opportunity offers
9	7		SSW		
10	7	4			
11	7				
12	7			41	
1	7		EbS	SW	

2 7

3 7

4 7

42¾

At 21^h:26' Lat^d 43°:37'S
Long^d. T.K. = 129°:9'E^t.

5 7

6 6 6

7 7

8 6 6

46

9 6 4

Clean'd and dryed below with Fires – Served
Hot breakfast of Portable Soup Gruel, also
Portable Soup & Krout in their pease.

10 6 2

11 7 2

At 11 Served Sweetwort to every Person.

12 7 6

46⅓ Under close Reef TS and Courses. A high Sea
from the SW. Few Birds.

172

20262

20434

In the Course of the Night saw many luminous
Spots upon the Sea as we have done some Nights
past those that came near the Ship appeared to
me to be like Blubbers of one or two feet
Diameter

Merid Alt^d

O Center 32°:28'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
East	172	43°:38'S	43°:38'S	131°:26'E	129°:35'E	

[Page 303]

296.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturd^y. August 16th. 1788 Observations

1 7 3 EbS

SW

Strong Gales & Squally wth. Rain
and much Sea from the South^d.

2 7	SWbW	
3 6 4	“ “	More Mod. out 4 th . & 3 ^d . Reef M. TS and 4 th . Reef Fore TS.
4 6 4 “	“	46½ Few Birds and the Thermometer rising indicates that the Southerly Wind is nearly over.
5 6 7		
6 6 7		
7 7 4		
8 8	47¼	Cloudy W ^r . with squalls of Rain & fair intervals.
9 7 4		
10 7		(a) 131°:8'
11 7 4		
12 7	E½S WbS 47¼	I consider the Line of No Variation by proportion to be in Latitude 44°:09'S (b) 131°:8'E by T.K. & 131°:49'E ^t . True by applying its Error – 41 Miles
1 6 4		
2 6 4		
3 6 4		
4 6 6	47½	
5 7		
6 7 2		
7 7		At 20 ^h :49' Lat ^d 43°:56'S Cloudy W ^r . with less Rain Long ^d . T.K. = 132:35E & at times a Varia p ^r . Azths. same time
8 7	48	bright Sun. A Compss - 2°:26'E ^t . Served Portable Soup & d ^o . turned - 1:26
9 7 4		Sweet Wort and dried & B Compss - 1:26 cleaned below with Fires d ^o . turned - 1:12
10 7		as yesterday Mean = 1:38E ^t .

11 7

12 7 48¾ Fresh Gale & fair W^r. In Jan^y. 1780 in
 Under Single Reefs - Lat^d 44°:23'S°. &
 No Birds. Long^d. 131°:28'East
 on board the Resolution
 I made the Variation
 6°:00'West

Merid Alt^d
 O Center 32°:27'

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
S83°E	169	43:58S	44°:01'S°. 135°:18'E 133°:5'E 133:46

[Page 304]
 297.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sund^y. 17th. August 1788 Observations

1 6 E½S WbS Fresh Gales and fair W^r. with Squalls of small
 Rain at times. Much Sea from the Westw^d.

3
 2 East West
 3

3 6 4 Observations since 10th. At 3^h:10':54" Lat^d 43°:58'S
 Instant red^d to this day Long^d. T.K. = 133°:37':52"E
 4 6 4 49 at 3^h: 10':54" Varia^s. p^r. Azth^s. same time.
 A Compss - 0°:24'East

M ^o . Day	Long ^d . by T. Keeper	Long ^d . Obs ^d .	Correct ⁿ . to be appl ^d .	True Long ^d .
Aug 11	111.45.06	112.34.00	+21.52.46	134.26.46
		111.51.15		133.44.01
		112.11.00		134.3.46
12	115.12.57	116.24.33	+18.24.55	134.49.28
		114.55.48		133.20.43
		115.49.53		134.14.28
17	133.37.52	134.55.51		134.55.51
		134.36.51		134.36.51

		134.46.58	134.46.58
		134.14.06	134.14.06
		Mean Longd.	134.19.18
			133.37.51
		T. Keeper less than Obs.	-41.26
5 6 2	WbS		d°. turned - 0:27
			B Compss - 1:18
6 6 2			d°. turned - 2:17
			Mean = 0:51East
7 7			Antares West of D
			nearest Limbs & furthest
8 7	48		Obs ^d . at 11¼ ^h red ^d . to
			the same time.
9 6 2			Ramsden B = 134°:55':51" Near
			d° d° = 134:36:51Furth.
10 6 2			Trough ^t . H = 134:46:58 Near
			d° d° = 134:14:6 Furth.
11 6 4	WbN	Open Cloudy W ^r . & the	Mean = 134:38:36E ^t .
		Moon at the full I had	T.K. less than Obs = 1:0:34
12 6 4	48	just time to get a Set of	
		Observ ^s . from Antares to	
1 6 6 E½N	WNW	the West, from both Limbs.	
2 7 4			
3 7 4			
4 7 4	WbN	48¾	
5 7 2			
6 7	“	“	“ Set Fore T. M ^t . Steering Sail
			Served Portable Soup Gruel for
7 7 4			Breakfast, & Dinner as usual
			Mustered all hands & Saw them
8 7 4		49¾ clean – served Sweet Wort	At 22 ^h :21' Lat ^d 43°:54'S
		& Performed Divine	Long ^d . T.K. = 136°:39'E ^t .
9 7 4		Service.	
10 7 6			
11 7		Thick Rainy W ^r . with Intervals of Sun Shine and	

12 7 a fresh Gale & a long Sea from the Westward
51¼ Very few Birds.

165
20602
20767

Merid Alt^d
O Center 32°:52

		Latitude	Longitude			
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
E2°N	165	43:54S	43:57S	139°:08'E	136:56E	137:37E

[Page 305]
298.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Mond^y. 18th. Aug^t. 1788 Observations

1 7 4 E½N WNW Fresh Gales and thick Misty W^r. with Rain at
time and a long Sea from the westward.

2 8

3 7 6 In Stud^g Sail

4 7 4 50½

5 7 6

6 7 6 “ Dble Reefed the TS the Wind
increasing.

7 7 2

8 7 2 50

9 7 4

10 7 3

11 8

12 7 6 49¾

1 8

2 8

3 8

4 8 50

5 8 At 21^h:33' Lat^d 43°:48'S
Long^d. T.K. = 140°:29½'E

6 7 4 More Mod. Out 2^d. Reefs. Varia p^r. Azths same
time –

7 7 4 A Compss - 6°:37'E^t.
d^o. turned - 5:16

8 7 6 50½ Very hazy W^r. & a Fresh Gale B Compss - 6:16
d^o. turned - 8:22

9 7 4 Served Portable Soup & A Compss - 6:36
Krout as usual also Sweet d^o. turned - 7:29

10 7 2 wort at 11 O'Clock. Mean = 6:49East

11 7 4 Cleaned & dried below.

Out 1st. Reef Main Top Sail.

12 7 4 52½ Fresh Gale & Very hazy W^r.
and cloudy, with bright Intervals

184 of Sun Shine. Saw some Fish a species of the
20767 Whale called Finners, from their Fins. A few
20951 Sheerwaters.

Under whole Main & Single Reefed Fore Top S^l.

Merid Alt^d

O Center 33°:16'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
E2°N	184	43°:47'S	43°:44S	144°:24'E	140°:55'E	141:36E

[Page 306]

299

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. 19th. Aug^t. 1788 Observations

1 7 4 East WNW Fresh Gales & Cloudy W^r. with much haze and
frequent strong Squalls with small Rain.

2 7			Many of the small kind of Albatrosses, Petterels & Sheerwaters, came suddenly about us.
3 7			
4 7	“	50 ³ / ₄	
5 7 2			
6 7 2			
7 7 2			
8 7 4	“	50	Dble Reefed the Top Sails
9 7 6		NWbW	
10 7 6			
11 7 6			
12 7 6		49	
1 7 6	E ¹ / ₂ N	NW	
2 7 2			
3 7 2			
4 7		49	
5 7			
6 6 6	“	“	Out 2 nd . Reefs
			At 21 ^h :36' Lat ^d 44°:3'S Long ^d . T.K. = 144:29E
7 7			
8 7		49 ¹ / ₄	Served Hot breakfast of Portable Soup Gruel & Krout & ^c . for dinner as usual.
9 7 6			
10 8	EbN	“	“ Very fresh Gales & Squally w ^r . obliged me to take in two Reefs. Saw a Seal as they were Reefing.
11 8		NNW	Served Sweet wort, and bent the Cables.

12 8 50¾ D° Gales & rather thick W^r. wth. much Sea from the
 NW, but at times the Sun appeared & I got good
 Observations. Under Dble Reefs – Two Pintada
 & but few Sheerwaters – Carrying all possible Sail
 to make the Land.
 Merid Alt^d
 O Center 33°:20'

	Latitude		Longitude	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.
E5°S	178	44:02S	43°:43'S	148:28 144°:45'E
				L & T.K. 145:26E

[Page 307]
 300.

Remarks.

Depending fully on my Observations for finding the Error of the Timekeeper on the 17th. I steered accordingly to make the land near the Mewstone. I had no other sign of being near it the whole day but the Seal which was seen in the morning. At Noon I computed the Mewstone to bear from me N65°E only 12 leag^s. The Gale encreased with rather thick weather and a high breaking Sea, but as the Wind was favourable to make the Coast I carried much Sail by which means every one got thoroughly wet by the Sea making a fair breach over us, notwithstanding I got a good Noon observation & likewise very good ones for the Long^d. by the T.Keeper.

[Page 308]
 301.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. 20th. Aug^t. 1788 Observations

1 7 6 ENE NW Strong Gales and very Squally W^r. with much
 Sea from the West^d.

2 7 6

3 7 4 NE½E NWbN At 2 O'Clock Saw the Land of Van Diemens the
 Mewstone NE 6 or 7 leagues. Got the lee Anchor

4 7 4 “ “ 51¾ over.

5 7 4 At 4 The Mewstone NbW½W on with another

6	7	4	NE	NNW	high Rock. 2 or 3 leagues from the Mewstone. Cockscombe Hill NbE & SW Cape NW $\frac{1}{4}$ W. South Cape NE $\frac{1}{4}$ E ^t .
7	6				At 6 ^h . The Mewstone West 5 leagues and The South Cape NE $\frac{1}{2}$ N. Saw a Fire on the Land.
8	4		ENE	N ^o .	53 $\frac{3}{4}$
9	2	2			At 8 ^h . The W ^r . moderated and became almost Calm Out reefs & Up T.G. Mast. The South Cape bearing NNW 2 leagues.
10	4		NE $\frac{1}{2}$ E	NNW	
11	3	4			At 10 a Mod. breeze & fair W ^r . made all Sail to get to the east ^d . of the Eddyston.
12	3	4	ENE	N ^o .	53 $\frac{1}{2}$ At 12 Tasmans Head At 4 ^h :27' Lat ^d 43 ^o :54'S NbE 5 Leagues Long ^d . T.K. = 145 ^o :54':58"E S ^o .W $\frac{1}{2}$ S.
1	3				
2	3		East	NNE	
3	3	4	ENE	N ^o .	“ Very Squally Dble Reefed the TS.
4	4				52 $\frac{3}{4}$ Tasmans Head NW 4 leagues.
5	4		“	“	“ Dark Cloudy W ^r .
6	3	4			
1	6				
7				“	“ TK ^d
1	6		WbN	NbW	
8	3				53 $\frac{1}{4}$ D ^o W ^r . Tasmans Head WNW 8 leag ^s . S ^o . Cape West the East part of Maria Isles NbE $\frac{1}{2}$ E – Got the Sm ^l . B ^r . Anchor over.
9	3		W ^t .	NNW	
10	3	4	WbS	NWbN	
11	4	2	WSW	NW	Served Portable Soup & Sweet Wort as usual & Cleaned below.
12	5	-	NNW	W ^t .	52 Mod. & Cloudy W ^r . and wind Varia. with squalls of Rain at times. Tasman's Head NWbW $\frac{3}{4}$ W about 6 leag ^s . S ^o . Cape WbS & Fluted Cape NWbN. Saw some decayed
111					
21129					

21240 patches of Snow upon some of the High Lands.
All the Country is covered with Wood

Merid Alt^d
O Center 43°:57'

Latitude		Longitude		
Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
43°:45'S		151°:29'E	146:46	147:37

[Page 309]
302.

Remarks.

As my observations and the Time Keeper pointed out to me that I was so near the Coast of New Holland it induced me to carry a great deal of Sail in order to make it as early as possible, and perfectly to my most sanguine expectation it was discovered at 2 O'Clock. It was not before the Mewstone bore West of me that I got clear of a very heavy Sea that came from the west^d., and as I was desirous to get hold of the land the Wind northing upon us, all possible sail was carried. By the time I had got the length of the South Cape the w^f. came mod^t. with Little Winds, w^{ch}. soon after freshened again & carried me clear of the Eddystone, but as it continued contrary the remaining part of the day; I could make but little progress to Noon.

The Mewstone is a High bold Rock that lies 5 leagues to the SE of the SW Cape and should be the part that all Ships bound this way should endeavor to make. Several islands lie to the northward between it & the Cape among w^{ch}. is a high perpendicular Rock not much unlike the Mewston itself & bears ab^t. NbW from it. To the NNE of the Mewston the Coast has the appearance of a place of good Shelter with some small islands lying near it. It is situated under a very high Mountain w^{ch}. in this direction is notched on the Top like a Cocks-Comb, but as you advance to the Eastward it looses that form, and appears wth. high Round Top.

The Land is of irregular heights from this to the SW Cape – Near the Cape it forms into a low Isthmus, then the Cape makes with two patches of high land the outermost of w^{ch}. is much the smallest.

Towards the South Cape the interior parts of the Country is rather higher than the Cockscomb Land, & tapers gradually to the South Cape, besides w^{ch}., it requires no other description than that it is the most Southerly point of all the Land. When

I was here before it was remarked for having three Hills on it & was called three Hill Cape.

The whole way what I have seen of it, is a fair coast, the principal thing to be attended when passing the S°. Cape is the Eddyston Rocks to the SE of it, but neither one or the other need prevent any one from going on in the Night if governed by my Plan of it.

[Page 310]
303.

H K F Courses Winds Ther L^{gs}.Rem^s. Thursd^y. 21st. Aug^t. 1788 Observations

1	3	2	NbW	WbN		Mod. & Cloudy W ^r . with Varia Winds & W ^r .
						At 3 ^h :58' Lat ^d 43°:24'½S
2	3					Pengwin Isl ^d . Long ^d . T.K. = 146°:58':39"E
						bore WbN½N 8 Miles
3	1	4	"	"	42	Measured distance equal to 11' in Long ^d .
4	2				54 42	Sound ^{gs} . fine Reddish Sand. Tasmans Head SW
						4 leag ^s . Pengwin Isl ^d . WbN½N 9 Miles.
	2		NE	NNW		
5					" 40	TK ^d . D°. Sound ^{gs} .
	1		NbN	NWbN		
	1	4	SW	WNW	" "	TK ^d . Pengwin Isl ^d . WbN½N 4 leag ^s . Tasman's
6						Head SW½W & the SE part of Maria's Isles
	1	4	NWbN	WbS		NEbE½E.
7	3		NNW	West	" 35	D°. Sound ^{gs} .
8	2				51¼ 34	Light Breezes & Cloudy – D°. Sound ^{gs} . Pengwin
						Isl ^d . SWbW½W & SE p ^t . Marias Isles EbN½N. –
9	2	4	SSW.	"	30	Varia ^s . p ^r . Azths at
						3 ^h .58'
10	5		SbW	WbS		Very unsettled W ^r . with A Compss - 8°:39'E
						Squalls of Rain d°. turned - 8:28
11	4	6	"	"	" "	TK ^d . Pengwin Isl ^d . WNW B Compss - 8:46
						Mean = 8:38E
12	4		NWbN		47 33	D°W ^r . Pengwin Isl ^d . SWbW
						d° soundings.
1	"	"	"	"	30	TK ^d . Ship C. Fredrick Henry NbE. Pengwin
						Isl ^d . S¾W

2 “ “ 25 D°. Soundings.
 3 “ “ Very 22
 4 “ “ Variable 19
 5 “ “ 17 Employed Working into the Bay lead
 6 20 constantly going with light Variable Winds
 7 16 sometimes squally with thick Rain. Surf
 8 15 making much Noise in the shore.
 9 “ “ “ “ “ “ 17 At ¼ past 5 as we could no longer gain ground
 10 16 farther into the Bay.
 11 14
 12 13 At ½ past 11 Came to with the small B^r. in
 10 8½ fm^s. Veered & moored wth. an open Hawse
 9 to the NW
 12 “ 46¾ Penguin Island N57½°E 1¾ or 2 Miles East
 37 end of the Beach S53°E. The Mouth of the Lake
 21240 S16°E the West end of the Beach N78½°W
 21277 1 Mile – Northermost head on the West shore
 next the low land N22°W & Cape Fredrick
 Henry N23°E^t.
 The T. K. gave the Long^d. of Penguin Isld. By
 the common Observⁿ. to day & the 23^d.
 146°:46':42"E^t.

Latitude		Longitude			Rem ^s .
Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	True Long ^d
43°:21':50"S		151°:13'E	146°:44'E	147°:25'E	147°:33'

[Page 311]
 304.

Remarks.

From South Cape the Land falls back in a deep & extensive Bay the SE point of w^{ch}. is formed by Tasmans Head and a number of Rocky Islets off it called the

Fryers. This place may be dreaded if a Ship is caught with a Southerly Wind & is embayed, but I think from what I could see of it that a place of Shelter in such an extremity will certainly be found on the east side of it. From Tasman's Head the coast turns short off to the North to Fluted Cape, near to w^{ch}. is Pengwin Island that forms the East part of Safe Anchorage in Adventure Bay. Cape Fredrick Henry makes the North point of the Bay from w^{ch}. all the Way from Tasman's Head is deep Water. You must get within Penguin Island before you can get into convenient Anchorage, but with light Winds & Variable, you may stop any where with respect to the ground, it being all clear & fine sandy soundings of a Reddish colour, taking care wth. the appearance of a Southerly Wind to get your Anchor up in time; but I shall give my description of the Coast more at large hereafter.

My grand object not to loose time, made me determine to effect my anchorage in the Bay if possible in the course of the Night and getting tolerably forward by midnight I kept all hands up the remaining part of it. The Wind being not only variable but at times Calm and at others very squally & thick Rain made our working in the dark not only troublesome but hazardous, I therefore Anchored as soon as I came abreast of Pengwin Isl^d. in 17 fm^s and gave the People a couple of hours rest untill Sun Rise. I then got under way again as soon as a Breeze came, and at ½ past 11 Anchored well into the Bay making it a secure Harbour, being entirely land locked wth. Marias Isles & the opening between Pengwin Island & the Main totally shut in.

Having given the necessary directions to Moor & secure the Ship I set off in my Boat to look for the most convenient place to wood & water at, and directed a Boat to be sent to haul the Seine. Other preparations were begun to wood & Water the Ship.

There were several places in the Woods where there was the appearance of Smoke, but I am doubtfull if it was any more than some exhalations of the Sun. Some high Land to the Northward of the Bay had patches of decayed Snow on it.

[Page 312]

305.

Winds Ther Rem^s. in Adventure Bay Van Diemen's Land.

	Friday August 22 nd . 1788 –
NWbN	Fresh Gales and Squally these 24 Hours with fair Intervals
	At 4 This afternoon I returned on board having determined on the
50°	spot to wood & water at and is the same we wooded at when I was
	here with Captain Cook, altho at that time here was no water; for

NNW this Stream^(a) is formed by the Rains from the Mountains producing
^(a) See a large quantity of Water in the Lake at the back of the Beach, from
 Rem^s on which only it has vent by this and at another place near the east
 24th. end of the Beach; but this is by far most convenient, having not
 WNW above 60 Y^{ds}. to roll the Casks, and the Water thoroughly good.

49 Wood was equally convenient & good to be got at any part;
 W^t. however this place had much the advantage in one particular; the
 surf being not so great as at every other part of the Bay, where
 loading the Boats would not only be attended with trouble but risk.

WSW 50 The parties were now appointed for the different duties, and in the
 Morning the Wood Cutters began their Work, & the Hold was
 W^t. prepared for taking it on board. Contrary to my expectations we
 could catch no Fish with the Seine, at least only a few Flounders &

NW 47 others like a Soul but not so good, with some flatheaded Fish
 called by a Fisherman on board Foxes, but of little value as to size or
 taste, the whole amounting not to twenty. I therefore sent the small
 WNW Cutter away near the Rocks with Hooks & line but here we had no
 better success as they caught only a few Foxes.

Our disappointment in this particular was felt the more as Fish was
 W^t. the only Refreshment we could expect to find in this place. I had
 47 hopes to make up for all this by discovering Wild Ducks in the
 Lake, but with all my care I could only get two shot at them,
 & those at such a distance it had no effect but driving them away,
 NNW so that now totally disappointed of any thing for the present
 but Ships fare, a few hours recon[n]ciled us to it.

NW I could find no recent marks of the Natives having been this
 way, or any one else, & from this I concluded
 to Commodore Phillip touch'd not here in his way to Botany
 48 Bay. I examined some old Stumps of Trees we cut down here
 West in Jan^y. 1777, from these there were some Shoots about 20 & 30
 feet high & about 14 Inches Circumference. M^r. Nelson began to
 employ himself in his way & his Assis^t

[Page 313]
 306.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturday August 23^d.

The first & latter part of this day was very squally with showers of
 Rain in the first, but the middle part was Light breezes & Cloudy.
 Our entire busyness this day was in wooding and we began to take
 on board in the morning, but the surf in all parts of the bay, was so
 W^t. 50 great that even at the place we were at, where it was by far the

least, I was obliged to direct it all to be rafted off in Bundles to the Launch, and it was not 'till Noon before I could get her loaded and by night we only got $\frac{2}{3}$ of a Boatload more off.

My Carpenter on my expressing my disapprobation of his conduct with respect to orders he had received from me concerning the

NW 47 mode of working with the wooding Party, behaved in a most insolent and reprehensible manner. I therefore ordered him on board, there to assist in the general duty of the Ship, as I could not bear the loss of an able working & healthy Man; otherwise I N^o.

48 $\frac{3}{4}$ should have committed him to close confinement untill I could have tried him, the prospect of which appears to be of so long a date made me determine to keep him at his Duty giving him a chance by his future conduct to make up in some degree for his ill behaviour at this place.

WNW 47 $\frac{1}{2}$ In the evening M^r. Nelson & his Assistant returned having made an Excursion round the East side of the Bay & at some distance within the coast. He informed me his walk was not without much profit as he had collected several things he believed were new, at least not known by him; & that the season was favorable as most of the Shrubs & plants were pretty forward in bloom. As this place has

N 50 not been botanically searched and wishing him much success I told him every assistance should be given to him that he required. He said they had met with two or three small places of shelter made by the bark of the Tree over a few small Boughs, but that he neither met with any Inhabitants or any other signs of them. However, 50^o notwithstanding he met with Shrubs & plants in bloom all the Forrest Trees show no Signs of Spring being all evidently in their dormant state. He saw

[Page 314]
307.

Winds Ther Rem^s. in Adventure Bay Saturd^y. Aug^t 23^d. 1788 – continued

A Tree growing and luxuriant that measured at the base w[h]ere he could conveniently take the dimensions 33 $\frac{1}{2}$ feet in Circumference. Our success in fishing & Shooting continued equally unsuccessfull except two Birds Shot by M^r. Christian under whose charge the wooding Party was – They were those described by Doctor Anderson black oyster-catchers or Sea Pies. This Bird is larger than a large Pidgeon with a red Bill about 3 Inches long – the Eye lids are described by a by a line of the like colour & the legs with three claws are the same. The Belly & Rump have white feathers,

and all the rest are black except a small strake in the full part of the wing where the ends of the small black feathers are tip'd with white. He shot also a very beautiful plumaged Bird which we called the Lauryquet being larger than a Paroquet but it had nearly the same Colours only the blue & Red was rather more brilliant. In preference to sending my People away at day break I directed them to have their hot breakfast (,as usual,) at 7 O'Clock & their Dinners were sent on shore at the usual time. My small Compliment of men made it necessary for them to be their own Guards, and attending them myself the whole day with a spare Boat & armed Men, occasionally otherwise employed, made nothing else necessary.

Wind Ther Rem^s. Sunday August 24th. 1788

	Fresh gales & very strong Squalls with very bright & firey Southern
NW	Lights that were flying in every direction. The Clouds had rapid
51½°	motion & from the SW & I attribute to this the very heavy surf that
WSW	sets in all over the Bay. I could only get my Launch ⅔ loaded by
51¼°	night & one in the Forenoon owing to the prodigious surf, so that
WNW	our exertions in this part of our busyness had but an indifferent
49¾°	effect. M ^r . Nelson & His Assistant diligently employed themselves
	as before. As there route was different to what it was Yesterday,
48°	they in like manner found a few place of Shelter made by the
	Inhabitants as already described & in their return picked up a Male
48°	Oppossum which had been recently killed or dyed as it had no
49°	wound, unless it had

[Page 315]
308.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Sunday August 24th. 1788 continued

been killed by a blow just above the Tail w[h]ere we observed the hair was off about the space of a Shilling. They also picked up the only article of ingenuity that we have yet been acquainted with – it was a close Cap fitted to come as low as the Ears wove with twisted grass but very open and only calculated to prevent the Hair from blowing about the face. It would fully have made me determine the Natives of this place had long Hair had not [I] been acquainted to the contrary for it is not possible it could either keep out Rain or Cold. We now can see no smokes or any signs of the Natives being in the Neighbourhood, and I am much inclined to think that

at this time of the Year they retire to some sheltered part where they can get muscles & other shell fish which here they must find totally impracticable from the Sea breaking so violently on every part of the Bay.

I this day determined to find out the source if any, of the place I had pitched upon for watering, & tracing the run of it I found I was mistaken that it came from the Lake as I have before described, on the contrary I found it was only a collection of Rain Water that had come from the Hills. From this I traced the Lake again, but from its real western extremity, & I found its only outlet to be 1¼ miles from it, through high Grass & Reeds, having one arm of a tolerable size leading up towards the Hills. When I tasted & used Soap to prove the water before, I found it perfectly fresh & good, but today I traversed the Banks of it up to the Knee in water which discovered to me I had not adverted to the tide, w^{ch}. at this time was at its height & had mixed itself so with the lake as made it very brackish to the taste & would not bear the use of Soap.

[Page 316]

309.

Winds Ther Rem^s. in Adventure Bay. Sund^y. August 24th. 1788

Most of the Forrest Trees are now in a state of shedding their bark and have exactly the appearance of the Rind, being designedly stript off. These Trees consist of two kinds as are already described by Captain Cook and in cutting them found the same red Gum as particularly mentioned by Doctor Anderson, but as we met with it only in very small quantities I apprehend this is not the season it discharges itself from the Tree that being in the return of the Juices after the real acts of Vegetation has done taking place. There are besides those Trees, (which to be sure may be deemed most superb in their growth and branching,) several others which may answer many other purposes besides Fuel. One of them bears a leaf something like a Guava Tree and by a Man who was acquainted with the different kinds of Wood in America I was assured it was the Maple. It is a firm good Wood & may cut for most purposes except Plank or Masts, but for such uses I saw none large enough. The Forrest Trees, for as such I shall describe them, are not so highly valuable for Masts even if they could be freed from their immense weight, as they are generally decayed in the heart at least all those we cut down were found so; however their weight is a very great objection, unless in case of Necessity; but as

I have not discovered that their texture is closer than some of our Trees in England, altho very considerably heavier, it may not be improbable that when the luxuriance of the juices is dried up, by being cut down, they may become light & valuable for Shipping; - There are a variety of shrubs, and among them is what is generally called the New Zeland Tea Tree. The only spot of ground clear of Wood is Near and about the Lake – it only bears a kind of Wire Grass and Rushes. At the back of the Beach & among the Trees this Grass grows of a finer nature & having cut some of the best of it, I found my Sheep & Goats to eat it more readily than they did the Hay I brought from the Cape of Good Hope. The Soil is very sandy towards the Sea but as you advance towards the Hills it becomes more rich & Valuable & I believe capable of producing anything; - I this day had formed a plan of hauling the Seine on the Lake, but I found it too deep to ford to the other side, - to gether [better of this difficulty required too much time for one to put it in execution. I now ordered the People to be served full allowance of Bread.

[Page 317]
310.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Monday August 25th. 1788

WSW		The first & middle part fresh Gales & Squally, the latter Fair W ^r . Employed wooding and watering – repairing the Rigging & Sails. A very heavy surf continues round every part of the Bay the wind
	50 ¹ / ₄	having been Southerly at Sea, yet the Ship rides very steady & there is no appearance of much Sea without.
to		This evening the People caught with Hook & Line about two dozen Rock Cod. M ^r . Nelson in his Travels to day, told me he had
SSW	44	again taken a look at that Fine Tree that had drawn his attention on the 23 rd . by its healthy look and large size – that on measuring it round, he again found the circumference to be 33 feet 6 Inches. Altho Where the Sun gets up the weather on shore is warm &
NW	42	pleasant yet he found Ice in some places near an eighth of an Inch thick. The Snow still continues in some places on a high flat
Calm	40	Mountain to the Northward but evidently is less than when we came in.
		I now despair of seeing any of the Natives, having had both sides of the Bay well traversed without that success, as I could wish to
SSW	44	have determined whether the Natives had Hair or Wool on their Heads, a circumstance which is alluded to from Capt King's

N^{oly}. 49½ account that they had the former & that Captⁿ. Cook was convinced of it altho' he expressly describes them to the contrary. I cannot therefore help pay^e. this humble tribute to Cap^t Cooks memory, that I do not believe he was mistaken, as his remarkable circumspection in many other things has shown how little he has been ~~mistaken~~ wrong, even when he had not the particular article before him to judge of; much less do I conceive he would have erred here in so very remarkable a matter, wherein it differed so widely wth. his observations on the Natives a few hundred leagues to the northward amidst his own discoveries on the same continent. Besides, Altho I did not see them myself, I well remember that all those who did, described them to be woolly headed. I saw to day several large Birds that I took to be Eagles, & some beautiful blue Plumaged Herons – some pretty Small Birds of different colours & several Paroquets.

[Page 318]
311.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Adventure Bay. Tuesday 26th. August 1788

Varia Fine W^r. & towards the latter part the Wind backing to the Northward, the Surf on the Beach began evidently to lessen & we wooded & watered with little difficulty.

54 The People also caught many sizeable Rock Cod along side and fully sufficient for their refreshment.

As my ~~small Party of men~~ Ships Company when divided into three Boats & others cutting wood made the Working Party on board very small, I repeated my injunctions to the Command^e. Officer

SW 52 M^r. Fryer that he would take care to keep all Officers employed as well as Men, which on his endeavouring to do, he was opposed by the Carpenter, who refused to assist in hoisting Water into the Hold altho their strength was only himself one of His Mates & a

51½ Quarter Master to do the duty. On my coming on board M^r. Fryer acquainted me of this circumstance, but my directions & presence

NbW had as little effect, he said he would do any thing in his line; but as to that duty he could not comply with. I therefore ordered the

52½ different Person's evidences to be drawn out & attested, & then gave orders that untill he worked he should have no provisions, and promised most faithfully a severe punishment to any Man that

NbW dared to assist him, which immediately brought him to his senses

60° - It was for the good of the Voyage that I should not make him, or any Man a prisoner. The few I have even in the good state of

health I keep them, are but barely sufficient to carry on the Duty of the Ship, it could then Answer no good purpose to loose the use of a healthy Strong Young Man in my situation – I therefore laid aside my power in that particular, for the good of the service I am on, altho it continued in force with equal effect.

The weather now turning moderate & Clear I fixed a small Tent on shore & began Observations to find the Rate of the Time Keeper, Longitude & Variation of the Compass.

[Page 319]

312.

Winds Ther Rem^s. On Wednesday 27th. August 1788

NbW 59 Fine W^r. with a few Showers of Rain in the Night – Very little Surf in the Bay so that the Boats were loaded with Wood & Water without any trouble.

W^t. 59 The People continue to catch fish with Hook & Line. We hauled the Seine and took sufficient, to make a distribution to all hands. We were fortunate also in Angling in the Lake having caught about a score of very fine Bream. These Fish are very delicious and particularly those that are of size for frying. The Fish caught in the Seine were a few Flounders, Souls and a variety of small Fry –

WSW 54½ among them were several pretty Fish brilliant as Silver and faintly Spotted, in size & shape they were not unlike a herring. There were two fish which were called Warriors, being particularly armed with sharp bones from their Fins and two very remarkable ones from the fore part of the head. They were of an Ugly dull colour disagreeably spotted with black.

49 This afternoon on exam[in]ing the Spirit Room M^r. Fryer reported to me a Cask of Rum N^o. 32 Cont^s. 32 Gall^s. was found entirely leaked out. These losses become now very serious matters to us, however I saw no ~~blame~~ fault in the Stowage the only cause being
54 in the Cask w^{ch}. I directed to be surveyed. Two of my People felt a disagreeable sensation & sickness from eating muscles gathered from the Rocks, but altho I had eat plentifully of them myself, I found no Ill effects. We caught several Crabs but they were all very poor. The opossom w^{ch}. I have mentioned being found is nearly the size of a Rabbit. Its under jaw is $\frac{3}{4}$ of an Inch shorter than the upper with two projecting teeth which meet with the two upper and is remarkable in this particular. Its Ears are like a Rats only a little larger & the head altogether is not unlike a Ferrets. The Colour is of a Yellowish brown with a black tinge on the Back & Head. From

the Ears to the beginning of the Tail is 14 Inches & the Tail is the same length, 4 Inches of the tip being perfectly white. It stands about 4 Inch^s. from the Ground. The forefeet have each 5 distinct claws & regular, but the hind feet have them not so regular

[Page 320]
313.

Winds Ther Wednesday 27th. August 1788 continued

one of them being above the others and the whole foot seems to be designed to gripe & hold by, yet there are five distinct claws, two of them being smaller than the others and only divided at the extremity. From the natural inclination of a curl in the tip of the Tail and the form of the hind feet, there is no doubt but it is capable of climbing any shrubs or Trees & that it feeds in common as a Ferret or Squirrel.

Being in want of Plank, I directed a Sawpit to be digged & got it finished. At five feet from the Surface the Sea had access into it through the sand altho 70 Yd^s. from the Water side, and I am inclined to think that at high tides it penetrates through under the Trees into the Lake, it being an entire bed of Sand excepting the little alteration w^{ch}. the fallen leaves have made about the surface.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. 28th. August 1788

Varia		The first part of this Day fair W ^r . the middle & latter Cloudy with
	54	Lightning & Some Rain. Every person respectively employed. My
NNE		Astr ^l Observations ended with the first part of this day, the
	51 ³ / ₄	weather being too Cloudy. One of my Young Gentlemen, M ^r .
SW		Hayward on his walking a few Yards from the Wooding party
	50 ³ / ₄	discovered an old Trunk of Tree that had cut on it AD 1773 I
S ^o .		went with him to see it, & found it as distinct as if it had not been
	51	cut a month even the very slips of the Knife were as discernable
		as at the first moment.
Calm		This must have been done by some of Capt ⁿ . Furneaux Crew in
	52	March 1773 which is 15 Years & 5 Months since, and I conceive
		the Tree was dead when it was done otherwise the shedding of the
Varia.	56 ¹ / ₂	Bark would have totally effaced it, and it serves to show us the
		durability of the Wood.
		We still continue to catch Rock Cod, but few other Fish are in the
		Bay that we can catch with the Seine.

[Page 321]

314.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. 28th. August 1788

One of the People caught a very large Skeat, and altho we find no great abundance of Fish there are sufficient to give us tolerable supplies – I therefore stopt serving Portable Soup while here & to make up for it I order'd full allowance of bread to be served as mentioned on Sunday.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Friday 29th. August 1788

Varia.	55	Mod. and cloudy with Squalls of Rain, Thunder and Lightning in the first & middle part, the latter Strong Gales & thick Rainy W ^r . Fish Caught w th . Hook & Line as usual.
	54	This afternoon I went with an intention of landing on Pengwin Island, but the weather setting in very boisterous and Rainy I did not effect it. In my way I shot two Gannets. These Birds are about the size of an European Gannet, of a most beautifull white except the tips of the Wings & Tail which are black, & the top & back of the head of a very fine yellow. The feet are black with four claws having on each a line of Yellow the whole length of the Foot. The Bill is taper & very strong and about 4 Inches long, without any nostrils – We saw Several Wild Ducks & Oyster Catchers, but these altho nearly the size with a Red Bill as those described on the 23 ^d . have their plumage entirely black. The wood on this side of the Bay is not near so thick as in all other parts of it, I therefore determined on planting some fruit Trees, & what I had to leave here, on this side in preference to the other, & particularly as M ^r . Nelson assured me it was the place best adapted for it. What is much against any thing succeeding is, that in the dry weather when the Natives make a fire, it communicates to the Grass & underwood, and destroys everything that cannot bear a severe scorching, even many large Trees are destroyed by it. I returned on board very wet & no work could be done the Remainder of this day but cleaning Ship.
Calm		
WNW.	52	
SWbS	52	
SSW	52	

[Page 322]

315.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturd^y. 30th. August 1788 In Adventure Bay

SSW 54 Very Hard Gales & Rainy W^r. with Lightning in the Night. Our water was now complete to 41 Tons. In the Forenoon had some fair Intervals & the best use was made of them.

I went with M^r. Nelson to the East side of the Bay and Planted three fine Young Apple Trees in a growing State, nine Vines, six

SbW 45³/₄ Plantains, a number of Orange and Lemmon Seed, Cherry Stones, Plumb stones, Peach, Apricots & Pumpkins. Also two sorts of

44 Indian Corn & Apple and pear pips. The Ground is admirably adapted for the Trees, being a rich marly soil, and their situations

43 were chose clear of Underwood. Large Trees were knotched & cut around where they were Planted. M^r. Nelson followed the

S^o. 43¹/₂ circuit of the Bay, & every where planted Lemons, Oranges Apples, Pears, Indian Corn of two sorts & Pumpkins Seed

43 complying cheerfully with my request to do good the most in our power to the Natives, or those who may come after us – If they succeed equal to our Will & trouble in preserving & planting them, this part of the this part of the Country will be plentifully stock'd – I shall describe their situation in my Plan of this Place.

It is now no longer a doubt to me of there being three kinds of Forrest Trees. I can discover the quality of the Wood to differ nothing, but their leaves do much both in size & shape. One is a long curved leaf like a Sythe, the other not half the length and double the breadth, the point a little curved; but the last is a more delicate leaf from three to four inches long, pointed at the end & scarce ¹/₄ of Inch broad, more of an aromatic and less pungent smell than the other two, from which I imagine its Gum varies but of this none could now be collected; however M^r. Nelson considered them all of the same Genus but of different Species, and with respect to the Wood they will all answer the same End. I must leave the great number of smaller Trees to be described by him

[Page 323]
316.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturd^y. 30th. August 1788

however I must observe that there are many that would be called Trees except in such a situation where there size is lost among such an innumerable set of larger ones. These Forrest Trees increase as much from seed or rather more than from Suckers. We past many Spots where they were growing very thick, and pulled many of these young Plants up to assure ourselves of it. They Shed their Bark every Year.

In my excursion we caught many Crabs with the Boat Hook, they are equally fine as those in England, but their body is not so large and of a rounder form. The Male differ from the Females more than any I have ever seen; having their two fore Claws or Feeders remarkably small. The Legs of both being very long they may be better understood by the name of a Spider Crab. They are well tasted and pleasant food.

We have had these two Days past many Whales in the Bay of a considerable size – they were all of one kind having two blowholes at the back part of the head. I often regretted we had no proper Harpoons for them a thing w^{ch}. in these Voyages any ship might easily get supplied with.

The People still continue to catch very fine Rock Cod alongside and get a tolerably supplied.

I made high Water at 18^h:49' & Rise 2^F:8ⁱⁿ. Moon change

Winds Ther Rem^s. Sunday 31 August 1788

SSW 44½ Mod. & Cloudy W^r. Employed Wooding & Sawing Plank.

In the Morning I took the Time Keeper on shore again to determine its Rate but I could only get two indifferent sets of
Variaⁿ. 43 Observations. I planted to day some onions, Cabbage Roots & Potatoes on a flat close by the Watering place in a situation I think
NW will answer very well, and where I expect they'll thrive if not
54¾ destroyed by

[Page 324]
317.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Sund^y. 31^t. August 1788 – Adventure Bay

the Natives. These People are an itinerant Set & the whole dependance of their living is totally on Muscles and other kinds of Shell Fish, as their resting places are always where those things can be gathered which we easily discover by seeing heaps of shells wherever they have stop'd. In former remarks ~~of~~ about these People it has been supposed, that they frequently fix their habitation in the Trunks of Trees hollowed out by fire for that purpose, but it did not appear to me in that point of View when I was here before, and at this time I have considered it in every situation without discovering any thing to reconcile me to that opinion. My Ideas to the contrary are founded principally on these reasons.

That the Trees altho burnt hollow about the Trunk and have room for one, two, or three People to croud in at, will not shelter them from the Weather, and that no one ever saw the least appearance of any thing placed before the opening to effect it.

That there are many instances close to these hollow burnt Trees where there Wigwams are made, & of course the Tree would not be made use of for Shelter.

That their Wigwams are calculated to repose themselves at full length, the ground being made level and strewed all over with Grass, & the Roof so disposed with large pieces of Bark as to render it perfectly dry on the inside in Rainy Weather; but the bottom of the hollow in the Tree is so uneven by the burning of the Roots that it is even uneasy to sit down in it, and what is still more, the whole Tree is a conductor of water down into this hollow – I therefore conceive they make use of it as a fire place but no other – Their Wigwams are made with little trouble & afford greater convenience.

[Page 325]

318.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Monday 1st. Sept^r. 1788.

NW^{ly}. 51 Mod. & fair W^r. Employed this day with our utmost exertions towards completing our Wood. Caught many fine Rock Cod alongside so that the People had as many as they could use. The Sailmakers ~~completed~~ finished the Sails and every thing being nearly ready to complete for Sea I ordered the Sheat Anchor in & the Cable to be unbent.

42 At 2 this Morning for the first time we had signs of the Natives being within the limits of the Bay. I was acquainted fires were seen

41¾ about the low Land in the neighbourhood of Cape Fredrick Henry. We saw the Natives travelling towards us and I made preparations

46 to meet them at day light, when we saw several of them about the Beach of the low Land with our Glasses. The Morning being clear

47¼ I attended on shore and made observations for the rate of my Time Keeper expecting every moment to see the Natives but we saw none to come near us. I would have went to them, but the heavy sea from the South^d. setting so heavy a surf on the Beach, it was totally impracticable for any Boat to Land. My earnest wish to ~~land among~~ visit them was therefore without effect. Having done watering my Cooper was employed making small Tubs to accommodate M^r. Nelson to take on board a variety of Scarce

Plants, which being all ready, required nothing more than these Vessels to take them on board, and part of them were got off. A Few Whales were seen in the Bay, as hath been the case these some days past, but all of the Kind already described.

[Page 326]
319.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesday 2nd. Sept^r. 1788 In Adventure Bay

NW^{ly}. 54° Mod. and fair W^r. Employed completing the Wood and Cutting Brooms. Caught many fine Rock Cod, and saw many Whales in the Bay.

52° The Natives not coming near us I determined in the Morning to go to
N^{ly}. the low land where we still saw the Fires. Accordingly I set out in
46° the Cutter accompanied by M^r. Nelson and got there about 11
O'Clock, but I found so very great a surf running I could not land; I
46° therefore remained at a Grapnel with the hopes that some of the
Natives would come down to me, for we passed several fires, & I
46° was sure they were in the Neighbourhood. After waiting near an
hour We were surprised to see a White Man come out of the
Woods towards the Boat – This proved to be M^r. Brown M^r.
Nelson's Assistant who had travelled so far in quest of Plants. The
Sea would not allow us to have any communication with him, but
understood he had been with the Natives. I waved to him to return
to the Ship and soon after he was gone we heard the Noise of the
Natives w^{ch}. resembled the cackling of Geese – immediately
afterwards we saw about twenty of them, twelve of whom came
down to the Rocks – the others remaining behind I concluded they
were the Women. I got the Boat within twenty Yards of them &
threw Nails, Beads and other trifles to them which seemed to give
them but little pleasure; for to throw them safe on shore, I tyed
them up in paper, and notwithstanding I shew'd them the contents,
it was not untill we left them that they opened it – I then returned
again when they laid every thing aside and would not show us they
took notice of what we had given them. After throwing a few
Nails on

[Page 327]
320.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. 2^d. Sept^r. 1788

shore again and finding it totally impracticable to land, I made signs for them to go to the Ship and left them.

When they first came in sight they made a prodigious clattering of Speech extending their Arms over their heads – I made signs for them to come nearer which they did, and placed themselves close to the break of the Sea. I could not take up one single word they uttered, their speech being so remarkably quick – our signs to one the other were numerous, & I had every reason to understand they knew the Ship was in the Bay – one agreeable circumstance happened, which serves to identify that these are the very People seen by Capt. Cook when he was here, A Person among them was the very same as he describes, being deformed, & M^r. Nelson remembered him very well, of course we may most justly infer that these People always reside hereabouts. Only a few of them had the Weapon already described, a short small stick about two or three feet long. The colour of these people are naturally black – their skin was scarrified about the Shoulders & breast – they were of middling stature or rather below it – one of them had his Body discoloured with red oaker but all the others had laid an additional coat of black over their Faces & Shoulders, and it was laid on so thick that it totally prevented me at this distance, to say any thing exact of their features; but upon the whole taking things as the[y] first strike one, which often proves a very just method, they appeared like Negroes. They were certainly woolly headed as much as ever a Negroe

[Page 328]
321.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. 2^d. Sept^r. 1788 – Adventure Bay

was. Their Teeth appeared remarkably white. They run very nimbly over the Rocks. They talked to us sitting on their heels, with their Knees close in to their Arm Pits. They have a quick eye, as they caught small Nails & beads I threw to them with some cleverness; but upon the whole they are perhaps the most wretched & stupid People existing, but they are with this, no doubt, the most inoffensive: - I regretted much I could not land among them, for which they made signs to me, but hoping for a nearer interview I left them.

I now rowed over to go on the heights above Pengwin Island to take a View of the Country where I discovered the Bay of Fredrick Henry. The low land which connects the Cape & forms the NW

part of this Bay is a long narrow Isthmus apparently in some Places not 500 Y^{ds} across, & the Sea seemed to run well up to the SW of it. To the NW it had a considerable extend perhaps 4 or 5 leagues, and I could easily observe that a low Island was situated about the middle of the Bay. The Entrance is round C. Fredrick Henry w^{ch}. I consider to make the East part of it as it does the north of this at least it cannot be far from it, and I have no doubt but it is a most capacious & excellent Harbour, and most likely little or no Surf on the Shores, which is more or less an attendant on this Place; but this has still many advantages, it is easy to access & most perfectly safe with a free outlet on an emergency at any time.

[Page 329]

322.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. 3rd. Sept^r. 1788.

N ^{oly} .		This day it continued fair W ^r . but generally calm and as I could not get out I still kept taking on board Wood & plank which I would not
	52	have stayed any longer for provided I could have got to Sea. The
Calm		Ship also was unmoored and Cloaths & Bedding were examined &
	51	put in order and the Ship well cleaned. Many Whales were
	48	frequently in the Bay, and my People continued to catch plenty of
	51	Fish with Hook & Line, which turning to much greater advantage
		than the Seine; I have totally laid it aside while here.
	55°	My presents & Friendly interview with the Natives induced me to
		think they would have been round near the Ship, but I saw
		nothing more of them than fires at night at those places we had
		seen them before. On the return of W ^m . Brown I made every
		enquiry concerning his being among the Natives, & he related it
		nearly as follows. That looking for Plants he saw two or three
		people and ventured among them – that they proved to be an Old
		grey headed Man, a Young Woman, & two or three children
		nearly of a size and about four Years Old. After his joining them
		the Man apparently frightened, with some severity sent away the
		Young Woman, who did not at all like it – the Children cried very
		much at his unexpected appearance; but giving the Man a Knife
		& being familiar with him he became reconciled & they were
		good friends. He had nothing to remark but a common Wigwam,
		with a few Skins (most likely the Kangaroo) spread on the ground,
		and a Basket made of Rushes. This was all the information as he
		gave it, but I put to him several questions among w ^{ch} ., was

[Page 330]

323.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. 3^d. Sept^r. 1788 – Adventure Bay.

whether they had Hair or wool – The latter he said he was fully assured of, and that he saw no difference in them from Negroes, for that they were perfectly black & Woolly headed. There was no appearance of any place producing any thing from culture, and he believed they lived on nothing but Shell Fish, as he had remarked in every Spot where he had met with their Wigwams. There were three of these miserable huts of shelter, but he saw only one Man more than he had already described who soon left him, & the Old one desired him to walk on before him as if desirous to conduct him to more of his countrymen, but I came at the Beach just at the moment & by my beckoning to Brown, he proceeded to the Ship as I have already mentioned, without meeting with any other Person. One can only remark from this Man's interview that if they have any thing like a Village or constant place of residence it is as Wretched as all their temporary ones. That they do not cultivate any kind of Roots, and that their appearance is so much like a Negroe that he considered them as such.

It was from this Interview perhaps that they all came down to me, and that their residence here is owing to the easy communication with the two Bays, & I may also with great propriety suppose their are very few Inhabitants.

My Carpenters were now employed fixing Tubs in my Cabbin with M^r. Nelsons Plants about 70 of which he collected that were either New or Valuable.

[Page 331]

324.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursday 4th. Sept^r. 1788

Calm	52	Calm & fair W ^r . with light Winds in the latter part. The Afternoon I employed in Warping farther out into the Bay & at Night anchored
	48	with Pengwin Isl ^d . bearg. N82°E – Cape Fredrick Henry N25°E and the Watering place S51°W in 13 fm ^s . In the morning at day break hoisted all the Boats in and with a light breeze sailed. At Noon the
NW ^{ly} .	52	Southermost of Marias Isles bore N52°E estimated about five or 6 leagues distant – Pengwin Island S86°W about 6 leagues. Cape
	55	Fredrick Henry N65°W and Tasman head S54°W ^t .

[indecipherable] Sand 57fm^s.
Lat^d. Obs^d. In sailing past the place where I had the interview with the Natives
43°:22¹/₄°S we observed their fires, but not one of them had the curiosity to
come out on the Beach to look at the Ship, so that I had little
Merid Alt^d. reason to expect they would walk ten times the distance to
O Center have any communication with us.
39°:36':40" From Cape Fredrick Henry which appears to be a bold Cape and
has a high Spire Rock off it, the shore inclines to the NNW &
NWbN by Compss and continues in that direction as far as I could
distinguish untill it forms the entrance into the Bay of C. Fred.
Henry – Marias Islands make with this a very deep Gulph inclining
to the North and NNE^t, the Land to the North appearing as hillocks
like Isld^s, or main land, as you are nearer or farther off from it; but
there is a remarkable high flat top'd mountain to the NWbN by
Compss which terminates on this side, the Mountainous part of the
Country Having this mountain to bear as I have already mentioned
NWbN and steering in that direction will lead to Cape Fred. Henry.
The southern part of Marias Islands are high with a Clift shore in
most places yet I have no doubt afford some good Harbours.
A few leagues from the East end there appears an Inlet, with a high
Island in the entrance, & its Western Cape is exceedingly
remarkable from the pitch of it being cut into a number of upright
Pillars of unequal heights.

[In right margin]

At 20^h:10' Lat^d. 43°:20'S

Long^d. by T. K. = 147:33:51E – Pengwin Il^d. SSW¹/₂W 1 Mile

Long^d. by T. K. at Noon found by the above and a set on the following afternoon
- 147°:

[Page 332]

325.

Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. 4th. Sept^r. 1788

The face of the Country here is not wooded but some of the interior
parts has it in as great abundance as on the other side. Some of
my Officers said they saw fires at least smoke in two Places, but I
could see none myself except far to the North where I supposed it
was on the Main.

I believe my Plan of this Country will give a better Idea of the
situation of it than any thing I can Say more, but it has met with
little or no improvement from the state I formed it in when I was

here with Cap^t. Cook, for unless a person is immediately on the busyness of surveying, little can be done with great exactness or certainty, altho sufficient for the general management of a Ship: however I believe few places are better determined either as to Latitude or Longitude & the general direction of all the Coast may be relied on.

We have now got on board about 30 Tons of Fire Wood besides necessary Spars & Plank for the use of the Ship. Among the Wood we found many Scorpions & Santapees and a large kind of Black Ants full one Inch long. I Saw no Musquitoes or other insects but in the Summer Months they are in great numbers. I got my People to gather a quantity of the New Zeland Tea Plant which I believe to be a very Salutory drink when infused in the common Method to make Tea. This Plant grows in large bushes & makes excellent broom Stuff it bears a small fine pointed leaf of a pleasant smell & its seed is contained in a berry about the size of a Pea notched into five equal parts on the Top.

I now Sailed with every person on board in the most perfect health

[Page 333]

326.

Remarks

Before I finish my observations at this place it is necessary with the general method I have pursued in this Log, to give a summary account of my passage from the Cape of Good Hope, but however exact I could wish to be in it, to put every thing into one point of View, yet it is scarce possible to give a true Idea of Winds & Weather with other circumstances unless such an account was equally distinct as the Log itself, and which of course would be but a repetition of the same thing and therefore of no use here.

My principal plan on leaving the Cape was to accomplish my Passage in a moderate latitude and to make as far as lay in my power a commodious & safe Track in the Winter Months for any of our Merchant Ships bound to our New settlement in Botany Bay. It is therefore to be observed that I varied very little from a direct course to the Isl^d. S^t. Pauls in 38°:49'S°. during which time we had some hard Gales but intervals of Fair W^r. From this I continued my course to Vandiemens Land edging gradually to the southward in a New Track, and only twice exceeded the lat^d. of 44°:00'S, by this means the Air was generally Moderate, and altho the Gales were at times very strong, yet were short lived, and we had sufficient intervals to put things in good order w^{ch}. they had deranged. The general shiftings of the Wind was from North to South by the

West, for easterly ones we had scarce any, only four or five days in the whole passage did they incline that way. Three fourths of the passage or more has been boisterous weather, but this season of the Year has the advantage over the summer months in this respect, that it is free of Fogs. The Winds also seem to be as much southerly as Northerly, a Navigator is therefore only to steer a fair course and not imagine he is more powerfully to be attached on one side than the other. The approach of strong southerly Winds is announced by many kinds of Birds of the Albatross & Petteral Tribe & the abatement of the Gale by their leaving you.

[Page 334]

327.

The Thermometer also very quickly shows the change of these Winds and will vary sometimes 6 degrees in its height. The Winds from the Pole have the beginning of the Gale the Strongest, and abate by Squalls which are extremely Violent but lessen in their force in proportion as the intermissions between each increases. The Winds from the Equator come on moderately at first, with Cloudy or thick weather abating by degrees calms or shifts of Wind, after they have been at their height.

With respect to Currents and to give an account of them in an extensive ocean, serves to little other purpose than to puzzle, without arriving to any degree of certainty as to their effects. I found my reckoning 3°:40' Wrong being that too far to the East, but a great part of this seems to have accumulated from making improper allowances from day to day in correcting the Reckoning, for in summing the Effects of the Currents up as proved by the Time Keeper, the result is, that Only 1°:45' in Long^d is what upon the whole the Ship has been set to the West. If this is worthy of farther notice I shall subjoin a Table of the Set of the Current as the T.K. gave it, founded on the principal I have already stated in a former part of this Log.

July 2	N43E	14	July 21	W1°N	60	Augt. 9	S68°W	8
3	"	15	22	West	36	10	N71W	4
4	S56E	22	23	West	14	11	"	5
5	"	22	24	"	14	12	N72W	13
6	"	23	25	None	"	13	So.	4
7	N47W	16	26	S66E	8	14	N71W	15
8	"	16	27	S76E	9	15	West	7
9	"	16	28	S63W	11	16	N88W	17
10	S70E	24	29	West	11	17	No.	3
11	"	24	30	"	11	18	S77W	13
12	N34W	7	31	S40W	8	19	S19W	9

13	N63E	7	Augt.	1	“	8
14	N41W	17		2	N65W	7
15	S81E	27		3	N32W	2
16	S78E	2		4	“	2
17	“	3		5	“	2
18	S50E	16		6	“	2
19	“	16		7	“	2
20	N61W	13		8	NW	9

Total amount

N	S	E	W
114.4	1238	201.0	281.0
			281.0 X Longd.
			80.0 = 105

[Page 335]

328.

The greatest Variation I found in the course of this Passage was in Lat^d. 36°:28'S 39°:00'E where it was 30°:34'W from that time ~~untill~~ to the Lat^d. 39°:40'S Long^d. 50°:21' it continued little other than 27 Degrees. In the Lat^d. 38°:50'S Long^d. 71°:38' East it had altered to 19°:55'E and here it continued at, nearly, untill in the lat^d. 40°:56'S 89°:54'E^t. when it was 15°:24'W. It now decreased to 6°:23'W in the Lat^d. 44°:16'S 121°:26'E by T.K. and in the Long^d. 133°:06'E^t. 43°:56'S I found 1°:19' East so that I had passed the Line of no Variation ^(a) which I was anxious to have determined but the weather was too unfavorable; it is remarkable how it has changed in the course of 11 Years for ~~in nearly the same position~~ when I was here with Cap^t. Cook, we observed in lat^d. 43°:27'S Long^d. 141°:50'E^t. the Variation to be 1°:24' East – so that the Line of 1½ Degree has changed its position 9°:15' to the West. The Variation in Adventure Bay was 5°:53'E^t. and now I make it 8°:33'E, but this change is no more than is commonly supposed to take place. – ^(a) See 16th. Aug^t.)

The Time Keeper on the 21st. and 23^d gave the Long^d of Penguin Island 146°:46':42"E which is 46':47" too little but this my observ^s. on the 17th. proved to me, and I infer that this Error took place soon after my leaving the Cape when the Ther^r. fell below 50° for its Rate was determined on a medium when the Ther^r. was about 65° and I am sensible it is effected by any such changes.

On the 26th. was the first day I could make an Observations to establish the T. Keeper's Rate of going – I then found it to be 2':52",6 Slow for Mean Time at Greenwich & by four days corresponding Observ^s, its Rate was 0",83 loosing p^r.

24 Hours & Slow for Mean Time at Green^{wh}. on the 1st. Septem^r. 2':50",9, w^{ch}. is the Rate & error I leave this place with.

I have determined the Longitude of Penguin Island by 19 Sets of Lunar Observ^s. on both sides of the Moon, which were

[Page 336]
329.

all I could get, and I shall therefore finish my ~~observations~~ Remarks on that head by inserting the Observations as they were taken of every kind.

Month Day 1788	Long ^d . by T. Keeper	Long ^d . by Observ.	Correc ⁿ . to be applied	Long ^d . of Peng ⁿ . Isl.	Variat. on Board	Variat. on Shore	Lat ^d . Obser ^d . West End of ye Beach
August							
11	111.45.06E	112.34.00E	+35.1.36	147.35.36E	8.29E	9.47E	43.22.22
		111.51.15		146.52.51	8.47	7.58	43.21.56
		112.11.00		147.12.36	7.58	8.19	43.22.14
12	115.12.57	116.24.33	+31.33.45	147.58.18	9.52	8.30	
		114.55.48		146.29.33	7.23		
		115.49.33		147.23.18			
16	133.37.52	134.55.51	+13.8.50	148.4.41			
		134.56.31		147.45.41			
		134.46.58		147.55.48			
		134.14.06		147.22.56			
24	146.46.42	147.30.52	0.2.0	147.32.52			
O East D		147.48.04		147.50.04			
Taken		147.38.12		147.40.12			
on bd. 25		147.35.9		147.39.9			
with		147.48.9		147.50.9			
Harb.		147.46.16		147.48.16			
26		147.25.00		147.27.00			
		147.28.06		147.30.26			
		147.36.51		147.38.51			

Mean Long^d. Penguin Isl^d. = 147.33.29.3E 8.29.48E 8.38.30E 43.22.11S

Lat^d. Pengⁿ Island = 43.221.11S

Each of the Variations is a Mean of four Sets of Azths taken each way by two Compasses. The Long^{ds}. from the 11th. of August are reduced to Penguin Isl^d. by the T.Keeper, as those are that are ~~made~~ taken on board the Ship. I found it High Water at the change of the Moon at 49 Min^s past 6 in the Morning, & the rise & fall 2^F:8ⁱⁿ. Southerly Winds rises the Tide a foot or two ~~more~~ higher if they are of

any continuance. A Book of all my Astronomical Observations and another with an account of the going of the Time Keeper belong to this Log, recourse to which may be had for farther particulars.

[Page 337]

330.

Adventure Bay is a most convenient and safe place for any number of Ships to Wood and Water at, but it has this inconvenience, in the Winter Months when the Southerly Winds are prevalent, there is a troublesome Surf on every part of the Shore. For this reason I would recommend to every future Navigator to go into the Bay of Fredrick Henry of which altho I have not been enabled to give any certain accounts, yet I can venture to assure them they will find it commodious and a secure Harbour if I can at all judge from appearances. I would most certainly have examined it had I discovered it a day or two sooner, but I could not be justifiable to delay a Moment on that Account.

In the Summer Months there are Plenty of Fish to be caught with the Seine, but at this time we found nothing to compensate to us for the trouble of Hauling it – Hooks & Lines were the recourses, and as many rock Cod were caught as afforded us a tolerable refreshment.

The place I watered at, was a run of Rain Water from the Hills, and all the other runs in this Bay are derived from no other source as far as I can find; so that in dry seasons I believe it is rather a scarce article except at the Lake, but this never dries, and is perfectly fresh & good at low tide. Many paths may be made to take Water out of the middle of it across the low land not above 200 Yd^s. distant from the Water side, and is much more eligible than taking the water up out of any of the little Rivulets connected with it, as described in C. Cooks last Voyage, they being a part of the same water branched out by the over flowing of the Lake upon the Low Land and more troublesome to be got at.

The principal thing to be first done on a Ships arrival here is to fix on the Watering place for there the Wood can be got with great ease. There are two places besides the Lake which

[Page 338]

331.

have a collected body of water more than any of the other runs; one lies in East Cove and the other at the East end of the Beach, and are both particularly marked in my Plan. The place where the Resolution watered, at the surf prevented us from ~~getting~~ landing at; but it is very stoney and inconvenient at the best:

however a stranger has nothing more to do than to examine those places and take the best according to circumstances.

The upper part of this Bay is formed by a Sandy Beach of $1\frac{1}{2}$ Mile distant from one end to the other. The Soundings are regular and to be relied on, and altho in some places, particularly on the West shore, there are many patches of Weed; yet there is from 5 to 9 fm^s. water on them. On the whole this place is so easy of access that a Stranger may consider himself well acquainted before he enters it, and he can never miss it, if he attends to his lat^d. It bears by Compass, from the Souther^y. part of Marias Islands, (that is Penguin Island) S69°W^t. dis^t nearly 11 leagues.

From Penguin Isl^d. to C. Fredrick Henry is N16½°E dis^t. $3\frac{1}{3}$ leagues and about 33 fm^s. Water which shoals to 28, 25 and less depths as you get to the southward abreast of the Island. The distance across here is 2 Mile and the deepest water about 15 fm^s. The soundings from this to the Beach are very gradual and a good Sandy Bottom – You must not Anchor in more than 8 fm^s., if it is necessary for the Ship to be any way conveniently near the Shore.

I fix the situation of the South West Cape in
South Cape in
Tasmans Head in
Penguin Isl^d. in –
C. Fredrick Henry in
The southermost point of Marias Isles in.

[Page 339]
332.

M^r. Nelson has just given to me an account of the Soil and productions of this country as he has met with I shall therefore mention it here in his own words.

“The West and South Sides of the Bay is black Mould with a mixture of fine white sand, and is a very rich soil from the great quantity of rotten wood and Leaves.

The Trees are Lofty and Large, and the underwood grows so close together that is impossible in some places to go through. The East side of the Bay is a rich Loamy Soil, but near the Tops of the Hills very much incumbered with Stones and Rocks, the underwood thinly placed and small.

I observed that the Trees on the South – SE^t. – and SW sides of the Hills grow to a larger size than those that are exposed to the three opposite Points, for the

Sides of the Trees open or exposed to the North NE & NW Winds are naked with few branches on them, while the other side is abundantly supplied.

The Trees and Shrubs are

Metrocedrus – Four Species – three of which are very large many of them 150 feet high.

Philadelphus – Four Species two of w^{ch}. grow from 20 to 30 feet high.

Mimosa – Four Species – One of them 20 feet high the others small.

Casurina – One Species

Cypress – Two d^o.

Illiceum – One d^o. Besides a variety of small Trees and Shrubs unknown to us.

Continued

[Page 340]

333.

“Herbaceous Plants

Gnaphalium – Four Species

Dolichus – One d^o. – Very fine Scarlet Flower

Orchis or Cytireon – Four d^o.

Lill or Gladiolus – Three d^o.

Ferns – Six d^o. One of the Tree kind

Crassula – One d^o.

Oxalis – One d^o.

Mesembryanthemum – One d^o. Besides many other sorts unknown.”

I have only to observe on the foregoing account of M^r. Nelson's, that the Trees of the Metrocedrus Specie, are what I have taken Notice of as the Forrest Trees, and instead of these being only three kinds it is certain there is a fourth.

His remarks that the Trees which grow in the South, SE and SW sides of the Hills are of a larger size than those in any other part exposed to the Winds from the opposite points, I find does not imply as it may be understood, that the northerly Winds are more hurtful to their growth than the Southerly ones; but only that these observations were made where the Trees were totally open & without Shelter from that quarter, whilst the southerly side of the Hills by having others opposite to them were not so – for these observations would not hold good unless he had been to the Southward on the Sea Coast about Tasmans head, where he was not, his route being more inland. This therefore proves only what will be generally allowed that the Trees grow most luxuriant in sheltered places, and not that the Equator are more hurtfull than the Polar Winds.

[Page 341]
334.

[Blank page]

[Page 342]
335.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. on Friday 5th. Sept^r. 1788 Observa^s.

1 2 4 ESE NNW Light Winds & fair W^r.

2 2

3 1 4 SEbE NEbE

4 2 SEbS “ 53 Tasman's Head S67°W. Southermost of Marias Islands N29½°E & Penguin Isl^d. N82°W. 7 or 8 leagues. Sound^d. 58 fm^s. fine Sand. Cape Pillar N5°W

5 1 SW SSE TK^d. At 4^h:12' above bear^g.
6 1 EbN SEbS Lat^d. 43°:25' South
Long^d. T.K. = 147°:56':25"E

7 1 4 ENE SE

8 1 4 SbW SEbE 50½

9 1 6

10 “

Calm and Rain at times. Sounded 75 fm^s. No Ground

11 “

12 1 SE N°. 49½ Light Breezes & Cloudy. Bearings of the Land the same as at 4 O’Clock

1 1 4

2 2 4 NNW

3 3 4 NW Rain

4 4 ESE 50 Mod. & Cloudy.

5 5 Varia in the NW

6 6 “ “ “ Saw Marias Isles bearg NW ab^t. 9 or 10 leagues.

7 5 4

8 5 “ WSW 50¼ The East part of Marias Isles NWbN about 12 or 13 Leag^s. Served hot Breakfast as usual.

9 4 Departure taken at 8 O’Clock allow^g the East part of the Isl^d. to lie in Lat^d. 43°:17'S and Long^d.

10 4 4 East WbS 148°:14'E^t.

11 6

12 6 49½ Mod. & Cloudy – Stud^g Sails Set.

71
21277
21348

Merid Alt^d
O Center 39°:27'

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
SE	52	43°:54'S	43°:56'S
			D.R.
			T.K.
			L & T.K.
			SE of Maria
			Isles NW 52 Miles

[Page 343]

336.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sunday 7th. Sept^r. 1788 Observa^s.

1 6 EbN SEbS Fresh Gales & Cloudy W^r. with thick Rain at times

2 5 6 ENE SE

3 5

4 4 NEbE SEbE 50¼ Cloudy W^r. out 2 & 3^d. Reefs At 3^h:56' Lat^d 43°:35'S
Long^d. T.K. = 152:20E

5 3 4 NE½E “ “ Fair W^r.

6 3 ENE SE

7 3 4 NE½E SEbE

8 3 4 50¼ Cloudy

9 4 NEbE½E SE

10 4 4

11 4 6

12 4 4 49½

1 4 NEbE SEbE

2 3

3 3 NE½E

4 2 6 48 Drizling Rain

5 3 2 NE½N ESE

6 3 2

7 3 2 NEbN EbS “ Cloudy W^r.

1 4

8 48½ Cleaned below and mustered the People.

1 4 S½E

9 3 6

10 3 4 “ “ “ Performed Divine Service.

11 2 6 S½W ESE

12 2 4 49 Open Cloudy W^r. Under Single Reefs. A few Albatrosses & some small blue Petterals.

90

21486

21576

Merid Alt^d

O Center 41°:02' Note this days work is wrote here by mistake the 6th. being on the next Page.

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L. & T.K.
N39°E	63	43°:04'S	43°:11'S	153:23E	153°:03'E	

[Page 344]

337.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturday 6th. Sept^r. 1788

1 5 East WSW Mod. & Cloudy. Got the Anchors in & Cables unbent.

2 5 SWbS

3 5 S°

4 6 SbE 51¼ Fresh Breezes & Cloudy in Stud^g Sails

5 6

6 6 4

7 6

8 6 51¾ Squally in 1st. Reefs

9 7 E½N

10 7 The southern Lights very firey the most part of the
Sky being covered as red as blood.

11 7

12 7 50½ Fresh Gales Dble Reefed the Top Sails

1 6

2 5 6 EbN SSE H^d. Miz. TS.

3 5 2

4 5 50 Triple Reefd the Fore TS.

5 5

6 5

7 5 4

8 6 49 Thick Rainy W^r. Served hot Breakfast as usual &
Cleaned below.

9 5 4 Many Petterals Pintada Birds & Albatrosses about.

10 5 4

11 5

12 5 49 D^oW^r. but got a tolerable observation.

138 Note This Day is wrong placed.

21348

21486

Merid Alt^d

O Center 39:58

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
N82°E	136	43°:43'S	43:39S
			D.R.
			152:15E
			T.K.
			151°:55'E
			L & T.K.

[Page 345]
338.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Mond ^y .	8 th .	Sept ^r .	1788	Observations
---	---	---	---------	-------	------	--------------------	---------------------	-------------------	---------------------	------	--------------

1	2	7	S°	ESE							Light Winds & Cloudy W ^r .
---	---	---	----	-----	--	--	--	--	--	--	---------------------------------------

2	2	7									
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

3	2		S ¹ / ₂ W								Some Rain – Many Birds as yesterd ^y . & several Mother Carey's Chickens.
---	---	--	---------------------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

4	2										47 ³ / ₄
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--------------------------------

5	1	5									
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

6	2										
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

7	2		SbW	SEbE							
---	---	--	-----	------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

8	2										47 ¹ / ₄ Very Light Winds inclinable to Calm.
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

9	1										
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

10	1										Saw a Whale.
----	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--------------

11	1										
----	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

12	1										46 ¹ / ₂
----	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--------------------------------

1	1										
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

2	1										
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

3	1										
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

4	1										46 ³ / ₄
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--------------------------------

5	1										Small Rain
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	------------

6 1 S°. Varia

7 1 SEbS

8 1 2 SbE 46¼ Served Hot breakfast as usual – Cleaned below &
Issued Clean Hammocks & Bags to the Seamen.

9 1 2 SbW SEbE

10 1 5 Sailmakers employed repairing the Old Fore Sail.
- Served Tobbacco.

11 2 S°. ESE

12 3 “ 47½ Light Winds & Fair W^r. Under whole Top Sails
Very few Birds.

38
21576
21614

Merid Alt^d
O Center 40:47

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
SSW¼W 38	43°:42'S	43°:38'S	152°:58'E ^t .	153°:3'E		

[Page 346]
339.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. 9th. Sept^r. 1788 Observations

1 3 4 SbE EbS Mod. and Cloudy W^r.

2 3 4

3 3 4 SEbS EbN

4 3 4 47 At 4^h:19' Lat^d 43°:57'S
Long^d. T.K. = 153°:3'E

5 4 3 SSE East

6 4 6

7 4 SbE EbS

8 3 4 45½

9 4 4

10 4 4

11 4 4

12 4 4 45½ Fresh Breezes & Cloudy.

1 5

2 5 SSE East

3 5

4 5 4 45

5 5

6 5 At 21^H:00 Lat^d 45°:20'S
Long^d. T.K. = 152:55E

7 5

8 5 45½ Served Hot breakfast as usual
& cleaned below –
9 5 2 Sailmakers repairing the Old Fore
Sail.

10 5 2 Saw a Port Egmont Hen.

11 5

12 5 “ 46¾ D°W^r. Swell from the SSW. Under
all sails on a Wind.

110
21614
21724

Merid Alt^d
O Center 39°:17'

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S3°W	113	45°:35'S	45°:31'S	152°:49'E	152°:55'E	

[Page 347]

340.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y 10th Sept^r. 1788

1 5 6 SSE East Fresh Breezes & Cloudy W^r.

2 6

3 5 6

4 6 1 SEbS EbN 45½

5 6 2

6 6 2

7 6 3

8 6 3 44¾

9 6 4

10 6 4

11 6 3 SE ENE

12 6 3 44½

1 6 4 SEbE NEbE

2 6 2 Squally Dble reefed the TK many luminous spots on the water.

3 6

4 6 45½ Rain

5 6 4 ESE NE

6 6 4

8 6 4 46½ Dark cloudy W^r. at times small Rain. Served Hot
breakfast as usual and cleaned below.

7 6

10 6 4 ESE½E NEbN

11 7

12 6 2 EbS 46¾ D^o. W^r. observ^d. Few blue Petteralls about. Under
Dble Reefs.

151
21614
21764

	Latitude			Longitude			Rems.
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.	
S27°E	145	None	47°45S	154°26E			

[Page 348]
341.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. 11th. Sept^r. 1788

1 5 6 E½S NNE Fresh Gales & Dark Cloudy W^r.

2 5 2

3 5 2 East NbE

4 5 “ “ 46 More Mod. Out 2^d. Reefs Saw a Whale

5 4

6 3 6

7 4 2 E½N

8 5 6 EbN N 47

9 5 2

10 5 4 Small Rain

11 5 4

12 5 46½ Saw a Whale

1 3 5

2 3 5

3 4

4 4 46½

5 4 2 E½N. NbE

6 4 2

7 4 4

8 5 4 47 D° W^r. Served Hot breakfast as usual. & Cleaned below.

9 5 4 EbN NbE

10 5 4

11 5 6

12 5 2 48½ Dark Hazy W^r. with a thick Mist at times. A few blue Petterals but no other Birds seen.
Under Single Reefs.

116

21765

21881

No Noon Observⁿ. but from Dble Altds soon after the Sun passed the Merid. gave the Lat^d as p^r.
Column.

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S72°W	117	48°:20'S	48°:15'S	157:14E	157°:42'E	

[Page 349]

342.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Friday 12th. Sept^r. 1788 Observations

1 4 2 EbN NbE Fresh Gales & thick misty W^r. with some short
intervals of fair W^r.

2 4 2

3 4

4 5 4 48 $\frac{1}{4}$ At 4^h:11' Lat^d 48°:25'S°. Long^d. T.K. = 158:7:51

5 5 6 EbN $\frac{1}{2}$ N N°.

6 6

7 5 4

8 5 6 “ 47 $\frac{1}{3}$

9 6

10 6 4 Split the Main T.M^t. Sty S^l.

11 6 5

12 6 4 46 $\frac{1}{4}$

1 6

2 6 “ “ Squally with a wetting Fog.

3 6 4

4 6 45 $\frac{1}{4}$ Thick Misty W^r. almost equal
to a Fog.

5 5 4 EbN

6 5 4

7 5 6 EbN $\frac{1}{2}$ N

8 6 3 48 More Wind In 3^d. Reef F TS &
 2^d. Reef M. Top S^l.
 9 6 1
 10 6 5
 11 6
 12 6 48¾ D^o W^r. with Fair Intervals. Some Large Albatrosses
 Like Gannets in their Plumage & some Blue
 Petterals about.
 These Albatrosses may easily be mistaken for
 Gannets; but the Bill of the Albatross is crooked
 & the Gannets is streight.

Merid Alt^d
 O Center 37°:12'

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K. L & T.K.
E11°S 137 48:47S	48:49'S	160:39E	160:58E

[Page 350]
 343.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Saturd ^y .	13 th .	Sept ^r .	1788	Observations
1	6		EbN½N	NbW							Fresh Gales and Dark hazy W ^r .
2	6	4									
3	7	2	“	NNW							
4	6	6	“	“	48¼	Wet Foggy W ^r .	and fresh Gales.	Some Pintada			
						Birds about since Noon.					
5	7										At 3 ^h :28' Lat ^d 48°:51'S
											Long ^d . T.K. = 161:31E
6	6										
7	6	3									
8	6	3	“		48						

9 6 4

10 7 “ Rainy W^r. Out 3rd. Reef Fore & 2nd. of the Main
Top Sail.

11 6 4 “ NW

12 5 4 47¾ Rainy W^r.

1 5 6

2 5 3

3 5

4 5 4 47¾ Thick Misty W^r. with Less Wind. Out 2nd Reefs
Saw a Whale and a Mother Careys chicken

5 3 3

6 2 2

7 1 6

8 1 7 N°. 47¾ Served Hot breakfast as usual.

9 2 4 ESE NE The W^r. being very wet & uncomfortable – Cleaned
& dried below with Fires.

10 4 EbS NEbN

11 5 E^t. NNE

12 5 EbN½N N°. 48¼ Fresh Breezes & Thick Rainy W^r. Under Single
Reefs. No Observation.

125

22018

22143

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S85°E	122	None	48°:57'S	163°:45'E	164°:04E ^t	

[Page 351]

344.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sunday 14th. Sept^r. 1788

1 6 East NNE Strong Breezes and thick Rainy W^r. Some
2 6 3 Albatrosses, Mother Careys Chickens & Blue
Petterals about.

3 6

4 6 “ “ 48¹/₄

5 6 6

6 7 EbN¹/₂N N^o.

7 6 4 “ “ “ Fresh gale & Rainy W^r. obliged to double Reef the
Top Sails.

8 6 4 48¹/₂ I ordered Fire to be kept on all Night to dry cloaths.

9 7 2

10 7

11 6 2 “ “ “ Wind increasing – obliged to close Reef, & handed
the Miz. TS.

12 7 2 ENE NbW 48³/₄

1 5 4

2 5 4

3 6 2

4 6 3 49

5 6 2 NW

6 6

7 6 4 “ “ “ More Mod. set close Reef Miz. TS and out 4th & 3rd
Reefs Main & Fore TS

8 7 2 47³/₄ Dark cloudy W^r. Served Hot breakfast as usual

9 7 NWbN Mustered and saw all hands clean & performed
Divine Service

10 7

11 7

12 8 47¾ Strong Gales and dark Cloudy W^r. under Dble
Reefs. Much Sea from the NW^t.
158 No Observation.

22143

22301

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S80°E	156	None	49°:24'S	167°:39'E		

[Page 352]

345.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Monday 15th. Sept^r. 1788

1 8 ENE NWbN Strong Gale and very wet Weather with thick Fog at
times

2 7 4

3 7 4

4 7 “ “ 47

5 6 6

6 6 6

7 6 6 NNW

8 7 NEbE 46 Fire Kept in all Night to dry Cloaths.

9 7

10 6 6

11 6 4

12 6 4 46½

1 6 More Moderate

2 5 4

3 5 4

4 5 4 46¾

5 6 NWbN

6 6 4 “ “ “ Some Divers & Rock weed seen

7 7

8 7 2 46 Served Hot breakfast of Portable Soup Gruel as usual.

9 7 3 Saw a Cape or Port Egmont Hen, Some Seals & Rock Weed.

10 7 2 Opened a Cask of Beef N437 Contents 80 Dble pieces

11 6 Cleaned and dried with Fires.

12 5 6 46¾ Very Wet & Thick Weather, with Moderate Breezes. Out all Reefs.
No Observation.

151
22301
22452

	Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .	
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
E13°N	159	None	48°:49'S	171°:36'E		

[Page 353]
356.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesday 16th. Sept^r. 1788

1 4 NEbE½E NW Mod. and Gloomy Wet Weather. Sometimes thick

				Fog, and at others Calm & constant Rain.
2 4 2		WbN		
3 3 6				
4 3 4			45½	
5 3				
6 2				
7 1				
8 1	“	“	45½	Calm clued all Sails up to prevent their beating to pieces & directed the People to take shelter from the wet and to go below to dry Cloaths by the Fires
9 “				
10 “				
		Head ENE to SE		
11 “				
12 “	“	“	44¾	
1 “				
2 “		East to North.		
3 “				
4 2	NNE	East	44	Light Breezes – Made Sail
5 2				
6 1 4				
7 1 6	NEbN	EbS		
8 2	“	“	44	Served Hot Breakfasts as usual – Cleaned below and dried with Fires.
9 2 4				
10 5	NEbE½E	SEbS		

11 6 4

12 6 2 ENE “ 44½ Dark Gloomy W^r. Some Rock Weed – Mother
Carreys chicken & Albatrosses.
52 Under whole TS & T.G. Sail.
22452 No Observation.
22504

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K. L & T.K.
N65°E 49 None	48°:28'S	172°:42'E	

[Page 354]
347

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. 17th. Sept^r. 1788

1 6 6 ENE SSE Strong Breezes with Squalls & very thick Rain.

2 6 4

3 6 4 SEbS Dble Reefed the Top Sl^s. and got down M.T.G.
Yard.

Rock weed Seen

4 7 2 “ “ 43¾

5 6 7

6 6 4

7 6 2

8 6 “ 43½ More Moderate. Out 2nd. Reefs.

9 6 6

10 6 6 “ “ “ Very strong Breezes and thick Misty W^r. at times
Rain

11 7 2

12 7 2 42⅔

1 6 6

2 6 “

3 5 4

4 6 6 41½

5 6 NEbE¼E SE

6 5 4

Rock Weed Seen

7 5 4

8 5 2 NEbE SEbE 41½ Cloudy W^r. Issued Portable Soup Gruel for breakfast as usual and Sour Krout.

9 5 5 Cleaned & dried below with Fires.

10 6 NE ESE

11 5 4

12 5 4 42½ Very dark Gloomy W^r. and a very Moist Air Under Single Reefs.
150 Albatrosses, and Mother Careys Chicken & Rock
22504 Weed Seen. No Noon Observⁿ.
22654

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N76°E	148	None	47°:52'S	176°:16'E		

[Page 355]

348.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. 18. Sept. 1788 Observations

1 5 NEbN EbS Thick Misty W^r. with Rain and at times a very thick Fog.

2 5

3 5 NEbN½N Rock Weed Seen

4 5 “ 43

5 5 2 NNE East

6 5 NbE $\frac{1}{2}$ E

7 4 4

8 4 “ 44 $\frac{1}{3}$

9 3 6 NbE EbN

10 3 3

11 3 3 N ENE

12 3 3 44 $\frac{1}{2}$

1 3 2

2 3 N $\frac{1}{2}$ E EbN

3 3

4 3 NbE “ 44 $\frac{1}{2}$

5 2 N° ENE

6 2 EbS NEbN

7 2 “ “

8 2 East NNE 44 $\frac{1}{4}$ Light Airs & Calm with a very damp Air &
Cloudy W^r. The Sun appearing at times I got
9 1 6 ESE NE some Observ^s. for the Variation & Long^d by the
T. Keeper - The Horizon Foggy

10 1 6

11 2 East NNE Cleaned below.

12 1 6 EbN NbE 45 $\frac{1}{2}$ Cloudy W^r. with a Foggy Horizon, but got a good
Noon Observation. A Few Albatrosses about.

At 21^h:37' Lat^d 47°:03'S
Long^d. T.K. = 177°:36 $\frac{1}{2}$ ' E
Varia P^r. Azths.
A Compss - 15°:58'E
d°. turned - 15:39
B Compss - 15:54
d°. Turned - 17:01
Mean 16:08 East

80
22654
22734

Rock Weed Seen

Merid Alt^d
O Center 41°:13'

Latitude Longitude

Course Dis^t. Obs^d. D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.
N29°E 55 47°:04'S 46°:54'S 176:56E 177°:41'E

[Page 356]
349.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Frid^y. 19th. Sept^r. 1788 Observations

1 1 E½S NNE Light winds and cloudy W^r. Albatrosses, Pintada
Birds and Rock Weed Seen.

2 1

3 2 East

4 2 6 E½S “ 45¾

At 2^h:56' Lat^d 47°:06'S
Long^d. T.K. 177°:42½' E

5 3 EbS NEbN

Varia P^r. Azths.

6 4

A Compss - 16°:38'E

d°. turned - 16:35

7 3 4

B Compss - 17:24

d°. Turned - 17:26

Mean – 17:01E

8 3 7 “ 44¼ Thick Misty W^r.

9 3 4

10 4

11 4 “ “ “ Foggy Wet W^r.

12 3 6 EbS½S 44½

1 4 ESE NE

2 4 4

3 4 4 EbS NEbN

4 4 4 “ 44 Misty W^r. & Rain at times.

5 5 4 EbS “ “ At Day break saw a parcel of small Rocky Isl^ds
bear^g EbN 4 leagues distant.

6 5 4 At 6 O’Clock the extremes bore from N68°E to
N78½°E 3 leagues distant from nearest part.

7 5 4 At 7:45 The west part of the Isles bore true North
3 leg

8 5 4 45 At 8^h:15' The East part of the Isles bore true North
ab 3½ leagues from the Southermost Isle – The

9 4 Westernmost extreme N25°W. Hove to and

Sounded 75 fm^s. a beautiful white sandy bottom

10 4 6 The Weather now being Squally wth. Thick Rain
took in 1st. Reefs.

11 4 6 EbS Saw some Penguins – Pintada Birds & Albatrosses
as usual, and a small white kind of Gull with a

12 4 6 forked Tail called an Egg Bird, and some Mother
Careys Chicken.

95 At Noon Strong Breezes & Rain. Sounded with 101
22734 fm^s. of Line & got bottom of a fine Brimstone
22829 colour’d Sand. Allowing 7 fm^s. for stray Line the
true depth is 104 fm^s.

At Noon by Time Keeper got a sight of the Sun w^{ch}.
gives the same lat^d. as P^r. Account.

Merid Alt^d
O Center 40°:34'
Noon by T.K

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S48°E	95	48:07	48°:07'S	178°:42'E	179:27E	

[Page 357]

350.

Remarks

At Day Light this morning we discovered a parcel of Rocky Islands the Wind
directing us in as fair a course past them, as could possibly be steered, and most

providentially; for what we would have considered three points more in our favor, under the present circumstances of very thick weather, would assuredly have carried me into the midst of them, at least into much danger before we could have been aware of it. No Birds ~~of~~ or any other thing except sea- & Rock- Weed, gave me an Idea of meeting with land, ~~which~~ and this is a very uncertain sign at our distance from a known Coast as we are from New Zeland – I therefore considered all we had met with came from that part, altho I knew I was pursuing an unknown Track & it might of course be otherwise, and my cautions in that respect were fully attended to, as it was discover'd with the early dawning of the day.

As the Wind was, I was under the necessity to pass those Isles (or Rather Rocks) to the southward, and I could not get nearer them than three leagues – At this distance I could not see things very distinctly, the weather was so thick, but by $\frac{1}{4}$ Past 8 I found their extent from East to west was only $3\frac{1}{2}$ Miles & from N^o. to South not above $1\frac{1}{2}$ Miles. On the Western Isles w^{ch}. are the largest I saw some Snow, but no verdure in any part, and the whole appears to be nothing more than Rocks. Their number including large & small are about thirteen – The surf broke very high round them & their height is such as will cause them to be seen full seven leagues from the Deck. They Appear in a variety of forms every minute as you alter your position – The NW most Island makes as a perpendicular Cape w^{ch}. the land at the back

[Page 358]

351.

of it Sloping off like a Wedge – A small Rock lies off the Cape.

The distance of these Islots from any known part made me desirous to try soundings which I was greatly surprised to find at so moderate a depth as 75 fm^s. at the distance of 4 leag^s. from the Shore, and 104 fm^s. at Noon which was 6 leagues farther to the SE^t. But after running 9 leag^s. to the ESE I could find no bottom with 180 fm^s. of Line.

My Track with that of Captain Cook in 1773 must satisfactorily determine that these Rocks lie without any Islands near them, and they serve to account also for his meeting with Seals & Pengwins while he considered the nearest land to be New Zeland. From his description of the land near Cape South I begin to doubt whether what I took for Snow were not patches like White Marble the same as he describes on that Coast, but as it laid only in particular places in hollows, ~~it~~ I took it to be Snow.

At 8 O'Clock in the Morn^g when the East part of the Isles bore true North of me, I was in the Latitude 47°:54'S°. Longd. 179°:09'E by T.K. the Southermost Isle (which is also very nearly the Eastermost) was 9½ Miles distant determined by Angles. From hence I fix the situation of the Southermost Isle to be in

Latitude 47°:44½'S°.
Long^d. T.Keeper 179:09E^t.
Long^d. by Account 178:24E^t.

The exact situation with respect to the latitude depends on my Alt^d. at Noon as but I do not apprehend an error of a Mile.

To Ships bound round the South End of New Zeland into the South Seas, these Rocky Isles lie exactly in the way – only under these circumstances therefore, is the discovery of consequence, and in order that they may be known to have been Discovered at a different period as a caution, that altho we

[Page 359]
352.

Know of nothing more here abouts, yet there may be many lurking dangerous Rocks; I have called them the Bountys Isles.

They lie from The Traps off the south end of New Zeland S89°E distance 146 leagues.

[Page 360]
353.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturd^y. 20th. Sept^r. 1788

1 5 4 EbS NEbN Strong Breezes and thick Rainy W^r. which encreases
to a Fresh gale. In 2nd. Reefs

2 5 6

3 6

4 5 4 East NNE 45½

5 3 4 EbN NbE

6 2 4 “ “ “ Took in all Sails and tried Soundings wth. 180 fm^s.
of line but found no bottom.

7 2 4

8 1 4 “ 45½ Light Winds and thick Rainy W^r. Out 2^d. Reef
Main TS.

9 1 4 East NNE

10 2

11 2 4 ENE N^o.

12 2 NEbE Varia. 44¾ Cloudy

1 2 4 “ SWbS

2 2 6

3 3

4 3 Varia. 41⅔ Wet Foggy W^r.

5 3 2 WSW

6 3

7 3 “ “ “ Out All Reefs & Set Stud^s Sails Up M.T.G. Yard

8 1 2 “ 40½ Light Airs & Cloudy. Served Portable Soup Gruel
for breakfast as usual.

9 1

10 1 Cleaned well below and got every thing that was
wet, hung up to dry. Opened all Hatches &

11 1 Scuttles and gave fresh Air to all parts of the Ship.

12 1 “ SWbW 43¾ Light Airs & Fair W^r. All Sails Set. No Birds.
Swell from the Northward

66
22829
22895

Merid Alt^d
O Center 40°:33'

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S78°E	59	48°:19'S	48°:19'S	180°:07'E	180°:51'E	

[Page 361]

354.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Sund ^y .	21 ^t .	Sept ^r .	1788	Observations
---	---	---	---------	-------	------	--------------------	---------------------	-------------------	---------------------	------	--------------

1	2	NEbE	SWbS	Light Breezes & Fair W ^r .							
---	---	------	------	---------------------------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

2	2	4										
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

3	2	6	Rock Weed & several of the Black Grey Albatrosses about, w ^{ch} . the									
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

4	2	6	44½ Sailors call Old Curates.									
---	---	---	-------------------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

5	2	2	At 4 ^h :19' Lat ^d 48°:16'S Long ^d . T.K. = 181:5:9E Varia P ^r . Azths. same time									
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

6	2	3	A Compss - 15°:42'E d°. Turned - 15:37									
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

7	2	3	SSW	B Compss - 14:31 d°. Turned - 16:09							
---	---	---	-----	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

8	3	6	S°	43½	Cloudy	Mean 15:30E						
---	---	---	----	-----	--------	-------------	--	--	--	--	--	--

9	3	SSE										
---	---	-----	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

10	3	SEbS										
----	---	------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

11	3	SE	In Stud ^g Sails									
----	---	----	----------------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

12	3	43										
----	---	----	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

1	3										
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

2	4	2	SEbE									
---	---	---	------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

3	4										
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

4	3	4	42½									
---	---	---	-----	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

5	3	2										
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

6 3 2 NEbN EbS

7 3 “ “ “ Misty W^r.

8 3 44¼ Served Hot breakfast as usual. Mustered & saw every person clean.

9 2 Saw Seals & rock Weed.

10 2 4 Performed Divine Service.

11 2 4 NEbE SE

12 2 6 45½ Wet Foggy W^r. All Reefs out. Swell from the NE^t.
At Noon it cleared a little & got an Alt^d of the Sun
w^{ch}. being proved by the Time by T.K. I consider
it within 2 Miles of the truth if not exact.

69

22895

22964

Merid Alt^d

O Center 41°:45'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N58°E	70	47°:42'S	47°:44'S	181°:35'E	182°:36'E	

[Page 362]

355.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. 22 Sept^r. 1788 Monday Observations

1 2 2 NE ESE Wet Foggy & sometimes thick Rain, wth. Intervals of Fair W^r w^{ch}. enabled me to get Dble Altd^s as follow.

	T.K.	App ^t . Time	Alt O Center
2 1 7 NbW NEbE	13 ^h :23':20"		36°:53'

	Lat ^d .	Long ^d by T.K.
3 1 4 NWbN NEbN	47°:32'S°.	182°:36'E

4 1 4 NW NNE 48 Cloudy TK^d.

5 “ Calm
H^d. NE^{ly}

6 “ Foggy
Saw a Seal. Clew all Sails up. Many Albatrosses about particularly the Black Grey Kind called old Curates by the Sailors.

7 “ West^{ly}. Sounded 230 fm^s. Line. No Ground.

8 1 4 East NNE 46½ Light Breezes Made Sail. Saw some luminous
blubbers in the Water

9 2 4 EbS½S NEbN

10 3 4

11 2

12 1 46¾ Cloudy W^r.

1 1 7 EbS

2 3 “ “ “ Wet Foggy W^r.

3 3 7

4 3 2 46¾

5 4 “ “ “ Mod. & Cloudy

6 5 At 21^h:06' Lat^d 48°:07'S
Saw Rock Weed. Long^d. T.K. = 183°:24½'E

7 5

8 5 47 Served Portable Soup as usual
Empl^d. making Points – Cleaning
& Airing below & Sailmakers repair^g
Main T. M^t. Stay Sail.

9 5 4

10 5 4

11 5 4

12 5 2 48⅔ Fair W^r. & Moderate Breezes. Swell from the NE^t.
considerably more than I have found it since I
came round ye south of New Zeland.

70
22964
23034
Merid Alt^d
O Center 41°:34'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N54°E	59	48°:17'S	48°:16'S	182°:47'E	183°:43'E	

[Page 363]
356.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. 23 Sept^r. Tuesd^y. 1788 Observations

1 5 E. NNE Mod Breezes & Fair W^r. Employed this Day making
Points & mending the old Main TS.

2 4 EbN NbE

3 4 6 E NNE

4 5 “ “ 46³/₄ Cloudy. Saw a Port Egmont At 3^h:44' Lat^d 48°:24'S
Hen Long^d. T.K. = 184:7:42E

5 5 E¹/₂S

6 5

7 5 4

8 5 4 “ 47¹/₂ Squally in 1st. Reefs.

9 5 EbN NbE

10 3 6 ENE N°. Dble Reef Fore TS and close Reefed
Miz TS.

11 3

12 3 NEbE NbW 47¹/₂ A great many luminous Blubbers
about the Ship.

1 3 4 The swell from the NE^t. begins now to be
considerably increased.

2 3 4

3 4

4 3 2 “ 47¹/₃

5 3 4 NE¹/₂E NNW

6 4 NE “ “ Out 2nd. Reefs.

7 4 2

8 4 “ 49¼ Fair W^r. The Head Sea so very great that obliged
me to take in all small sails & carry but single Reefs
9 3 NE½E & Courses.

10 3 This Sea from the Northward began as soon as I
past the Meridⁿ. of the East part of New Zeland.
11 3 2 before that I had gener^{ly}. smooth Water

12 3 2 51° D° W^r. & Sea. A few Small At 21^h:20' Lat^d 48°:32'S
Albatrosses about. Long^d. T.K. = 185:49E

97
23034
23131

Merid Alt^d
O Center 41°:43'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
S82°E	93	48:30S	48:30S	185°:05'E	186°:13'E	

[Page 364]
357.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. Sept 24th. 1788 Observations

1 2 6 NEbE NbW Fair W^r. but the head Sea so great can make very
little way against it.

2 2 6

3 2 6 Several Patches of Rock Weed Seen.

4 2 6 49 Cloudy W^r. At 5^h:9' Lat^d 48°:29'S
Long^d. T.K. = 186°:42'E^t

5 2 4

6 2 2 NE½E NNW

7 2	NEbE	NbW	
8 2			48½
9 2			
10 2			
11 2			Lightning in the NNW
12 2 6		“	49
1 3 4	NE	NNW	Squally. Dble Reef the Fore & Miz. TS.
2 3 6			
3 3		NWbN	
4 3 6		NWbW	48½
5 4 4			
6 5		“	Albatrosses & Brown Petterals
7 5			
8 6		WNW	48¼ Fresh breezes & dark Cloudy W ^r . with Rain.
9 6		SW	
10 6			Served Portable Soup in the Oatmeal & Pease as usual & at 11 O’Clock I began to serve sweet wort again.
11 5			Sailmakers repair ^g the old Main Top S ^l . in my
12 5 7			45½ cabin.
			Fresh Breezes & Cloudy. Main T. M ^t . & lower Stud ^g Set. Few small Albatrosses.
86			
23131			
23217			
		Merid Alt ^d	
		O Center	42°:34'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N70°E	84	48:03S	48°:02'S	187°:02'E	188°:42'	

[Page 365]

358.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. Sept^r. 25th. 1788 Observations

1	7	NE	WSW	Fresh Gales & Cloudy W ^r . In Main T. M ^t . Stud ^g
2	7	4		S ^{ls} . & set the Fore Top Mast. Many Albatrosses,
				Pettersals & some brown Sheerwaters about.

3	7	2			At 3 ^h :59' Lat ^d 47°:48'S
					Long ^d . by T.K. = 189:19E
4	7	2	“	“	49½ Caught an Albatross w th .
					Hook and line w ^{ch} .
5	8				measured 7 feet from Tip
					to Tip of the Wing.
6	7	4			d°. turned - 13:48
					B Compss - 13:16
					d°. turned - 14:22
					Mean = 13:55E

7	7	4			
8	7	4	“	“	49 In lower Stud ^g Sail & 1 st . Reef
					Main Top S ^l .

9 7 4

10 7 2

11 7 4

12	7	2	“	“	49¼ Fair W ^r .
----	---	---	---	---	---------------------------

1 7

2 7

3 7

4	7	2	“	49½	At 20 ^h :27' Lat ^d 46°:52'S
					Long ^d . T.K. = 192°:0':48"E
5	7	2			O & D Sun East red ^d . to
					same time by
					Ramsden B - 192°:25':00"

6 7 3 “ “ Saw some Rock Weed. d° – C – 192:02:00
 Trought. H – 192:26:10
 7 7 3 Mean = 192:17:21E
 T.K. - than Obs = 0:16:33
 8 7 5 50½ Served Portable Soup as Note – the above error
 usual and at 11 O’Clock is corrected on
 9 7 6 Sweet wort a pint P^r. Man.
 10 7 6 Cleaned & dried below &
 Aired all bedding & Bags.
 11 7 6 ENE
 12 7 6 NE 52¾ Fair W^r. with a very hazy
 Horizon – A Fresh Gale & a
 following Sea – Few Birds.
 179
 23217
 23396
 Merid Alt^d
 O Center 45°:38'

		Latitude	Longitude			
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N61°E	174	46°:39'S	46:31S	190°:46'E	192°:36'E	192°:53'E

[Page 366]

359

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Friday 26th Sept^r. 1788

1 7 NE^t. WSW Fresh Gales & Fair W^r. but a very thick Haze round
 the Horizon.
 2 7 4
 3 7 4 WbN
 4 7 6 53
 5 7 6 “ “ Many Albatrosses & Petterals
 6 7 6
 7 7 4

8 7	“	51 Strong Gale In 2 nd . Reef Fore TS.
9 7 4	WNW	
10 7 6		
11 7 4		
12 7 2		50¼
1 7 4		
2 7 2		Lightning in the NW
3 7 4		
4 7 2	“	49⅔
5 7		
6 7	NWbW	Very Squally Dble reefed the Main Top Sail
7 6 6		
8 6 4	“	50⅓ Strong Gales & dark cloudy W ^r . with Rain. Served Portable Soup Gruel for breakfast & in the Pease for Dinner as usual.
9 7		
10 7		Clean and dried below with Fires. And at 11 O’Clock served a pint of Sweet Wort to each Man.
11 7 4		
12 7 2		50½ D ^o W ^r but at Noon Saw the Sun between the Squalls and got a Good Observation. Under Dble Reefs.
175		
23396		
23571		
	Merid Alt ^d	
	O Center 46°:13'	

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N60°E	177	45:12S	45:14S	194°:32'E		

[Page 367]

360.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturd^y. 27th.Sept^r. 1788 Observations

1 7 NE½E WNW Strong Gales and thick Misty W^r. with Rain at times

2 7

3 6 W^t. “

4 6 50½ Caught one of the Black Grey Albatrosses, called by
the Sailors old Curates, with Hook and Lines –
5 6 Nearly the same size as on the 25th. Saw one
Pintada Bird and many blue Petterals.

6 7 SW

7 8 Handed the Main Sail

8 7 4 S°. 43½

9 6 6 “ SWbS “

10 6 “ More Mod^t.

11 5 6 SbW

12 6 4 “ 45½

1 6 6

2 6 6

3 7

4 7 2 45½ Very Fresh Gale & Fair W^r.

5 7 4 SbE

6 7 6 Squalls of Snow, Sleet At 21^h:6' Lat^d 43°:55'S°.

		and large Hail	Long ^d . T.K. = 199°:17':58"
7 7	SSE		
8 7		45½ Fresh Gales & Fair W ^r . Out Reefs	
		Served Portable Soup & Sweet	
9 6 6		wort as Yesterday.	
10 7 4		Clean & dried below	
11 7 4			
12 7 “		46¾ D° W ^r . Under Single Reefed M TS and Top Gall ^t .	
		Sail & Miz TS – Whole fore TS & F. T. M ^t . Stud ^g	
165		Sail	
23571			
23736			
	Merid Alt ^d		
	O Center 48°:2¼'		

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.
N61°E	175	43°:44'S°.	43°:55'S 197°:55'E 199:46 200°:03'E

[Page 368]

361.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sund^y. 28th.Sept^r. 1788 Observations

1 7 4	NE½E	SbE	Fresh Gales and fair W ^r .
2 7		SSE ^t .	
3 6 6			
4 6 5	NEbE	“	48½
			At 4 ^h :20' Lat ^d 43°:30'S°.
			Long ^d . T.K. = 200°:22'E
5 6 2			Varia P ^r . Azths. same
			time by
6 6 4			A Compss - 11°:34'E
		Saw a Patch of Rock Weed	d°. Turned - 11:00
		& several Petterals on it.	
7 6 6			B Compss - 11:33
			d°. Turned - 12:07

8 6 6	“	“	48	Mean = 11:33E
9 6 4				
10 6			Cloudy.	
11 5 3				
12 5 “		“	47¾	
1 6	“	S°.		
2 6	“	SWbS		
3 5 4				
4 5 5			47¾	
5 5 5			Set the Lower & M. T. M ^t . Stud ^g Sails	
6 5 4				At 21 ^h :18' Lat ^d 42°:460'S Long ^d . T.K. = 202:16E
7 4 6				
8 4	“	“	48	Fair – Served Portable Soup Gruel for breakfast as usual & Sweet wort at 10 O'Clock.
9 3 4				
10 3 4				
11 3 4			Performed Divine Service	
12 3	“	“	50¼	Light Breezes & fair W ^r . Very few Birds
133				
23736				
23869				
			Merid Alt ^d O Center 49°:28'	

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.

N64°E 141 42°:12'S 42:49S 200°:49'E 202:27 200°:44'E

[Page 369]

362.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Mond^y. 29th.Sept^r. 1788 Observations

1 4 ENE SWbW Mod. and Fair W^r.

2 4

3 3 2

4 4 50¹/₄ Saw a Patch of Long Rock
Weed as Yesterday.

5 4 At 4^h:9' Lat^d 42°:39'S
Long^d. T.K. = 202:49E

6 3 6

7 4 6 WbS

8 5 2 “ 49¹/₂ Fresh Breezes

9 6

10 6 4

Var.

11 6 4 In Stud^g Sails

12 6 4 NWbW 49

1 6 4

2 6 4

3 6 4 Squally wth. Rain

4 6 4 “ 49. Cloudy.

5 6 2

6 6 4 “ Set Fore & Fore T. M^t. Stud^g S^l

7 6 4

8 7

49½ Fresh Breezes & Cloudy. Served Portable Soup
as Usual – Also Sweet Wort.

9 7

10 6 4

All Hands empl^d., after cleaning Ship, in drawing
Yarns & making Spun yarn & Cable Plats.

11 7

12 7

51½ Cloudy W^r. but got a tolerable Noon Observation
A Few Small Albatrosses about but no other Birds.
Under all Sails.

139
23869
24008

Merid Alt^d
O Center 50°:12'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N81°E	138	42:21S	42°:13'S	203°:52'E		

[Page 370
363.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. 30th.Sept^r. 1788 Observations

1 6 6	ENE	WNW	Fresh Breezes and dark Cloudy W ^r . In the Course of this Evening – Many Birds came from the Southward, Some Pintada, Blue Petterals – Gannet Albatrosses, (called so from the plumage being very like a Gannet) & Some Sheerwaters. A Whale also was near the Ship.
-------	-----	-----	--

4 6 5		“	51½
-------	--	---	-----

5 7

6 7

7 7	“	NWbW	A Swell beginning to rise from the South ^d .
-----	---	------	---

8 7		51½
-----	--	-----

9 6 6

10 6 6

11 6 6 “ “ “ Many luminous spots on the Water which by those
that we passed near were Blubbers or species of the
12 6 5 “ 51 the Medusa

1 7

2 7 4 “ “ Fresh Gales In Stud^g Sails

3 7 5

4 7 2 “ 51½

5 7 5

6 7 Thick W^r. and Rain At 21^h:17' Lat^d 41°:41'S
Long^d. T.K. = 208:57E

7 7 4

8 7 4 West 51½ Very Squally. Dble Reefed the
Fore TS.

9 7 Served Portable Soup as usual
and Sweet Wort at 11 O'Clock.

10 7 SW

11 7 Cleaned below & empl^d. mak^g
Spunyarn.

12 7 S°. 50½ Open Cloudy W^r. Out 2^d. Reef
F.TS. Sea from the South^d. Many Blue Petterals
- Albatrosses & some Pintada Birds.

169

24008

24177

Merid Alt^d
O Center 51°:20'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N75°E	169	41°:36'S	41°:37'S	207°:32'E	209:22E	209°:39'E

[Page 371]

364.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. 1 Oct^r. 1788 Observations

1 7 ENE S° Fresh Gales & open Cloudy W^r. Birds ab^t. the Ship
as Yesterday & a Whale.

2 7 4

3 7 4 SbW

4 7 6 “ 50½

5 7

6 1 4

7 7

8 6 6 SSE 49⅔ Fair W^r. Out all Reefs.

9 6 6

10 6 5

11 6 Since I left the Cape of Good Hope my People have
been at ⅔ Allowance of Bread, except while at
12 5 3 49⅔ Adventure Bay – But as I am now getting into a
Warmer climate, I directed to day, the ⅔ should be,
1 5 3 (untill farther orders,) half Bread half Flour as I
consider their having Flour to make a salutary
2 5 4 change in the Cookery of their Salt Meat.

3 5 2

4 4 4 “ 48

5 3

6 2 2 SbW Light Winds & fair W^r.

7 2 2

At 4^h:27' Lat^d 41°:28'S°.
Long^d. T.K. = 210:5E
Varia Same Time by
A Compss - 7°:32'E
d°. Turned - 6:48
B Compss - 7:51
d°. Turned - 9:43
Mean = 7:58E

At 21^h:10' Lat^d 40°:59'S
Long^d. T.K. = 211:47E
Varia same time by
A Compss - 7°:09'E
d°. turned - 7:11
B Compss - 7:33

8 2 SWbW 48 Served Portable Soup as d^o. turned - 9:08
usual & Sweet Wort. Mean. 7:45E
9 2 Unbent Main TS & Fore Sail
& bent the old ones – Up Fore
10 1 4 Top G. Mast.
11 1 4 Open'd Cask Pork N^o. 518
Cont^s. 160 four lb Pieces.
12 1 4 WSW 52 Light Airs & Fine W^r. A few Albatrosses about the
Ship.
117
24177
24394
Merid Alt^d
O Center 52°:23'

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d . D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.			
N71°E 120 40°:57'S 41°:02'S 210°:19'E 211°:55'E 212°:12'E			

[Page 372]
365.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Thursd ^y .	Oct ^r .	2 ^d .	1788	Observations
1	1	1	ENE	West							Light Airs and Fine W ^r . Up Fore T. G. Yard & Set the Larb ^d . Stud ^g . Sails.
2	2										
3	3										
4	3	1		WbN	52°						At 4 ^h :42' Lat ^d 40°:54'S Long ^d . T.K. = 212:7:46E
5	3	1									
6	3	5		WSW							All Stud ^g Sails Set.
7	4										
8	3	6		SW	49¾						

9 4 6 SWbW In Larb^d. Stud^g Sails.

10 4 4

11 4

12 3 48³/₄

1 3 5

2 4

3 5 1

4 5 1 “ 46¹/₄

5 4 4

6 4 At 21^h:13' Lat^d 40°:30'S
Long^d. T.K. = 213:35E

7 4 2 S°. Served Portable Soup for
Breakfast & dinner as usual

8 4 4 “ “ 50¹/₄ and Served Sweet Wort a pint
P^r. Man at 11 O'Clock.

9 5

10 5 Got the Long Mⁿ. T.G. Mast up
Sailmakers repair^g the Sails.
11 4 Cleaned below, & other Hands
making Cable Plats.

12 “ “ “ Calm 51³/₄ Fine Pleas^t. W^r. & Calm. Took in all Sails
No Birds about of any Kind.

88
24394
24482

Merid Alt^d
O Center 53°:14¹/₂'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N69°E	84	40°:27'S	40°:28'S	211:45E	213°:47'E	214°:04'E

[Page 373]

366.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Frid^y. 3 Oct^r. 1788

Observations

1	“			Calm & Fine W ^r . and continued with very light Airs
		H ^d . North	Calm	of Wind untill midnight, when a Swell began to
2	“			make from the Southward.
3	1	NEbE	SEbE	
4	2	NE		54
5	1	“	ENE SW	“ Caught several small Blubbers in a Bucket great
				numbers being about the Ship. I saw no difference
6	1		Varia	with the common Blubbers in the West Indies.
				Species of the Medusa.
7	1	4	Westerly	
8	1	4	“	50¼
				At 4 ^h :40' Lat ^d 40°:25'S
				Long ^d . by T.Keep ^r . = 213:53E
9	1	6		A Compss - 8°:03'E ^t .
				d°. turned - 6:24
10	1	6		Varia same Time B Compss - 7:50
				d°. Turned - 8:43 7°:45'
11	1	NE	“	“ The Sea covered with Blubbers and many being
				close to the Ship's sides – I had a most perfect View
12	3	E½N	N°. 50¼	of them. They emitt a light like the blaze of a
				candle, and could plainly discover that it came from
1	2	6 East	NNE	the strings that hang from them, which altered the
				form of it as they were extended or contracted, the
2	3			body being distinctly visible.
3	3	2 EbN	NbE	
4	3	6		50
5	5	ENE	NbW	
6	6	4	“	“ Fresh Breezes & Cloudy. Saw a Seal. Cap ^t . Cook
				Saw Sea Weed nearly in this Spot.
7	7			

8 6 6 50¾ Served Portable Soup in the Pease and Oatmeal as usual – Cleaned and Aired below.

9 6 6 N°. All this Morn^g a very heavy Swell from the Southward, altho the Wind freshening from the North.

10 6 3 NbW. All this Morn^g a very heavy Swell from the Southward, altho the Wind freshening from the North.

11 7 4

12 7 6 54 Fresh Breezes & Cloudy. Saw a Small Sheerwater ab^t. the size of the Blue Petterals. It was of a black or very dark brown colour in every part, except the Breast & Belly where it was white.

81 I Have had no other sign of being in the Neighbourhood of Land but the Seal – In 1st. Reefs.

24482

24563

Merid Alt^d
O Center 53°:48'

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d . D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.			
N82°E 80 40:16S 40°:19'S 213°:30'E 215°:32'E 215°:49'E			

[Page 374]
367.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Saturday Oct ^r . 4 th . 1788	Observations
1	7	“	ENE	N°.				Fresh Breezes & Cloudy. This afternoon Many different kinds of Albatrosses came from the South ^d .
2	7							some Pintada Birds & many blue Petterals & Sheerwaters. A very heavy Swell from the South ^d .
3	7		NEbE	NbW				
4	7	“	“	“	52½			
5	7	“	“	“	“			Caught Two Albatrosses that measured 7 ^F :6 ⁱⁿ from Tip to Tip of the Wing.
6	6	6						At 3 ^h :24' Lat ^d 40°:09'S Long ^d . T.K. = 216:2E
7	6							
8	5	2	NE ^t .	NNW	51¾			Fresh gales & Cloudy in 2 nd . Reefs.

9 4 4 NEbN NWbN

10 4 2

11 4 NE½N

12 4 2 NE^t. NNW 52¼

1 4 “ “ “ Down Top Gall. Yards.

2 4 “ “ “ Strong Gales wth. heavy gusts of
Wind. Close Reefed the Fore TS
3 4 and triple Reefed the Main TS.

4 5 2 “ 52¾ Rain. Hand^d. Miz. TS. Swell from the
Southward abating

5 4 3

6 4 3

7 4 4 NEbE NbW

8 4 4 52¾ Strong Gale & thick Rain W^r. Served Portable Soup
Gruel for breakfast as usual & at 11 O’Clock a pint
9 5 NE½E of Sweet Wort P^r. Man.

10 5 4 Cleaned & dried below.

11 5 4

12 5 “ NE NNW. 54 D° W^r. no Observation. Swell from the South^d.
entirely down. No Birds.

126
24563
24689

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.
N71°E	125	None	40°:35'S 216°:05'E 218°:17'E 218°:24'E

[Page 375]
368.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sund^y. Oct^r. 5th. 1788 Observations

1 4 4 NE NNW Strong Gales & thick W^r. small Rain.

2 4

3 3 4

4 4 “ “ 54½ Some Blue Petterals, Two Pintada Birds & a few Sheerwaters.

5 5 NE½E

6 5

7 4 NEbN NWbN Close Reefed the Fore TS much head Sea.

8 3 4 “ 54½

9 3 NNE NWbW

10 2 4

11 3 2

12 3 4 54½

1 2 4 More Moderate Out 3^d. Reef Main TS and Set Miz. TS and 4th. and 3^d. Reefs of the F. TS

2 2 5

3 2 4

4 2 4 “ 54

5 3 “

6 3 2 Out 2^d. Reef Main & Miz TS. A Tropic Bird said to be seen.

7 3 4

8 4 2 “ 53½ Dark Cloudy W^r. Cleaned below, and mustered the Ship's Company. Served Sweet wort & Portable

9 4 Soup as Yesterday, and performed Divine Service.

10 4

11 4

12 4 “ “ 55¼ Fresh Breezes & Cloudy – Under Single Reefs.
One Pintada Bird & Some Blue Petterals.

86

24689

24775

Merid Alt^d

O Center 56°:4½'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N53°E	80	38°:47'S	38°:44'S	217°:28'E	219°:43'E	220°:00'E

[Page 376]

369.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Mond^y. Oct^r. 6th. 1788 Observations

1 4 4 NNE NWbW Fresh Breezes and Cloudy W^r. Up M.T.G Yard.

3 3

2

2 NbE

3 5 “ WNW

4 4 3 “ 55⅔ Passing Squalls. At 4^h:44' Lat^d 38°:30'S
Long^d. by T.K. 219:58E

5 5 4

6 5 4 M^r. Elphinston one of the Mates of the Ship came
& told me this morning that Ja^s. Valantine (who
7 5 had had an inflamed Arm After some blood being
taken from him some time since) was delirious &

8 5 4 “ 55¼ had every appearance of being in a dying state.
This shock was scarce equal to my astonishment,
9 4 6 as the Surgeon had told me he was getting better,

10 4 3 & had never express'd the least uneasiness about
 him. I therefore sent for the Surgeon & was
 11 4 2 perhaps severe for his remissness – however, all
 I could get out of him was, that he intended to have
 12 4 “ 55¾ according to custom the Officer of the Watch to sup
 with me) he did not think it proper; but that he must
 1 4 2 N½E now inform me he had not many hours to live – The
 2 4 strangeness of this declaration, as the Man had
 3 3 6 daily fed from our Table, & he not knowing the
 tendency of his Symptoms, gave me very
 unfavorable Ideas.
 4 3 6 “ 56
 5 4
 6 4
 7 5 N WbN
 8 4 56½ Served Portable Soup as usual and Sweet wort at
 11 O'Clock. Up F.T.G. Yard.
 9 3 6 NbE½E NWbW
 10 3 5 Cleaned below. Hands employed making
 Wads.
 11 4
 12 4 “ 58½ Mod. & Cloudy W^r. Under all Sails – No Birds.

106
 24775
 24881

Merid Alt^d
 O Center 58°:8'

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.
N25°E	110	37°:07'S	37°:12'S 218:27E 220:54E 221°:11'E

[Page 377]

370.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. Oct^r. 7th. 1788 Observations

1 4 NbE NWbW Mod & Cloudy W^r. Saw a Pintada Bird.

2 4 2 NbE½E

3 5

4 4 NbE “ 58½ A little Squally.

5 4 4 NNE NW

At 3^h:58' Lat^d 36°:52'
Long^d. T.K. 221°:15'E

6 4 4 NEbN NWbN

7 4 NE NNW

8 4 “ 57¼

9 3 5 NEbE NbW

10 3 2

11 3 2 “ “ “ Fair W^r. out Reef M. TS.

12 3 4 NE NNW 57½

1 4 4 “ “ Wet Fog

2 4 6 NNE NW

3 3

At 20^h:24' Lat^d 36°:19'S
Long^d. T.K. = 222:07E

4 3 2 NNE½E 58

5 3 7 NEbN NWbN

6 4

7 5

8 3 4 “ 58¾ Very Cloudy W^r. the Sun seldom out, & a moist Air.

9 4 4

10 5 NE½N Exercised Small Arms – Cleaned below – Served
Sweet Wort &^c. – as Yesterday.

11 5 4

12 5 NE NNW 60½ Squally W^r. in T.G. Sails & 1st. Reef of the Main
Top S^l. – No Birds

100
24881
24981

Merid Alt^d
O Center 59°:29'

Latitude Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N55°E	95	36°:08'S	36°:12'S	220°:04'E	222°:29'E	222°:46'

[Page 378]

371.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. Oct^r. 8th. 1788 Observations

1 5 2 NE^t. NNW Fresh Breezes & Cloudy W^r. But we have generally
a faint sight of the Sun, with which we can scarce get
2 4 6 altd^s. for the Time, and I cannot benefit by the Sun &
Moon being in distance, or can I get any
3 5 5 Observations at Night.

4 5 “ “ 61

5 5

6 5

At 5^h:5' Lat^d 35°:57'S
Long^d. by T.K. = 222°:55'E

7 4 NE½N NWbN

8 3 2 NE NNW 59

9 4 “

10 4 “ “ “ Wet Fog.

11 4

12 4 “ “ 59¼ Cloudy W^r.

1 3 7

2 3 6

3 3 4

4 3 2 “ 59

At 19^h:10' Lat^d = 35°:34'S
Long^d. T.K. = 223:56E

5 3 3

6 3 5

7 3 5 Served Portable Soup in the
Oatmeal & Pease as usual and
8 3 4 “ 59½ Served Sweet Wort.

9 4 “

10 4 “ Cleaned Below & Exercised
Small Arms.

11 4 “

12 4 “ 61½ Fair W^r. and Cloudy with haze. Smooth water. No
Birds the Wind as steady in the NNW as a Trade.

98
24981
25079

Merid Alt^d
O Center 60°:36'

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N63°E	96	35°:25'S°.	35°:22'S	221°:50'E	224°:6'E	224°:23'E ^t .

[Page 379]
372.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Thursd^y. Oct^r. 9th. 1788 Observations

1 3 7 NE^t. NNW Mod and cloudy W^r. as Yesterday – Smooth Water
 2 3 7 very few Birds seen & the Wind as steady as a
 3 3 7 a Trade. Employed exercising at Small Arms &
 repairing the Miz Top Sail.

4 3 7 “ “ 61 At 4^h:42' Lat^d 35°:17'S
 Long^d. T.K. = 224:42E

5 2 6

6 2 3 NE¹/₂E This Morning the Clerk, (M^r. Samuels,) presented
 7 3 ENE N the Boatswain & carpenters expence Books to the
 Master to be signed, & also the monthly Books for
 Aug^t. & Sept^r. – they whole being signed by me.

8 4 2 NE^bE NbW 60 The Clerk was then returned with a certificate for
 me to sign, before the Books could, the purport of w^{ch}.

9 4 2 was that he had done nothing amiss during his time

10 4 5 on board – As I did not approve of his doing his

11 4 6 duty conditionally I sent for him & told him the

12 5 consequence, when he left me abruptly saying he

60 would not sign the Books upon such conditions. I

Articles of War, with other particulars parts of

Instructions relative to the Matter, when this

troublesome Man saw his error, & before the whole

Ships Company Signed the Books & here again I

forgave him.

2 5 “

3 4 6

4 4 2 NE^t. 60

5 4 4

6 4 4

7 4

8 4 4 “ “ 60¹/₂

9 4 4

10 4 3 Served Sweet Wort & cleaned below.

11 3 6

12 3 6 “ “ 62¼ Fair W^r. & Cloudy with much Haze – Smooth Water. No Birds.

99

25079

25178

Merid Alt^d

O Center 61°:36'

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
ENE	99	34:47S	34°:47'S
			223°:41'E
			226°:21'E
			226°:38'E

[Page 380]

373.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Friday Oct^r. 10th. 1788 Observations

1 4 4 NE^t. NNW Fair W^r. but Cloudy and much Haze with generally a glimmering of the Sun

2 4

3 3 6 NEbN NWbN

4 3 3 63⅔ At 3^h:48' Lat^d 34°:40'S Long^d. T.K. = 226°:35'E

5 4 “ “ “ Varia same time.

6 4 NE½N “ “ Open Cloudy W^r. just before Sun Set. A Compss - 4°:43'E

7 3 d°. turned - 5:41 B Compss - 6:46

Mean = 5:43E

2^d. Set Lat^d. 34°:34'S

8 3 “ “ 61 D° W^r. but so much haze I Decl – 6:28S

could make no observations. A Compss - 5°:33'E

9 3 NE½E NNW d°. turned - 5:23

Mean 5:28E

10 3 4 NE

11 4 3 NE½N NWbN

12 4 4 “ “ 61 At ½ past 12 Departed this Life
Ja^s. Valentine Seaman.

1 4 2

2 5

3 4 6 NEbN

4 4 6 61 Cloudy W^r.

5 3 6 NNE NW

6 3 3

7 3 3 Served Portable Soup & At 19^h:54' Lat^d 33°:59'S
Sweet wort as usual. Long^d. by T.K. = 227:39E

8 2 4 “ “ 61¼ Variaⁿ. same time
A Compss - 5°:35'E

9 2 4 NbE½E NWbW Clean below. Exercised d°. turned - 6:2

10 2 2 NbE Small Arms. The effects B Compss - 6:9

of the deceased being of d°. turned - 6:47

little value I gave them to Mean = 6:8E

11 3 N½E. WNW ye men who attended him
in his illness.

12 3 4 63⅓ Cloudy W^r. Inclineable to Rain. Much swell from
SW^t. No Birds.

88

25178

25266

Merid Alt^d

O Center 62°:57'

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N48E	88	33°:49'S	33°:53'S	224°:58'E	227°:45'E	228°:02'E

[Page 381]

374.

Remarks

The loss I met with this day by the death of James Valentine was of equal surprise and regret. This poor man was one of the most robust people on board and therefore the surprise and shock was the greater to me. He had complained while we were in Adventure Bay of some slight indisposition for which he was bled and got better. Some time afterwards, by being careless of the Arm he was bled in, it became painfull and inflamed. The inflammation increased considerably, and he took to his Hammock. His Arm soon began to get better, but he was seized with a violent hollow Cough & Spit much – this was followed with a shortness of breath, it continued to encrease to his Death, and caused him great pain. Blisters were applied to his Breast at an early stage of his complaint, but none at his Back untill about four Days of his Death. These are the observations that came within my own knowledge by visiting the Man, & the complaint the Surgeon acquaints me I may call an Asthma.

He had no Effects of any value I therefore directed the few Shirts & Trowsers that belonged to him to be given to the two Men who had attended him during his illness with great care and affection.

[Page 382]

375.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturday 11th. Oct^r. 1788 Observations

1 3 4 NbW WbN Light Breezes and Rainy W^r.

2 4 NNW WSW

3 4 2 NWbN SSE^t.

4 4 2 “ “ 59¼ Committed the Body of Ja^s. Valentine to deep with all the decency in our power.

5 5 2

6 5 Fresh Breezes & Cloudy.

7 6

8 6 4 “ 59 About 80 or 100 leag^s. to the East^d of us lie some Isl^{ds}. said to be desc^d. by the Spaniards in 1773 but those Accounts being so uncertain, I do not think myself at liberty to go out of my way to look for

Longitude

[Page 383]

376.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Sund^y. 12th. Oct^r. 1788 Observations

1 6 3 NWbN SE Fair W^r. & Cloudy. All Sails Set.

2 6 3 NW½W

3 5 6

4 5 4 “ “ 60¾ Saw some Bonitos At 4^h:29' Lat^d 31°:25'S
Long^d. by T.K. = 226:9E
5 5 6 Varia same time
6 5 2 A Compss - 3°:5'E
7 6 d°. turned - 4:52
B Compss - 6:00
d°. turned - 6:41
5:9E^t.

8 6 6 “ 59

9 5

10 5 2 “ Pleasant W^r. & fine Moon but the
11 5 2 ESE Sky continues so cloudy, I cannot
make any Observation, and I never
12 5 before experienced such a length of
time to be without as many as I was
in want of.

1 5 2

2 5 6

3 6 6

4 6 6 East. 60

5 7 2

6 6 7 At 20^h:1' Lat^d = 30°:23'S
Long^d. T.K. = 224:46E

7 6 4

8 6 2 “ 62 Served Portable Soup & Sweet

9 5 6 wort as usual.
 Clean Below – Saw every Person
 Clean & performed Divine Service.

10 5

11 5 2

12 5 6 “ 64¼ Open Cloudy W^r. No Birds.

141
 25402
 25543

Merid Alt^d
 O Center 67°:23½'

	Latitude	Longitude				
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
NW	141	30°:08'S	30°:07'S	221°:45'E	224°:30'E	224:47E

[Page 384]
 377.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Mond^y. 13th. Oct^r. 1788 Observations

1 6 NW ENE Fresh Breezes & Open Cloudy W^r.

2 6 6

3 7 NW½N NE In Lower & T.G. Stud^g Sails

4 6 6 64¾ At 4^h:21' Lat^d 29°:44'S
 Long^d. T.K. = 224:11E

5 6 6

6 6 4 “ “ Saw a Large Albatross

7 6 2 NWbN

8 5 NNW “ 64¼ Fair W^r. and Cloudy

9 5 6 NNW½W

10 6 2

11 6 3 NWbN NEbN

12 6 2 “ “ 65¼ D^o W^r. I could get no Observations

1 7

2 6 4

3 7

4 6 4 “ 66¼

5 5 6 NW½W NNE

6 5 6 Saw a Piece of Wood.

7 6

8 4 6 “ “ 67¼ Served Portable Soup for Breakfast as usual
Cleaned below – Exercised Small arms and fired.

9 4 4

10 4 Served Sweet Wort. At 19^h:57' Lat^d 28°:22'S
Long^d. T.K. = 223:04E

11 4 NWbW NbE

12 4 “ “ 68 Fair W^r. & Cloudy. Under All
Sails by the Wind.

140
25543
25683
Merid Alt^d
O Center 69°:38¾'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R	T.K.	L & T.K.
N41°W	149	28°:15½'S	28:24S	219:54E	222:50E	223°:07'E

[Page 385]

378

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. 14th. Oct^r. 1788 Observations

1 4 NWbW. NbE Fresh Breezes & Cloudy W^r.

2 4 4 “ “ “ In 1st. Reefs.

3 4 At 5^h:15' Lat^d 28°:05'S
Long^d. T.K. = 222:30E
4 3 NWbN NEbN 66¾ Aquilae West of D
nearest Limbs reduced to
5 3 7 NWbW NbE the same time Obs^d at 8½^h
By Ramsdⁿ. B - 223°:19':33"E
6 3 2 “ Saw Two Birds, like Trough. H - 223:32:25
what are generally called Ramsdⁿ. C - 223:33:13
7 4 NW½W NNE Sand Larks. Mean 223:28:24
T.K. less Obs = 58:24

8 4 5 NWbW NbE 67¾ Fair W^r. and tolerably free of
Clouds untill 9 which enabled
9 4 6 WNW N°. me to get a Set of Observ^s.
West of the D but none to the East^d.

10 4

11 3 6 A good Lookout is always kept from the
Mastheads but nothing like land could be
12 3 6 WbN NbW 68 Tk^d. Seen. however I was not mistaken as to the
Birds as they came repeatedly within 20 Y^{ds} of
1 3 2 EbN NbE me.
2 3 3 ENE N°. Having now three Men Complaining of the
Rheumatism, & fearing it may be symptoms
of a Scorbutic Complaint I ordered their Salt
3 3 3 provisions to be stopt & flour in lieu. Served
each ⅔ of a pint of the decoction of Essence of
4 3 3 67¾ Malt.

5 3 3

6 3 5 At 19^h:44' Lat = 27:47S
Long^d. T.K. = 222°:24':52"E

7 3 4

8 3 5 EbN NbE 68¼ Fair W^r. & Cloudy. Exercised
Small Arms & Fired as Yest^y.

1 6

9

2 WNW N°.

10 4

Saw a Tropic Bird. And some Fish.

11 4 6 NWbW½W

12 4 2

“

69 Under all Sails by the Wind

92

25683

25775

Merid Alt^d

O Center 70°:34'

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N49°W	51	27°:42'S	27°:45'S	219:10E	222°:14'E	223°:08'E

[Page 386]

379.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. 15th. Oct^r. 1788 Observations

1 4

WNW N

Fair W^r. & Cloudy and pleasant Breezes

2 4 1

3 3 3

Saw a Tropic Bird

4 3 2

WbN½N “

69²/₃ Ordered the three Men mentioned Yesterday,

At 4^h:31' Lat^d. 27°:37'S Long^d. T.K. = 221°:57:20E

5 3 6

to be served about ²/₃ of of a pint of decoction of Malt three times a day.

Aldebran east of ye D farthest Limbs reduced to same time by

6 3 6

The proportion 3 Table

Rams^d - B - 222°:35':42"E

7 3 4 WNW

Spoons full to a Quart

d° - C - 222:46:27

8 3 4

“

68³/₄ the Surgeons opinion was Sufficient

Troughtons - H - 222:57:27

Mean 222:46:32E

9 3 3

T.K. - Obs = :49:12

T.K. - Obs Yest^y. = 58:24

10 3 6 107:36
T.K. Error - 53:48

11 4 WbN NbW “ D^o W^r. & a fine Moon - I was
just able to get a good set of
12 4 4 69¾ Observ^s. East of the D
The Wind backing to the NW
1 3 NE NNW I tacked at Midnight as getting
to the North^d. is now the grand
2 3 point with me.

3 3

4 3 2 “ “ 69¾

5 3 2 NEbN NWbN

6 3 At 20^h:2' Lat^d. 27°:21'S
Long^d. T.K. = 221:44:42

7 3 NNE NW

8 3 “ 70¾ Served, Oatmeal & Portable
Soup as usual.

9 3 Cleaned & aired thoroughly
below. Aired all bedding &
10 2 6 Cloths, and gave every one a
clean Hammock.

11 2 6 NbE NWbN Krout in the Pease as usual.

12 2 6 “ 71½ Fair & pleasant W^r. Saw a
Tropic Bird this Morn^g.
80 Under Single Reefs & all Sails on a Wind – the
25775 whole TS being too deep on a Wind.
25855

Merid Alt^d
O Center 71°:29'

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
N27°E	36	27:10S	27°:08'S
			D.R.
			T.K.
			L & T.K.
			221:57E 222°:51'E

[Page 387]

380.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. 16 Oct^r. 1788 Thursd^y. Observations

1 3 NbE½E NWbW Fair & pleasant W^r. Having now only one small
Cask of Malt remaining, and being so near a port of
2 3 2 Supplies of all kind – I stopt serving sweet wort in
3 4 preference to open^g it, as what, I could not use
between this & Otaheite would be rendered good for
nothing.

4 4 N^o. WNW 68½ At 5^h:36' Lat^d. 26°:55'S
Long^d. T.K. = 222:10E

5 2 4

6 1 NbW WbN

7 1 6 NWbN WSW

8 1 6 “ 69¾ Very cloudy

9 2

10 3 SbW Out Reefs & Set T.G. & Top Mast
Stud^g Sails.

11 3

12 3 3 68⅔

1 2 SSE

2 2 3

3 1 2

4 1 2 “ 67¾

5 1 3 Saw Some Bonittos & Albcores – A Tropic Bird
and some Sea Weed.

6 2 SEbS

7 1 4

8 1 6 “ 68⅓ I directed to day for the People to be served untill

9 1 4 further orders Pot Barley & Sugar every day for breakfast.

10 1 S°. Cleaned below - Served At 20^h:13' Lat^d. 26°:10½'S
the Three Men mentioned Long^d. T.K. = 222:0E

11 1 on the 14th. ⅔ of a pint of ye decoction three times a day.

12 1 SSE^t. 69¾ Served Sour Krout in the Pease.
Cloudy W^r. & moist Air - Got an indifferent Observⁿ. Almost Calm.

51
25855
25906
Merid Alt^d
O Center 72:54

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
N8°W	64	26:06S	26:24S
			D.R.
			T.K.
			L & T.K.
			218°:42'E 221°:57'E

[Page 388]
381.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Friday 17th. Oct^r. 1788 Observations

1 1 NWbN S°. Light Airs and cloudy W^r. E[x]ercised at small Arms.

2 2 4

3 2

4 1 6 “ “ 70¼ Drizling Rain.

5 “
H^d. round Calm & Cloudy W^r. In Stud^g Sails

6 “

7 “
H^d. NbE to NWbW 68⅔

8 “

9 1 6 NWbW SWbW Light Airs & Cloudy.

10 2 4

11 1 2 NbW Varia.

12 1 “ “ 69

1 “ “ N Calm.

2 1 6 N WNW

3 1 6

4 1 4 “ 69½

5 2 NWbN S°. “ Set Stud^g Sails & Royal.

6 2 4

7 2 4 Saw a Flying Fish.

8 2 2 SSE 68⅔ Served Pot Barley & Sugar to the People for
breakfast and decoction of Essence of Malt three
9 2 4 times a Day to three Men who complain of the
Rheumatism. Krout Vinegar & Mustard. Every
10 2 4 one has as much as he can use.

11 2 4 Got the Cables up and cleaned well under them
and every part of the Ship.

12 2 4 72½ Fair W^r. & Cloudy. Royal & All Sails Set

38
25906
25944

Merid Alt^d
O Center 74:00

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.
N20W	47	25:22S	25:30S
			218°:24'E
			T.K.
			L & T.K.

[Page 390]
382.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Saturd^y. 18th. Oct^r. 1788 Observations

1	2	7	NWbN	NEbN		Fair W ^r . & Cloudy - Wind suddenly came to the Northward. In Stud ^g Sails.
2	2	7	NW	NNE		
3	2	7				I now gave orders for water to be put into one pump & pumped out with another so as to keep the pump going ab ^t 50 Minutes every Even ^g as this I consider the best of Ventilators - The Ship did not require it before, as the pumps were worked every Watch
4	2	4	NWbW	NbE	68	
5	1	6		“		
1						
6						
	4		NE	NNW		Squally & Rain
7	3		NbE	NWbW		
8	1	4			67 ³ / ₄	
9	“	“	H ^d . NbE to SbW	“		Calm
10	“	“				
11	“		W ^t . to N			
12	1	4	NWbN	NEbN	69	Rain.
1	1		NW			
2	1	2				
3	2		NWbN			
4	2	4	“	“	69 ¹ / ₄	Cloudy. Fish about.
5	2					
						At 20 ^h :53' Lat ^d . 25°:4'S Long ^d . T.K. = 221°:35'E
1			WNW	Variable		
6						
	1		NbE	NWbW		

7 2	N ^o .	WNW	Saw a Flying Fish.
8 2		“	72 Fair W ^r . & Cloudy Served Sugar, & Barley Gruel for breakfast.
9 2	NNW	W	
10 2			People employed cleaning and Washing Cloaths.
11 1 6			Served decoction of malt as Yesterday and on examining the Men who the Doctor supposed had
12 2 3	“	“	74½ a taint of the Scurvy, it appeared to be nothing more than the prickly heat. However their decoction I desired to be continued.
43			Fair W ^r . & Cloudy & smooth Water
25944			
25987			

Merid Alt^d
O Center 74°:49'

		Latitude		Longitude		Rem ^s .
Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N27°W	30	24°:56'S	24°:50'S	218°:10'E	221:34E	222°:28'E

[Page 390]
383.

H	K	F	Courses	Winds	Ther	Rem ^s .	Sund ^y .	19 th .	Oct ^r .	1788	Observations
1	2	4	NWbN	WbS		Fair W ^r . and cloudy. & Calm	All the latter part				Rain in the Middle.
2	2	4									
3	3					John Mills & W ^m . Brown refusing to dance this evening, I ordered their Grog to be stopt with a promise of further punishment on a second refusal.					
4	2	3	“	“	74½	I have always directed the Even ^{gs} from 5 to 8 O'Clock to be spent in dancing & that every Man should be obliged to dance as I considered it conducive to their health.					
5	2	3	NW	WSW							
6	3	2									
7	3										
8	3	2	NNW	West	73½						

9 1 4 W^m. Brown complaining of some Rheumatic
 10 1 6 complaints w^{ch}. he has had 3 Weeks past, the
 11 2 Doctor insists upon it, it is the Scurvey – But I can
 12 4 NW WSW 73½ four Days & is ever so when he can get liquor. I do
 1 3 my endeavor to prevent it, but all has no effect.

2 2

3 “ Calm.
 NW to NE

4 “ 73 The decoction of Essence of Malt is continued to be
 5 “ issued to all who complain of the Rheumatism & I
 have ordered the Doctor to Issue it himself if able.

6 “ North

7 “

8 “ 74 Mustered all hands and saw them Clean & I think I
 9 “ never saw a more healthy set of Men, & so decent
 looking in my Life.

10 “ Head Round Performed Divine Service At 20^h:18' Lat^d. 24°:15'S
 11 “ Long^d. T.K. 221°:25'E

12 1 NW 77¼ A Light Air – Albecores &
 Bonettos – Saw a Tropic Bird

38

25987

26025

Merid Alt^d
 O Center 75°:53'

Latitude

Longitude

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N14°W	44	24:13½	24°:13'S	217°:58'E	221°:23'E	222°:17'E

[Page 391]
384.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem ^s . Mond ^y . 20 th . Oct ^r . 1788				Observations
1 2	NW	NEbN		Fair W ^r . and Light Breezes. Many Fish about and some Tropic Birds
2 1 4				
3 1 4				
4 2	“		75½ Ship pumped & fresh water put in as ment ^d . on the 18 th .	At 4 ^h :58' Lat ^d . 24°:07'S Long ^d . T.K. = 221:15E
5 2 3				Varia same time By A Compss - 4°:58'E
6 2 3	NWbW	NNE		d°. turned - 5:13 B Compss - 5:4
7 2	NW			d°. turned - 6:2 Mean - 5:19E
8 1 2		“	74¾ Cloudy	
9 3				
10 4				The Doctor's Intoxication has given me much trouble these last five days having been obliged to be
11 3 4		NEbN		attentive with much anxiety to the complaints of four Men who complain of the Rheumatism. with some
12 3		“	74	difficulty I got a sick list from him to day with only Jn°. McIntosh on it under a Rheumatick complaint.
1 3 3				The others he now seems to think nothing of, but complied w th . my wish to Issue the decoction of Malt.
2 3 3				
3 5		NE		
4 6 7		ENE	74	
5 6 5				
6 6 4				
7 6 4	“	EbN		At 19 ^h :25' Lat ^d . 23°:25½'

Long^d. T.K. = 220°:24'E

8 7 “ 73 Fresh Trade & Rain. Got the
Guns up & mounted them. Served
9 7 NW½W Barley & Sugar for breakfast as
before, and ordered Portable Soup
10 7 for dinner for those Men who have
the Rheumatism.

11 7

12 7 6 73¾ Strong Trade & Cloudy W^r. Fore
T. Mast Stud^g. Sail & all Sails Set.

103
26025
26128
Merid Alt^d
O Center 77°:25'

	Latitude	Longitude	Rem ^s .
Course Dis ^t . Obs ^d . D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.			
N42°W 95 23°:03S 22:56S 216°:48'E 219:59E 220°:53'E			

[Page 392]
385.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Tuesd^y. 21^t. Oct 1788 Observations

1 7 4 NW½W NEbE Strong Trade and Cloudy W^r.

2 7 4

3 7 4

4 7 4 “ “ 74½ Ship pumped & fresh At 4^h:00' Lat^d. 22°:42½'
water put in as already Long^d. T.K. = 219°:35'E
5 7 6 mentioned, to ventilate the
Ship.

6 8 2 ENE

7 8 2 EbN In Fore T. M^t. S[t]ud^g Sail &
1st. Reefs.

8 8 74

9 7 4

10 74 Squally & Rain

11 6 6 “ NE

12 6 4 75

1 6 2

2 6 5

3 5 4 “ NEbN

4 5 74½ Light Winds & Cloudy out Reefs
& Set all Stud^g Sails & Royal

5 4 6

6 4 Varia. At 19^h:51' Lat^d. 21°:48'S
Long^d. T.K. = 218:16E

7 2 “ WNW

8 1 4 NW½W EbS 74 Fair W^r. & Cloudy. Served
Barley & Sugar for breakfast
as usual.
Employed cleaning and Airing
Ship & Exercising at Small Arms.
Fired eight Rounds each.
Served decoction of the Essence
of Malt to all the People complain^g.
12 2 76 of the Rheumatism.
D^o W^r. & a very light Wind. All Sails
set.

136

26128

26264

Merid Alt^d

O Center 79°:09'

Latitude

Longitude

Rem^s.

Course	Dis ^t .	Obs ^d .	D.R.	D.R.	T.K.	L & T.K.
N43°W	121	21:41S	21°:27'S	215°:13'E	218°:8'E	

[Page 393]

386.

Remarks.

This day I sent for the Surgeon and in the most friendly manner requested him to leave off drinking, but he seemed not sensible of any thing I said to him & it had little effect. The Sick list was afterwards ~~returned~~ sent to me Signed by a Young Gentleman on board (M^r. Ledward) bred to Physic & was a volunteer & Ab this Voyage; with Jn^o. McIntosh & M^r. Huggan named in it, under the complaint Rheumatism. The Surgeon kept his Bed all this day and always drunk, without eating an ounce of food.

If it is ever necessary this should be publickly known I may be blamed for not searching his Cabbin & taking all liquor from him; but my motive is, that altho every person on board is acquainted with his ebriety, yet hoping every day will produce a change in him, I forebear making a publick matter of my disapprobation of his conduct, in expectation as he has done many times this Voyage he may turn sober again.

[Page 394]

387.

H K F Courses Winds Ther Rem^s. Wednesd^y. 22 Oct^r. 1788 Observations

1 2 4 NW½W EbS Light Air & Cloudy W^r. with Calms in the Middle part.
The latter Fair & pleasant W^r. and smooth Water.

2 3

3 2 5 At 3^h:53' Lat^d. 21°:33'S
Long^d. T.K. = 218:00E^t.

4 2 “ “ 76¼ The Ship cleaned, and ventilated with the Pumps as usual.

5 2 4 The Sick list as now delivered to me stands Jn^o
McIntosh, Jn^o. Milward & M^r. Huggan, all under
the Complaint Rheumatism. But some others
complaining of a feebleness & pain in their Bones, I
directed them all to be fed on Portable Soup and
Barley. Their usual allowance of the decoction of
Malt continued.

7 1 2

8 1 NNW West 75

9 “

10 “ H^d. Round Calm I desired the Surgeon (by a message to him,) if it
 11 “ be served every morning fasting a half hour before
 12 1 4 NNE NW 75½ in water. He agreed with me in this particular & I
 therefore gave the necessary orders concerning it.

1 3

2 4

3 4 4

4 5 N WNW 74½

5 5 NbW WbN At 20^h:17' Lat^d. 20°:51'S
 6 5 Long^d. T.K. = 218:11E
 O East of the D reduced
 to same Time - By

7 5 “ “ “ Saw a Gannet. Ramsdⁿ - B - 218°:30'
 Ramsd - C - 218:42:45

8 5 “ 75 Served Barley for breakfast Troughtⁿ - H - 218:43: -
 and exercised Small Arms & Mean 218:38:35

9 5 NNW West fired T.K. - Obs = 28:4
 Got the B^t. B^r. Anchor over.

10 5

11 5 NWbN WbS

12 5 1 “ 76¾ Very fine W^r.

75
 26264
 26319

Merid Alt^d
 O Center 80°:39'

Latitude

Longitude

Course Dis^t. Obs^d. D.R. D.R. T.K. L & T.K.
 215°:04'E 218°:9'E

[Page 395]

[Blank page]

[Page 396]

[Inside back cover]

[Page 397]

[Inside back cover]

[Page 398]

[Back cover]

[Transcribed by Paul Brunton and Judy Gimbert for the State Library of New South Wales]